



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**1 Samuel**

**Version 27**

# Copyrights & Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 27

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 10

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2020-03-25

**Version:** 14

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 0.12

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2020-02-20

**Version:** 2.1.11

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](http://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](http://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>11</b>
1 Samuel	11
Introduction to 1 Samuel	12
1 Samuel 1	14
1 Samuel 2	43
1 Samuel 3	81
1 Samuel 4	103
1 Samuel 5	126
1 Samuel 6	139
1 Samuel 7	161
1 Samuel 8	179
1 Samuel 9	202
1 Samuel 10	230
1 Samuel 11	258
1 Samuel 12	274
1 Samuel 13	300
1 Samuel 14	324
1 Samuel 15	377
1 Samuel 16	413
1 Samuel 17	437
1 Samuel 18	496
1 Samuel 19	527
1 Samuel 20	552
1 Samuel 21	595
1 Samuel 22	611
1 Samuel 23	636
1 Samuel 24	666
1 Samuel 25	689
1 Samuel 26	736
1 Samuel 27	763
1 Samuel 28	776
1 Samuel 29	802
1 Samuel 30	814
1 Samuel 31	846
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>860</b>
Abstract Nouns	861
Active or Passive	863
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	866
Background Information	869
Biblical Distance	872
Biblical Money	875
Biblical Volume	877
Biblical Weight	881

Connecting Words and Phrases	883
Copy or Borrow Words	887
Direct and Indirect Quotations	889
Double Negatives	891
Doublet	893
Ellipsis	895
Euphemism	897
First, Second or Third Person	899
Forms of You	901
Fractions	902
Go and Come	905
Hendiadys	907
How to Translate Names	910
Hyperbole	914
Hypothetical Situations	918
Idiom	921
Inclusive and Exclusive "We"	923
Irony	925
Litotes	928
Merism	930
Metaphor	932
Metonymy	938
Nominal Adjectives	940
Numbers	942
Order of Events	945
Ordinal Numbers	947
Original Manuscripts	949
Parallelism	950
Personification	953
Predictive Past	955
Pronouns	957
Proverbs	959
Quotes within Quotes	961
Rhetorical Question	964
Simile	967
Synecdoche	970
Textual Variants	972
Translate Unknowns	974
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words</b>	<b>977</b>
Aaron	978
adversary, enemy	979
afflict, affliction, distress	980
alarm, alarmed	981
altar	982
Ammon, Ammonite	983
Amorite	984

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	985
anoint, anointed, anointing	987
appoint, appointed	988
Ashdod, Azotus	989
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	990
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	991
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	992
Benjamin, Benjamite	994
bind, bond, bound	995
bless, blessed, blessing	996
blood	998
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	999
bread	1000
bride, bridal	1001
bridegroom	1002
bronze	1003
brother	1004
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1005
burnt offering, offering by fire	1006
call, call out	1007
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured	1009
chariot, charioteers	1010
chief	1011
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	1012
Christ, Messiah	1013
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1015
clan	1017
clean, wash	1018
comfort, comforts, comforter, un comforted	1020
command, commandment	1021
confirm, confirmation, legal	1022
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1023
consume, devour	1024
covenant	1025
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1027
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1028
cry, cry out, outcry	1029
curse, cursed, cursing	1030
cut off	1031
David	1032
declare, proclaim, announce	1034
delight	1035
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	1036
desert, wilderness	1037
destroy, destruction, annihilate	1038
devour	1039

die, dead, deadly, death,	1040
disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious	1042
donkey, mule	1043
drunk, drunkard	1044
earth, earthen, earthly	1045
Egypt, Egyptian	1046
elder, older, old	1047
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1048
Ephrath, Ephrathah	1049
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1050
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1052
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1053
exile, exiled	1054
face, facial	1055
faith	1056
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	1057
family, household	1059
fast, fasting	1060
favor, favorable, favoritism	1061
fear, afraid, dread	1062
feast, feasting	1063
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1064
firstfruits	1065
flesh	1066
flock, herd	1067
forsake, forsaken, leave	1068
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1069
Gad	1070
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1071
Gilgal	1072
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ...	1073
glean, gleanings	1074
glory, glorious, glorify	1075
God	1077
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	1079
gold, golden	1080
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	1081
grain offering	1083
hand	1084
harvest, reap	1086
head	1087
heart	1088
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1089
high priest, chief priests	1090
Hittite	1092
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	1093

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1095
horse, warhorse, horseback	1097
house	1098
inherit, inheritance, heir	1099
iniquity	1100
innocent	1101
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	1102
Israel, Israelites	1103
jealous, jealousy	1105
Jerusalem	1106
Jesse	1107
Joel	1108
Jordan River, Jordan	1109
Joshua	1110
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	1111
Judah	1113
Judea	1114
judge, judgment	1115
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1117
king, kingdom, kingship	1119
kingdom	1120
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1122
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	1124
Levi, Levite, Levitical	1126
life, live, living, alive	1127
lord, Lord, master, sir	1129
love, beloved	1131
messenger	1133
might, mighty, mighty works	1134
Mizpah	1135
Moab, Moabite	1136
Moses	1137
mourn, mourner, weeping	1138
name	1139
nation	1140
Negev	1141
new moon	1142
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1143
olive	1144
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor	1145
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1146
people of God	1147
people, people group,	1148
persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue	1150
Philistines	1151
plea, plead, beg, implore	1152

plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed	1153
pray, prayer	1154
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1155
priest, priesthood	1157
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1159
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1160
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1162
prostrate, worship	1163
proud, pride, prideful	1164
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	1165
Ramah	1166
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1167
rebuke	1168
reign, rule	1169
repent, repentance	1170
rest, rested, restless	1171
restore, restoration	1172
return	1173
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	1174
robe, robed	1176
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1177
save, saved, safe, salvation	1179
seed, semen	1181
seek, search, look for	1182
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	1183
set apart	1185
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1186
silver	1188
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1189
slaughter, slaughtered	1191
son	1192
spirit, spiritual	1194
statute	1196
strength, strengthen, strong	1197
sword, swordsmen	1199
temple	1200
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	1202
thresh	1204
to minister, ministry	1205
tongue, language	1206
tremble, stagger	1207
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1208
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	1209
trumpet, trumpeters	1210
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1211
understand, understanding, thinking	1212

unleavened bread	1213
vineyard	1214
voice	1215
vow	1216
walk, walked	1217
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	1218
wheat	1219
will of God	1220
wine, wineskin, new wine	1221
wise, wisdom	1222
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful	1223
Yahweh	1224
<b>Contributors</b>	<b>1226</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1226
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1232
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1233
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1233
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1234



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

## **1 Samuel**

## Introduction to 1 Samuel

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of 1 Samuel

1. Samuel as judge over Israel (1:1–7:17)
2. Samuel as a child (1:1–3:21)
3. Shiloh priesthood; the fall and death of Eli the priest (4:1–22)
4. The ark of God and the war with the Philistines (5:1–6:21)
5. Mizpah; Samuel's rule over Israel (7:1–17)
6. Saul and Samuel (8:1–15:35)
7. Samuel lets the people seek a king (8:1–22)
8. Saul anointed king (9:1–10:27)
9. Battle and victory over the Ammonites (11:1–15)
10. Samuel's farewell (12:1–25)
11. Saul's weakness and failures (13:1–15:35)
12. David and his conflicts with Saul (16:1–31:13)
13. God's choice of David to be king (16:1–23)
14. David fights Goliath (17:1–58)
15. Saul's jealousy of David; David and Jonathan (18:1–20:42)
16. David in the wilderness; David in Philistia (21:1–30:31)
17. Death of Saul (31:1–13)

#### What is the Book of 1 Samuel about?

The Book of 1 Samuel is about Samuel, Saul, and David. Samuel was the last of the judges over Israel. Saul was the first king of Israel. Much of the book is about how Saul became king, then how he later sinned against God and died. God chose David to be king after Saul. This book shows how God protected David when Saul tried to kill him.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title "1 Samuel" or "First Samuel." Or, translators may consider a clearer title such as "The First Book About Samuel, Saul, and David." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### What is the purpose of the Book of 1 Samuel?

The purpose of 1 Samuel is to give an account of the events leading up to David becoming king of Israel. In 1 Samuel, the twelve tribes of Israel unite under the first king of Israel, Saul. But Saul does not obey Yahweh's commands. So God uses Samuel to choose David as a king who will trust and obey Yahweh.

#### Who wrote the Book of 1 Samuel?

It is uncertain who wrote 1 Samuel. It may have been someone alive soon after King Solomon died. When Solomon died, the kingdom of Israel split into two kingdoms. The author probably lived in the southern kingdom of Judah. A descendant of David continued to rule over the southern kingdom. The author may have written 1 Samuel to defend David's right to be king. This would prove that David's descendant was the rightful king of God's people.

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### Who is “Yahweh’s anointed”?

The writer of 1 Samuel often speaks of “Yahweh’s anointed.” This refers to the one whom Yahweh chose to be the king of his people. Also, the phrase “Yahweh’s anointed” would make later readers think about the future descendant of David who would become king of God’s people. This person who Yahweh chose would be known as the Messiah. (See: [anoint](#), [anointed](#), [anointing](#) and [people of God](#) and [Christ, Messiah](#))

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What are curses, as found in 1 Samuel and elsewhere?

A curse is a strong statement a person makes to cause bad things to happen to the person or thing being cursed. A curse usually has this pattern: “May God do so to you, and even more, if you hide anything from me of all the words that he spoke to you” (1 Sam. 3:17). Other instances of curses in 1 and 2 Samuel are found in 1 Sam 14:44; 20:13; 25:22; 2 Sam 3:9, 35; and 19:13. The translator should represent a curse in the project language in as strong a way as possible.

### How is the name “Israel” used in the Bible?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed his name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#))

The Book of 1 Samuel has two references to Israel and Judah ([1 Samuel 17:52](#), [1 Samuel 18:16](#)). However, these references appear in the text long before the two kingdoms split apart. It seems clear that the references to Israel and Judah are in the text because the author wrote at a time after the kingdoms split. He wanted the readers to understand that all the twelve tribes had supported David.

### What is the meaning of the phrase “to this day”?

This phrase was used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time already passed. He must avoid giving the impression that the present day of the translation’s readers is meant. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written” or “to this day, at the time of writing.” This phrase occurs in 1 Samuel 5:5; 6:18; 27:6; 30:25.

## 1 Samuel 1

### 1 Samuel 1 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This chapter introduces Samuel. It is the beginning of the section 1 Samuel 1-7 which tells about Samuel, the religious leader of Israel.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Two wives

This was a common practice in the ancient Near East. It was against the law of Moses. The men of Israel would have sinned if they married more than one woman. This type of marriage always creates problems because of jealousy. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

##### "Pay his vow"

It was customary for Israelites to promise God to make a sacrifice to him if God answered special prayers. Making such a sacrifice was called paying one's vow. (See: [vow](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Idioms

When Hannah wanted to assure Eli she was telling the truth, she used the idiom "as you live." This is a type of oath formula meaning "I promise you I am telling the truth." (See: [Idiom](#))

The author also uses the phrase "call to mind." This is a common idiom meaning "remember."

## 1 Samuel 1:1

### Ramathaim

This is the name of a small village possibly located eight kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Zuphites

This is the name of a people group that descended from Zuph. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Elkanah...Jeroham...Elihu...Tohu...Zuph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Ephrath, Ephrathah

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Ephrath, Ephrathah

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> There was a certain man of Ramathaim of the Zuphites, of the hill country of Ephraim; his name was Elkanah son of Jeroham son of Elihu son of Tohu son of Zuph, an Ephraimite. <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>1</sup> There was a man named Elkanah, a descendant of Zuph, who lived in the city of Ramah in the hill country, where the people of the tribe of Ephraim lived. His father was Jeroham, his grandfather was Elihu, and his great-grandfather was Tohu. He belonged to the clan of Zuph.

## 1 Samuel 1:2

### Peninnah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He had two wives; the name of the first was Hannah, and the name of the second was Peninnah. Peninnah had children, but Hannah had none.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> He had two wives: Hannah and Peninnah. Now Peninnah had several children, but Hannah had no children.

## 1 Samuel 1:3

### This man

"This man" refers to Elkanah.

### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

### Eli, Hophni and Phinehas

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> This man went from his city year after year to worship and to sacrifice to Yahweh of hosts in Shiloh. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, priests to Yahweh, were there.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Once every year Elkanah went up with his family from Ramah to the city of Shiloh. He would go there to worship Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, and offer sacrifices to him. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, helped their father to do the work as priests of Yahweh there.

## 1 Samuel 1:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> When the day came for Elkanah to sacrifice each year, he always gave portions of the meat to Peninnah his wife, and to all her sons and her daughters.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Each time Elkanah offered sacrifices there, he would give some of the meat to Peninnah and some to each of her sons and daughters.

## 1 Samuel 1:5

### Hannah

This is a woman's name. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:2](#).  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### closed her womb

"made her barren" or "prevented her from becoming pregnant"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> But to Hannah he always gave a double portion, for he loved Hannah, although Yahweh had closed her womb.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> But he gave a larger amount of meat to Hannah because he loved her very much, even though Yahweh had not permitted her to give birth to any children.

## 1 Samuel 1:6

### Her rival provoked her severely

The other wife would often grieve and shame Hannah.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Her rival provoked her severely in order to irritate her, because Yahweh had closed her womb.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> But his other wife, Peninnah, would mock Hannah to make her feel miserable, reminding her Yahweh had not allowed her to bear children.

## 1 Samuel 1:7

### her rival

This is Peninnah, the other wife of Elkanah. A rival is someone who competes against another person. In this case Peninnah was competing against Hannah to try to get Elkanah to love her best.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- temple
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- temple
- devour

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So year after year, when she went up to the house of Yahweh with her family, her rival always provoked her. Therefore she used to weep and eat nothing.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> This happened every year. When they went up to the temple of Yahweh at Shiloh, Peninnah always ridiculed Hannah so much that Hannah cried and would not eat.

## 1 Samuel 1:8

### Hannah, why do you weep? Why do you not eat? Why is your heart sad? Am I not better to you than ten sons?

These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements, if necessary. Alternate translation: "Hannah, you should not weep. You should eat, and your heart should be glad because I am better to you than ten sons!" or "You have little reason for sadness. I favor you and that should be enough." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### than ten sons

Elkanah is exaggerating to emphasize how important Hannah is to him. Alternate translation: "than any son could be" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- heart
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- devour

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- heart
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- devour

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Elkanah her husband always said to her, "Hannah, why do you weep? Why do you not eat? Why is your heart sad? Am I not better to you than ten sons?"

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then Elkanah would say to her, "Hannah, why are you crying? Why are you eating nothing? You are so sad! Surely it is better for you to have me as your husband than to have even ten sons!"

## 1 Samuel 1:9

### General Information:

Hannah begins to pray to Yahweh, and Eli watches.

### Hannah rose up after

Implicit information here can be made explicit. Either Hannah's tent was next to the tabernacle tent or she walked from her tent to the tabernacle to pray. Alternate translation: "Hannah rose up and went to the house of Yahweh to pray after" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Now Eli the priest

"Now" is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells about a new person in the story. This person is the priest Eli. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the temple of Yahweh

The "temple" was actually a tent, but it was where the people worshiped, so it is best to translate as "temple" here.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- temple
- priest, priesthood
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- temple
- priest, priesthood
- devour

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> On one of these occasions, Hannah rose up after they had finished eating and drinking in Shiloh. Now Eli the priest was sitting upon his seat by the doorway to the temple of Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> One year, after they had finished eating and drinking at Shiloh, Hannah stood up to pray. Eli the priest was nearby, sitting on a chair by the doorway of the sacred tent of Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 1:10

### She was deeply distressed

Hannah was deeply troubled or grieved because of not having any children and being ridiculed regularly by Peninnah, her husband's other wife. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> She was deeply distressed; she prayed to Yahweh and wept bitterly.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Hannah was very distressed, and she cried very sorrowfully as she prayed to Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 1:11

### Connecting Statement:

Hannah's prayer to Yahweh continues.

### the affliction of your servant

The abstract noun "affliction" can be translated as a verb phrase. This refers either to 1) Hannah being unable to become pregnant.

Alternate translation: "how I am suffering because I cannot become pregnant" or 2) the way Peninnah always insulted her. Alternate translation: "how that woman is afflicting me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### call me to mind

This is a special plea to God to take action on Hannah's behalf. God does know what is happening to Hannah; he has not forgotten.

### do not forget your servant

This phrase says almost the same thing as "call me to mind." (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [head](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [head](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**11** She made a vow and said, "Yahweh of hosts, if you will look on the affliction of your servant and call me to mind, and do not forget your servant, but give your servant a son, then I will give him to Yahweh all the days of his life, and no razor will ever touch his head."

### UST

**11** She made a solemn promise, saying, "O Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, if you will look at me and see how I miserable I am, and think kindly about me and allow me to give birth to a son, then I will dedicate him to you for the rest of his life. And to show that he is dedicated to you, no one will ever be allowed to cut his hair."

## 1 Samuel 1:12

### Eli watched her

Eli was the chief priest, so he was in the tabernacle of God and in charge of it. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> As she continued praying before Yahweh, Eli watched her mouth.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> As she was praying like that to Yahweh, Eli the priest saw Hannah's lips moving as she was praying.

## 1 Samuel 1:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart

### Translation Words - UST

- heart

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Hannah spoke in her heart. Her lips moved, but her voice was not heard. Therefore Eli thought she was drunk.

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> But Hannah was only praying silently; she was not making any sound. So Eli thought that she was drunk.

## 1 Samuel 1:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- wine, wineskin, new wine

### Translation Words - UST

- wine, wineskin, new wine

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Eli said to her, "How long will you be drunk? Get rid of your wine."

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> He said to her, "How long will you continue to get drunk? Get rid of your wine!"

## 1 Samuel 1:15

### I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit

"I am a woman who is deeply sad"

### pouring out my soul before Yahweh

This is an idiom that means "telling Yahweh my deepest emotions."  
(See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- wine, wineskin, new wine

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- wine, wineskin, new wine

#### ULT

**15** Hannah answered, "No, my master, I am a woman of a sorrowful spirit. I have drunk neither wine nor strong drink, but I have been pouring out my soul before Yahweh.

#### UST

**15** Hannah replied, "Sir, I am not drunk! I have not been drinking wine or any other alcoholic drink. I feel very miserable and I have been telling Yahweh about how I feel.

## 1 Samuel 1:16

### Do not consider your servant to be

Hannah speaks of herself in the second person to show her humility. It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “Do not consider me, your servant, to be” or “Do not consider me” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### I have been speaking out of the abundance of my great concern and provocation

This is another way of saying that she has a “sorrowful spirit,” as in 1:15. The abstract nouns “abundance,” “concern,” and “provocation” can be translated as adjectives and verbs. Alternate translation: “I have been speaking because I am very sad, and my rival has greatly provoked me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### concern and provocation

These words both mean that Hannah is sad and annoyed because her rival has been provoking her. (See: [Doublet](#))

### concern

Peninnah irritates and annoys her.

### provocation

Hannah is referring to the grief and shame she feels because Peninnah is being cruel to her.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### ULT

**16** Do not consider your servant to be a shameless woman; I have been speaking out of the abundance of my great concern and provocation.”

#### UST

**16** Do not think that I am a worthless woman. I have been praying like this because I am so ashamed and upset.”

## 1 Samuel 1:17

### Then Eli answered

Eli was the head priest residing over the tabernacle.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked

### ULT

**17** Then Eli answered and said, "Go in peace; may the God of Israel grant the request that you have asked him for."

### UST

**17** Eli replied, "I wish that things may go well for you. I desire that God, the one we Israelite people worship, may give you what you asked of him."

## 1 Samuel 1:18

### Let your servant find

Hannah speaks of herself in the second person to show respect for Eli, the head priest. This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "Let me, your servant, find" or "Let me find" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### find favor in your eyes

Here "find favor" is an idiom that means be approved of or that he is pleased with her. Here the eyes are a metonym for sight, and seeing represents judging or deciding the value of something. Alternate translation: "evaluated me and approve" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### ate; her face was

Here "her face" represents Hannah herself. You can make this a separate sentence, if needed. Alternate translation: "ate. She was" or "ate. People could see that she was" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- devour
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- devour
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**18** She said, "Let your servant find favor in your eyes." Then the woman went her way and ate; her face was no longer sad.

#### UST

**18** She replied, "I want you to think highly about me." Then she returned to her family and after she ate something, she was sad no more.

## 1 Samuel 1:19

### Elkanah knew Hannah

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “Elkanah had sexual relations with Hannah” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### remembered her

God knew what was happening to Hannah; he had not forgotten her. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 1:11](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [return](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [return](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**19** They rose early in the morning and worshiped before Yahweh, and then they returned again to their house in Ramah. Elkanah knew Hannah his wife, and Yahweh remembered her.

### UST

**19** Early the next morning, Elkanah and his family got up and worshiped Yahweh again, and then they returned to their home at Ramah. Then Elkanah slept with Hannah, and Yahweh answered her prayer.

## 1 Samuel 1:20

### Hannah conceived

"Hannah became pregnant"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> When the time came, Hannah conceived and gave birth to a son. She called his name Samuel, saying, "Because I have asked for him from Yahweh."

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> She became pregnant and gave birth to a son. She named him Samuel, which sounds like the words in the Hebrew language that mean "heard by God," because she said, "Yahweh heard me when I requested a son from him."

## 1 Samuel 1:21

### his house

The word “house” is a metonym for the people who lived in the house. Alternate translation: “his family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**21** Once again, Elkanah and all his house went up to offer to Yahweh the yearly sacrifice and pay his vow.

### UST

**21** The following year, Elkanah went up to Shiloh with his family to make the kind of sacrifice he made each year, and also to give a special offering to God that he had promised to give him previously.

## 1 Samuel 1:22

### is weaned

stops drinking milk and starts eating only solid food

### he may appear before Yahweh and live there forever

Hannah had promised God that she would allow Samuel to live and work with Eli the priest in the temple ([1 Samuel 1:11](#)).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**22** But Hannah did not go; she had said to her husband, "I will not go until the child is weaned; then I will bring him, so that he may appear before Yahweh and live there forever."

### UST

**22** But Hannah did not go with them. She said to her husband, "After I have weaned the baby, I will take him to Shiloh and present him to Yahweh, and he will stay there for the rest of his life."

## 1 Samuel 1:23

### nursed her son

"gave her son milk"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Elkanah her husband said to her, "Do what seems good to you. Wait until you have weaned him; only, may Yahweh confirm his word." So the woman stayed and nursed her son until she weaned him.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> Elkanah said, "Do what you think is best. Stay here until you have weaned him. What I desire is that Yahweh may enable you to do what you have promised." So Hannah stayed at home and nursed her son until she weaned him.

## 1 Samuel 1:24

### ephah

An ephah is about 22 liters of dry material. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### bottle

Wine was kept in animal skins, not glass bottles.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**24** When she had weaned him, she took him with her, along with a three-year-old bull, <sup>[2]</sup> one ephah of meal, and a bottle of wine, and brought him to the house of Yahweh in Shiloh. Now the child was still young.

### UST

**24** After she weaned him, even though Samuel was very young, she took him to the house of Yahweh that was at Shiloh. She took along with her and her son a three year old bull, about twenty liters of flour, and a container of wine.

## 1 Samuel 1:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- slaughter, slaughtered
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- slaughter, slaughtered
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> They killed the bull, and they brought the child to Eli.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> After Hannah and Elkanah had slaughtered the bull and offered it to Yahweh on the altar, they brought the boy to Eli.

## 1 Samuel 1:26

### Oh, my master! As you live, my master

Here the idiom “As you live” shows that Hannah is being sincere and truthful. Alternate translation: “Sir, what I am going to tell you is certainly true” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> She said, “Oh, my master! As you live, my master, I am the woman who stood here next to you praying to Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> Then Hannah said to him, “Sir, do you remember me? I am the woman who prayed as I stood here beside you several years ago.

## 1 Samuel 1:27

### has given me my petition which I asked of him

The noun “petition” refers to a formal request for another person to do something. It can be translated with a verb. The idiom “to give a petition” means to do what the person requests. Alternate translation: “has agreed to do what I solemnly requested that he do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> For this child I prayed and Yahweh has given me my petition which I asked of him.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> I prayed that Yahweh would enable me to give birth to a child, and this is that child!

## 1 Samuel 1:28

### he is lent to Yahweh

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am loaning him to Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### he worshiped Yahweh

Possible meanings: 1) "He" refers to Elkanah or 2) "he" is a synecdoche referring to both Elkanah and his family. Alternate translation: "Elkanah and his family" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- pray, prayer

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- pray, prayer

### ULT

**28** I have given him to Yahweh, as long as he lives he is lent to Yahweh." Then he worshiped Yahweh there. <sup>[3]</sup>

1:1 <sup>[1]</sup> Some modern versions have *Ramathaim Zophim*, but it is understood that *Zophim* really refers to the region in which the clan descended from Zuph resided.

1:24 <sup>[2]</sup> Some translations of the Hebrew text have *three bulls* instead of *a three-year-old bull* .

1:28 <sup>[3]</sup> Some modern versions have *Then they worshiped Yahweh there* .

### UST

**28** So now I am presenting him to Yahweh. He will belong to Yahweh as long as he lives." Then Elkanah and his family worshiped Yahweh there.

## **1 Samuel 2**

## 1 Samuel 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with Hannah's poetic prayer in 2:1-10 .

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Hannah's song of praise to God

This song is about how God protects the weak and strengthens them. He humbles the rich, provides for the poor, and defeats his enemies.

#### Eli's Sons

Eli, the chief priest, had two sons. They were ungodly priests who continually sinned and did not honor God. Eli corrected them but they did not listen. A prophet warned Eli that God would stop his family from being priests and his sons would both die on the same day. At the same time, Samuel was growing up and serving God. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

This chapter has many figures of speech because the first part of the chapter is a song and the last part of the chapter is a prophecy. Songs and prophecy tend to have many figures of speech.

#### Synecdoches

"My heart" and "my mouth" are synecdoches referencing the speaker. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Metonymies

Body parts are often used to stand for activities involving that part of the body. "The feet of his faithful people" is a metonym meaning what they are doing or where they are going. Place names are often used for people in that place such as "the ends of the earth" meaning the people living in the ends of the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Metaphors

Hannah used many military metaphors: "rock," representing protection; "the bows of the mighty men are broken," representing military defeat; "the horn of his anointed," representing the power of the one that God has chosen to be king. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Rhetorical questions

God used three rhetorical questions to correct and condemn Eli. "Did I not reveal myself to the house of your ancestor, when they were in Egypt in bondage to Pharaoh's house?" "Why then do you scorn my offerings that I required in the place where I live?" "Why do you honor your sons above me by making yourselves fat with the best of every offering of my people Israel?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 1 Samuel 2:1

### General Information:

Hannah recites a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### My heart exults

"I have great joy"

### in Yahweh

"because of who Yahweh is" or "because Yahweh is so great"

### My horn is exalted

A horn is a symbol of strength. Alternate translation: "I am now strong" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Hannah prayed and said, "My heart exults in Yahweh. My horn is exalted in Yahweh. My mouth boasts over my enemies, because I rejoice in your salvation.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Hannah prayed, saying, "In my inner being I rejoice in what you, Yahweh, have done. I am strong because I belong to you. I laugh at my enemies because you, Yahweh has rescued me from being mocked by them.

## 1 Samuel 2:2

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### there is no rock like our God

This is another way of saying that God is strong and faithful. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### rock

This is a rock large enough to hide behind or to stand on and so be high above one's enemies.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> There is no one holy like Yahweh, for there is none besides you; there is no rock like our God.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> There is no one who is holy like you, Yahweh. There is no other god like you. There is no one like you, our God, who can protect us as though you were putting us on top of a huge rock where we can be safe from danger.

## 1 Samuel 2:3

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. She speaks as if other people were listening to her. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### no arrogance

“no arrogant words”

### by him actions are weighed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he weighs people’s actions” or “he understands why people act as they do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Boast no more so very proudly; let no arrogance come out of your mouth. For Yahweh is a God of knowledge; by him actions are weighed.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> You people who oppose God, stop boasting! Yahweh is a God who knows everything, and he will evaluate everyone’s actions. So do not speak so arrogantly!

## 1 Samuel 2:4

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### The bow of the mighty men are broken

Possible meanings are 1) the bows themselves are broken or 2) the men who carry the bows are prevented from acting. Alternate translation: "Mighty bowmen are kept from acting"

### The bow of the mighty men are broken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh breaks the bows of the mighty men" or "Yahweh can make even the strongest of people weak" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### those who stumble put on strength like a belt

This metaphor means they will no longer stumble, but their strength will remain with them as tightly as a belt. Alternate translation: "he will make those who stumble strong" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### put on...a belt

This is the general term for putting something around one's waist to prepare for work.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The bow of the mighty men are broken, but those who stumble put on strength like a belt.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh, you break the bows of mighty soldiers, but you give strength to those who stumble because they are weak.

## 1 Samuel 2:5

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **gives birth to seven**

“gives birth to seven children”

### **languishes**

becomes weak and sad and lonely

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [son](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [son](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>5</sup> Those who were full have hired themselves out for bread; those who were hungry have stopped being hungry. Even the barren one gives birth to seven, but the woman who has many children languishes.

### **UST**

<sup>5</sup> Many people who previously had plenty to eat, now have to work for other people to earn money to buy food, but many who were always hungry are not hungry anymore. The woman who did not have any children before, now has given birth to many children, and the woman who had many children before, now is very lonely because they have all died.

## 1 Samuel 2:6

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **Yahweh kills...brings to life...brings down...raises up**

Yahweh is in control of everything. (See: [Merism](#))

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh kills and brings to life. He brings down to Sheol and raises up.

#### **UST**

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh, you cause some people to die, and you restore some people who were almost dead. For some people, it seems that they will soon go to where dead people go, but you cause them to become healthy again.

## 1 Samuel 2:7

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**makes some people poor...some rich...humbles...lifts up**

Yahweh is in control of everything. (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Yahweh makes some people poor and some rich. He humbles, but he also lifts up.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Yahweh, you cause some people to be poor, and you cause some people to be rich, you humble some people, and you honor some people.

## 1 Samuel 2:8

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### out of the dust...from the ash heap

These are metaphors for the lowest position in society. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the needy

people who do not have the things that they need

### Translation Words - ULT

- [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [inherit, inheritance, heir](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He raises up the poor out of the dust. He lifts the needy from the ash heap to make them sit with princes and inherit the seat of honor. For the pillars of the earth are Yahweh's and he has set the world upon them.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Sometimes you lift poor people up so that they are no longer sitting in the dust, and you raise up needy people so that they are no longer sitting on heaps of ashes; you cause them to sit next to princes; you cause them to sit on seats where people who are highly honored sit. Yahweh, you are the one who laid the foundations of the earth, and you have set the whole world on those foundations.

## 1 Samuel 2:9

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### guard the feet of his faithful people

Here “feet” is a metonym for the way a person walks, which in turn is a metaphor for the way a person decides how to live his life.

Alternate translation: “keep his faithful people from making foolish decisions” or “enable his faithful people to make wise decisions” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### the wicked will be put to silence in darkness

This polite way of saying that Yahweh will kill the wicked can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will put the wicked to silence in darkness” or “Yahweh will put the wicked in the dark and silent world of the dead” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### the wicked will be put to silence

The words “be put to silence” are an idiom for “be made silent.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will make them silent” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### by strength

“because he is strong”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> He will guard the feet of his faithful people, but the wicked will be put to silence in darkness, for no one will prevail by strength.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> You will protect your loyal people, but you will cause the wicked to die and to descend to the dark place where the dead go. We do not defeat our enemies by our own strength.

## 1 Samuel 2:10

Hannah continues to recite a song to Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Those who oppose Yahweh will be broken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will break those who oppose him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### broken to pieces

This idiom means "defeated." (See: [Idiom](#))

### the ends of the earth

This is an idiom that means everywhere. Alternate translation: "the whole earth" (See: [Idiom](#))

### exalt the horn of his anointed

A horn is a symbol of strength. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 2:1](#). Alternate translation: "he will make the leader he has chosen stronger than his enemies" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### his anointed

This speaks of the person that Yahweh chose and empowered for his purposes as if Yahweh had anointed the person with oil. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the one he has anointed" or "the one he has chosen" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Those who oppose Yahweh will be broken to pieces; he will thunder against them from heaven. Yahweh will judge the ends of the earth; he will give strength to his king and exalt the horn of his anointed."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Yahweh, you will break into pieces those who oppose you. You will cause thunder in the sky to show that you oppose them. Yahweh, you will judge people everywhere, even those who live in the most remote places on the earth. You will give strength to the king whom you will appoint, and give him great power over his enemies."

## 1 Samuel 2:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Ramah
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Ramah
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

### ULT

**11** Then Elkanah went to Ramah, to his house. The child served Yahweh in the presence of Eli the priest.

### UST

**11** Then Elkanah and his family returned to Ramah, but Samuel, the little boy, stayed to help Eli the priest serve Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 2:12

### General Information:

When people would offer animals as sacrifices, they would first burn the animal's fat and then boil the meat and eat it.

### did not know Yahweh

"did not listen to Yahweh" or "did not obey Yahweh"

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Now the sons of Eli were worthless men. They did not know Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Eli's two sons, who were also priests, were very wicked. They were not faithful to Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 2:13

### custom

A custom is an action that people regularly do.

### Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- hand
- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- statute
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- hand
- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- statute
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**13** The custom of the priests with the people was that when any man offered a sacrifice, the priest's servant would come with a three-pronged fork in his hand, while the meat was boiling.

### UST

**13** The custom was that while the people were boiling the meat from their sacrifices in the huge pot at the temple, a priest would send his servant, who would come with a large three-pronged fork in his hand.

## 1 Samuel 2:14

### into the pan, or kettle, or cauldron, or pot

These are containers in which food could be cooked. If your language does not have separate words for these items it can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "into whatever the people were cooking the meat in"

#### pan

a small metal container for boiling and cooking

#### kettle

a large, heavy metal container for boiling and cooking

#### cauldron

a large, heavy metal container for boiling and cooking

#### pot

a clay container for cooking

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

#### ULT

**14** He would stick it into the pan, or kettle, or cauldron, or pot. All that the fork brought up the priest would take for himself. They did this in Shiloh with all the Israelites that came there.

#### UST

**14** He would stick the fork into the meat in the pot, and whatever meat fastened onto the fork, he would take and give it to the priest who sent him.

## 1 Samuel 2:15

### General Information:

When people would offer animals as sacrifices, they would first burn the animal's fat and then boil the meat, give some to the priest, and eat the rest.

### Worse, before

"They even did something worse than that. Before"

### they burned

The person who actually did the burning can be made explicit.  
Alternate translation: "the man who was sacrificing took his sacrifice to the priests and the priests burned" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Give meat to roast for the priest

"Give me some meat so I can give it to the priest so he can roast it"

### roast

cook over a fire

### boiled

cooked in water

### raw

not cooked

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- flesh
- flesh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- flesh
- flesh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**15** Worse, before they burned the fat, the priest's servant came, and said to the man who was sacrificing, "Give meat to roast for the priest; for he will not accept boiled meat from you, but only raw."

### UST

**15** However, before the fat on the meat was cut off and burned as a sacrifice to Yahweh, the servant of Eli's sons would come to the man who was making the sacrifice and say to him, "Give me some meat now to take to the priest for him to roast! He wants raw meat; he does not want boiled meat."

## 1 Samuel 2:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive

#### ULT

**16** If the man said to him, "They must burn the fat first, and then take as much as you want." Then he would say, "No, you will give it me now; if not, I will take it by force."

#### UST

**16** If the man said to the servant, "Let the priests cut off and burn the fat first; then you can take what you want," the servant would reply, "No, give it to me now; if you do not give it to me, I will take it forcefully!"

## 1 Samuel 2:17

### despised Yahweh's offering

The young men did not like Yahweh's instructions regarding the offering and paid no attention to them.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**17** The sin of these young men was very great before Yahweh, for they despised Yahweh's offering.

#### UST

**17** Yahweh considered that the young sons of Eli were committing a very great sin, because they were treating very disrespectfully the offerings that were being given to Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 2:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**18** But Samuel served Yahweh as a child clothed with a linen ephod.

### UST

**18** As for Samuel, who was still a very young boy, he continued to do work for Yahweh, wearing a little sacred apron made out of linen, like the high priest wore.

## 1 Samuel 2:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- robe, robed
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Translation Words - UST

- robe, robed
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> His mother would make him a little robe and bring it to him from year to year, when she came up with her husband to offer the yearly sacrifice.

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Each year his mother made a new little robe for him and took it to him when she went up to Shiloh with her husband to offer a sacrifice.

## 1 Samuel 2:20

### because of the request she made of Yahweh

Hannah had asked Yahweh for a baby and promised him that she would give the baby to serve in the temple.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- seed, semen

#### Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- seed, semen

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Eli would bless Elkanah and his wife and say, "May Yahweh give you more children by this woman because of the request she made of Yahweh." Then they would return to their own home.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then Eli would ask God to bless Elkanah and his wife, and he would say to Elkanah, "I hope that Yahweh will enable your wife to give birth to other children, to take the place of the one whom she dedicated to Yahweh." Then Elkanah and his family would return home.

## 1 Samuel 2:21

### before Yahweh

This means where Yahweh could see him and Samuel could learn about Yahweh.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

**21** Yahweh again helped Hannah, and again she became pregnant. She bore three sons and two daughters. Meanwhile, the child Samuel grew before Yahweh.

#### UST

**21** Yahweh was indeed very kind to Hannah, for he enabled her to give birth to three other sons and two daughters. Their son Samuel grew up while he was doing work for Yahweh in his temple.

## 1 Samuel 2:22

### they were lying with the women

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “they were having sexual relations with the women” (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

**22** Now Eli was very old; he heard all that his sons were doing to all Israel, and how they were lying with the women who were serving at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

#### UST

**22** Now Eli became very old. He often heard about all the evil things that his sons were doing to the Israelite people. He heard that they sometimes slept with the women who worked at the entrance to the tent where God spoke to his people.

## 1 Samuel 2:23

### Why do you do such things?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is terrible that you do such things!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> He said to them, "Why do you do such things? For I hear of your evil actions from all these people."

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> He said to them, "It is terrible that you do such things! Many people keep telling me about the evil things that you do."

## 1 Samuel 2:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> No, my sons; for it is not a good report that I hear. You make Yahweh's people disobey.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> My sons, stop it! The reports about you that the people who belong to Yahweh tell others are terrible!

## 1 Samuel 2:25

### who will speak for him?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "there is certainly no one who can speak for him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### speak for him

"ask Yahweh to have mercy on him"

### the voice of their father

Here the father's "voice" represents the father. Alternate translation: "their father" or "what their father said" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [delight](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray](#), [prayer](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [delight](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> "If one man sins against another, God will judge him; but if a man sins against Yahweh, who will speak for him?" But they would not listen to the voice of their father, because Yahweh intended to kill them.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> If one person sins against another person, God can intercede between them. But if someone sins against Yahweh, who will speak up for him?" But Eli's sons would not listen to what their father said. This was because Yahweh had decided that someone needed to kill them.

## 1 Samuel 2:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- walk, walked

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> The child Samuel grew up, and increased in favor with Yahweh and also with men.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> The boy Samuel continued to grow up, and the things that he did pleased Yahweh and the people.

## 1 Samuel 2:27

### man of God

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "a man who hears and tells words from God"

### Did I not reveal myself...house?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should know that I revealed myself...house." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the house of your ancestor

The word "house" is a metonym for the people who lived in the house. Alternate translation: "the family of your ancestor" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### your ancestor

Aaron

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- exile, exiled
- house
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- exile, exiled
- house
- house

### ULT

**27** Now a man of God came to Eli and said to him, "Yahweh says, 'Did I not reveal myself to the house of your ancestor, when they were in Egypt in bondage to Pharaoh's house?'"

### UST

**27** One day, a prophet came to Eli and told him, "This is what Yahweh has told me: 'When your ancestors were slaves of the king of Egypt, I appeared to Aaron.'"

## 1 Samuel 2:28

### to go up to my altar, and to burn incense

This refers to making an offering to Yahweh.

### to wear an ephod before me

The words “wear an ephod” are a metonym for the work of the priests who wear the ephod. Alternate translation: “to do what I had commanded the priests to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- priest, priesthood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- house

#### ULT

**28** I chose him out of all the tribes of Israel to be my priest, to go up to my altar, and to burn incense, to wear an ephod before me. I gave to the house of your ancestor all the offerings of the people of Israel made with fire.

#### UST

**28** From all the tribes of the Israelite people, I chose him and his male descendants to be priests for me. I appointed them to go up to my altar, to burn incense, to wear a sacred apron as they worked for me. And I declared that they could take and eat some of the meat that the Israelite people burned on the altar.

## 1 Samuel 2:29

### Connecting Statement:

The man of God continues to speak to Eli.

### Why, then, do you scorn my sacrifices...live?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not scorn my sacrifices...where I live." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the place where I live

"the place where my people bring offerings to me"

### making yourselves fat with the best of every offering

The best part of the offering was to be burned up as an offering to Yahweh, but the priests were eating it.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [grain offering](#)

### ULT

**29** Why, then, do you scorn my sacrifices and offerings that I required in the place where I live? Why do you honor your sons above me by making yourselves fat with the best of every offering of my people Israel?

### UST

**29** So why do you show disrespect for the sacrifices and offerings that I commanded the people to bring to me? You are honoring your sons more than you are honoring me, by allowing them to get fat from eating the best parts of all the sacrifices that the Israelite people bring to me!

## 1 Samuel 2:30

### the house of your ancestor

The word “house” is a metonym for the people who lived in the house. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 2:27](#). Alternate translation: “the family of your ancestor” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### should walk before me

This is an idiom that means “live in obedience to me.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Far be it from me to do this

“I will certainly not allow your family to serve me forever”

### those who despise me will be lightly esteemed

The words “lightly esteemed” is an ironic euphemism for “greatly despised.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will lightly esteem those who despise me” or “I will greatly despise those who despise me” (See: [Irony](#) and [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> For Yahweh, the God of Israel, says, ‘I promised that your house, and the house of your ancestor, should walk before me forever.’ But now Yahweh says, ‘Far be it from me to do this, for I will honor those who honor me, but those who despise me will be lightly esteemed.’

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Therefore, this is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, declares: ‘I definitely promised that Aaron and his descendants would continue to serve me forever. But now I declare this: It will not continue like that! I will honor those who honor me, but I will despise those who despise me.’

## 1 Samuel 2:31

### See

"Listen carefully to what I am about to say" or "What I am about to say is very important"

### I will cut off your strength and the strength of your father's house

The words "cut off...strength" are probably a euphemism for the death of strong, young men; the words "your father's house" are a metonym for "your family." Alternate translation: "I will kill you and all strong, young male descendants in your family" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### be any old man

"be any old men" or "be any men who grow old"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**31** See, the days are coming when I will cut off your strength and the strength of your father's house, so that there will no longer be any old man in your house.

### UST

**31** Listen carefully! There will soon be a time when I will cause all the strong young men in your family to die. The result will be that no men in your family will live long enough to become old men.

## 1 Samuel 2:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Israel, Israelites
- temple
- elder, older, old

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Israel, Israelites
- temple
- elder, older, old

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> You will see distress in the place where I live. Although good will be given to Israel, there will no longer be any old man in your house.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> You will be distressed and envious as you see the blessings that I will give to the other people in Israel. And I repeat that no men in your family will ever live long enough to become old men.

## 1 Samuel 2:33

### cause your eyes to fail

“cause you to lose your eyesight” or “cause you to go blind”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- altar
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- cut off
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- altar
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
- cut off
- house

#### ULT

**33** Any one of you that I do not cut off from my altar, I will cause your eyes to fail, and I will cause grief for your life. All the men born in your family will die.

#### UST

**33** There is one of your descendants whom I will spare; I will not prevent him from serving me as a priest. But he will become blind from weeping; he will always be sad and grieving. But all your other descendants will die violently.

## 1 Samuel 2:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>34</sup> This will be the sign for you that will come on your two sons, on Hophni and Phinehas: They will both die on the same day.

#### UST

<sup>34</sup> And your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, will both die on the same day. And that will prove to you that all that I have said will come true.

## 1 Samuel 2:35

### I will raise up...a faithful priest

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "I will cause a man to become priest" (See: [Idiom](#))

### for myself

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "to serve me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### what is in my heart and in my soul

"what I want him to do and what I tell him to do"

### I will build him a sure house

Here "house" is an idiom used for "descendants." Alternate translation: "I will ensure that he always has a descendant who serves as high priest" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy (2)
- priest, priesthood
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy (2)
- priest, priesthood
- house

### ULT

<sup>35</sup> I will raise up for myself a faithful priest who will do what is in my heart and in my soul. I will build him a sure house; and he will walk before my anointed king forever.

### UST

<sup>35</sup> I have chosen another man to be my priest. He is one who will serve me faithfully: He will do everything I want. I will make sure that his descendants will be priests and will always serve me by helping the king whom I will choose.

## 1 Samuel 2:36

### him

the faithful priest whom God will raise up

### so I can eat a piece of bread

Here "piece of bread" is used for "food." Alternate translation: "so I can have something to eat" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- bread
- bread

### Translation Words - UST

- temple
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- bread
- bread

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Everyone who is left in your house will come and bow down to him, asking for a piece of silver and a loaf of bread, and will say, "Please assign me to one of the priests' positions so I can eat a piece of bread.""

### UST

<sup>36</sup> All of your descendants who remain alive will have to go to that priest and ask him to give them money and food, and they will each have to say, "Please allow me to help the other priests, in order that I may earn some money to buy some food.""

## 1 Samuel 3

### 1 Samuel 3 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God speaks to Samuel

God spoke at night to Samuel when he was a small boy, telling him that he would punish Eli's family. As Samuel grew up, God gave him many messages. People came from all over Israel to find out what God had to say.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metonymy

In order to show respect when talking to God, Samuel calls himself "your servant" when referring to himself. (See: [Metonymy](#))

##### Idioms

One characteristic of prophecy is the use of figures of speech. In this passage there are two idioms: "ears will shake," meaning "will shock everyone who hears" and "carry out," meaning "do." (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Idiom](#))

In order to be sure Samuel would tell him the whole truth, Eli used the standard formula for a curse: "may God do to you, and even more, if," meaning "God will punish severely if the person does what the curse says he will do." (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#))

## 1 Samuel 3:1

### Yahweh's word was rare

"Yahweh did not often speak to people"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The child Samuel served Yahweh under Eli. Yahweh's word was rare in those days; there was no frequent prophetic vision.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> While he was still a boy, Samuel was serving Yahweh while Eli supervised him. At that time there were very few messages that anyone received from Yahweh, and very few people saw visions that Yahweh gave them.

## 1 Samuel 3:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> At that time, when Eli, whose eyesight had begun to grow dim so that he could not see well, was lying down in his own bed.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> By that time Eli's eyes were very weak; he was almost blind. One night he was sleeping in his room,

## 1 Samuel 3:3

### The lamp of God

This is the seven-candle lampstand in the holy place of the tabernacle that burned every day and through the night until it was empty.

### the temple of Yahweh

The “temple” was actually a tent, but it was where the people worshiped, so it is best to translate the word as “temple” here. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:9](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The lamp of God had not yet gone out, and Samuel was lying down to sleep in the temple of Yahweh, where the ark of God was.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> and Samuel was sleeping in the temple of Yahweh, where the sacred chest was kept. There was a lamp there that represented the presence of God, and it was still burning.

## 1 Samuel 3:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Yahweh called to Samuel, who said, "Here I am."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Just then Yahweh called, "Samuel! Samuel!" Samuel replied, "I am here!"

## 1 Samuel 3:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- call, call out
- restore, restoration

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- call, call out
- restore, restoration

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Samuel ran to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." Eli said, "I did not call you; lie down again." So Samuel went and lay down.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then he got up and ran to Eli. He said to him, "I am here, because you called me!" But Eli replied, "No, I did not call you. Go back to your bed." So Samuel went and lay down again.

## 1 Samuel 3:6

### my son

Eli was not Samuel's true father. Eli speaks as if he were Samuel's father to show Samuel that he is not angry but that Samuel needs to listen to him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- call, call out
- call, call out
- son
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- call, call out
- call, call out
- son
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh called again, "Samuel." Again Samuel rose and went to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." Eli answered, "I did not call you, my son; lie down again."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then Yahweh called again, "Samuel!" So Samuel got up again and went to Eli and said, "I am here, because you called me!" But Eli said, "No, my son, I did not call you. Go back and lie down."

## 1 Samuel 3:7

**nor had any message from Yahweh ever been revealed to him**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “nor had Yahweh ever revealed any message to him” or “and Yahweh had never revealed any message to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- exile, exiled
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- exile, exiled
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now Samuel did not yet have any experience of Yahweh, nor had any message from Yahweh ever been revealed to him.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> At that time Samuel had not yet known what it was like for Yahweh to speak to him, because Yahweh had not previously revealed anything to him.

## 1 Samuel 3:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- call, call out
- call, call out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- call, call out
- call, call out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Yahweh called Samuel again the third time. Again Samuel got up and went to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." Then Eli realized that Yahweh had called the boy.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> After Samuel lay down again, Yahweh called him a third time. So again Samuel got up and went to Eli and said, "I am here, because you called me!" Then Eli realized that it was Yahweh who was calling the boy.

## 1 Samuel 3:9

### your servant is

Eli tells Samuel to speak to Yahweh as if Samuel were another person so that Samuel would show respect to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I am" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then Eli said to Samuel, "Go and lie down again; if he calls you again, you must say, 'Speak, Yahweh, for your servant is listening.'" So Samuel went and lay down in his own place once more.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So he said to Samuel, "Go and lie down again. If someone calls you again, say 'Speak to me, Yahweh, because I am listening!'" So Samuel went and lay down again.

## 1 Samuel 3:10

### Yahweh came and stood

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh actually appeared and stood before Samuel or 2) Yahweh made his presence known to Samuel.

### your servant is

Samuel speaks to Yahweh as if Samuel were another person to show respect to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I am" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### ULT

**10** Yahweh came and stood; he called as at the other times, "Samuel, Samuel." Then Samuel said, "Speak, for your servant is listening."

### UST

**10** Then Yahweh came and stood and called as he had done the other times, "Samuel! Samuel!" Then Samuel said, "Speak to me, because I am listening!"

## 1 Samuel 3:11

### at which the ears of everyone who hears it will tingle

Here “ears...will tingle” is an idiom that means everyone will be shocked by what they hear. Alternate translation: “that will shock everyone who hears it” (See: [Idiom](#))

### tingle

This means to feel like someone is gently poking with small, sharp objects, usually because of the cold or because someone has slapped that body part with their hand.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer

### ULT

**11** Yahweh said to Samuel, “See, I am about to do something in Israel at which the ears of everyone who hears it will tingle.

### UST

**11** Then Yahweh said to Samuel, “Listen carefully. I am about to do something here in Israel that will shock everyone who hears about it.

## 1 Samuel 3:12

### from beginning to end

This is a merism for completeness. Alternate translation: “absolutely everything” (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

### ULT

**12** On that day I will carry out against Eli everything I have said about his house, from beginning to end.

### UST

**12** When that happens, I will punish Eli and his family. I will do to them everything that I said that I would do.

## 1 Samuel 3:13

### brought a curse upon themselves

“did those things which Yahweh had said he would punish those who did them”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**13** I have told him that I am about to judge his house once for all for the sin that he knew about, because his sons brought a curse upon themselves and he did not stop them.

#### UST

**13** His sons have shown great disrespect for me by the disgraceful things they have done, and Eli did not keep them back from doing it. So I told him that I would punish his family forever.

## 1 Samuel 3:14

### the sins of his house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “there is no sacrifice or offering that anyone can offer that will atone for the sins of his house” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the sins of his house

“the sins that the people in his family have committed”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [iniquity](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [iniquity](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

#### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Because of this I have sworn to the house of Eli that the sins of his house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or offering.”

#### UST

<sup>14</sup> I solemnly promised to Eli’s family, ‘You will never be able to avoid the consequences for your sin, even if you give me sacrifices or offerings.’”

## 1 Samuel 3:15

### the house of Yahweh

The “house” was actually a tent, but it would be best to translate “house” here.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

#### ULT

**15** Samuel lay down until morning; then he opened the doors of the house of Yahweh. But Samuel was afraid to tell Eli about the vision.

#### UST

**15** Samuel lay down again until morning. Then he got up and opened the doors of the building as usual. He was afraid to tell Eli about the vision that Yahweh had given him.

## 1 Samuel 3:16

### my son

Eli was not Samuel's true father. Eli speaks as if he were Samuel's father to show Samuel that he is not angry but that Samuel needs to answer him. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### ULT

**16** Then Eli called Samuel and said, "Samuel, my son." Samuel said, "Here I am."

### UST

**16** But Eli called him and said, "Samuel, my son!" Samuel answered, "I am here!"

## 1 Samuel 3:17

### the word he spoke

“the message Yahweh gave”

### May God do so to you, and even more

This is an idiom to emphasize how serious Eli is. Alternate translation: “May God punish you the same way he said he will punish me, and even more” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

### ULT

**17** He said, “What was the word he spoke to you? Please do not hide it from me. May God do so to you, and even more, if you hide anything from me of all the words that he spoke to you.”

### UST

**17** Eli asked him, “What was it that Yahweh told you? Do not conceal it! I want God to punish you severely if you do not tell me everything that he said to you.”

## 1 Samuel 3:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> Samuel told him everything; he hid nothing from him. Eli said, "It is Yahweh. Let him do what seems good to him."

### UST

<sup>18</sup> So Samuel told him everything. He did not refuse to tell him anything. Then Eli said, "He is Yahweh. I am willing for him to do what he thinks is best."

## 1 Samuel 3:19

### he let none of his prophetic words fall to the ground

Here messages that do not come true are spoken of as if they fell to the ground. This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “he made all the things he prophesied happen” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Litotes](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Samuel grew up, and Yahweh was with him, and he let none of his prophetic words fall to the ground.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> As Samuel grew up, Yahweh helped him; he made everything that Samuel predicted to come true.

## 1 Samuel 3:20

### All Israel

"All the people in Israel"

### from Dan to Beersheba

This is a merism for "in every part of the land." Alternate translation: "from one end of the land to the other" or "from Dan in the very north to Beersheba in the very south" (See: [Merism](#))

### Samuel was appointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had appointed" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> All Israel from Dan to Beersheba knew that Samuel was appointed to be a prophet of Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> So all the people of Israel, from the northern end of the country to the southern end, realized that Samuel was truly a prophet of Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 3:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- exile, exiled

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- exile, exiled

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Yahweh appeared again in Shiloh, for he revealed himself to Samuel in Shiloh by his word.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> Yahweh continued to appear to Samuel in Shiloh and give messages to him.

## 1 Samuel 4

### 1 Samuel 4 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

##### The Ark of the Covenant in Philistine country

This chapter begins a new section on the Ark and the Philistines. It recounts two battles between Israel and the Philistines. In both battles, Israel was badly defeated and, in the second, the Ark was captured.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### The Ark is captured

The Philistine army invaded Israel, and Israel's army went to fight them but was defeated. Israel decided that if they took the Ark into the next battle, God would cause them to win. When Eli's sons took the Ark into the next battle and the Philistines won the battle, they killed Eli's two sons and captured the Ark. When Eli heard the Ark was captured, he fell over, broke his neck, and died. Hearing this news, his daughter-in-law named her baby "the glory has departed."

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical Question

The Philistines expressed their fear using a rhetorical question: "Who will protect us from the strength of this mighty God?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 1 Samuel 4:1

### Ebenezer...Aphek

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The word of Samuel came to all of Israel. Now Israel went out to battle against the Philistines. They set up camp at Ebenezer, and the Philistines set up camp at Aphek.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Samuel told to all the people of Israel the messages that God gave him. At that time the Israelite army went to fight against the army of the Philistine people. The Israelite army set up their tents at Ebenezer, and the Philistine army set up their tents at Aphek.

## 1 Samuel 4:2

### Israel was defeated by the Philistines, who killed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Philistines defeated the Israelites and killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### about four thousand men

Here the number four thousand is a round number. There may have been a few more than that or a few less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number. Alternate translation: “about 4,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The Philistines lined up for battle against Israel. When the battle spread, Israel was defeated by the Philistines, who killed about four thousand men on the field of battle.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> The Philistine army attacked the Israelite army, and as the battle continued, the Philistines defeated the Israelites and killed about four thousand of their soldiers.

## 1 Samuel 4:3

### the people

the soldiers who had been fighting the battle

### Why has Yahweh defeated us today before the Philistines? Let us bring...enemies

The elders truly did not know why Yahweh had defeated them, but they wrongly thought they knew how to make sure it did not happen again, by bringing the ark to be with them.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- elder, older, old
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- elder, older, old
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> When the people came into the camp, the elders of Israel said, "Why has Yahweh defeated us today before the Philistines? Let us bring the ark of the covenant of Yahweh here from Shiloh, that it may be here with us, that it might keep us safe from the hands of our enemies."

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> When the remaining Israelite soldiers returned to their camp, the Israelite elders said, "Why did Yahweh allow the Philistine army to defeat us today? We should bring the sacred chest here from Shiloh, in order that Yahweh will go with us when we go to the battle again, so that that our enemies will not defeat us again!"

## 1 Samuel 4:4

### who sits above the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "who sits on his throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Phinehas

This Phinehas is not the same as the grandson of Aaron in Exodus and Numbers.

### were there

were in Shiloh

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- covenant
- covenant
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- covenant
- covenant
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So the people sent men to Shiloh; from there they carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh of hosts, who sits above the cherubim. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, were there with the ark of the covenant of God.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So the soldiers sent some men to Shiloh, and those men brought back the sacred chest, the chest of Yahweh, who sat on a throne between the statues of winged creatures that were on top of the chest. The two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, went with them.

## 1 Samuel 4:5

### When the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came into the camp

“When the people carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh into the camp” Some languages may need to add understood information to make the meaning clear. Alternate translation: “The people, along with Hophni and Phinehas, picked up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh and carried it into the camp. When the people carried the ark into the camp” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [alarm, alarmed](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [alarm, alarmed](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came into the camp, all of the people of Israel gave a great shout, and the earth resounded.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> When the Israelite people saw the men bringing the sacred chest into their camp, they were so happy that they shouted loudly. They shouted so loudly that the ground shook!

## 1 Samuel 4:6

### the ark of Yahweh had come into the camp

“the people had carried the ark of Yahweh into the camp”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When the Philistines heard the noise of the shouting, they said, “What does this loud shouting in the camp of the Hebrews mean?” Then they realized that the ark of Yahweh had come into the camp.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> The Philistines asked, “What are the people in the Hebrew camp shouting about?” Someone told them that they were shouting because the sacred chest of Yahweh had been brought to them.

## 1 Samuel 4:7

### they said...They said

"they said to themselves...They said to each other" or "they said to each other...They said to each other." The second clause clearly refers to what the Philistines said to each other. The first clause probably refers to what they thought, though it could also refer to what they said to each other. If possible, avoid stating who was spoken to.

### A god has come

The Philistines worshiped many gods, so they probably believed that one of those gods, or one whom they did not worship, had come into the camp. Another possible meaning is that they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel: "Yahweh has come." Because 4:8 speaks of "gods," some translations read, "Gods have come," that is, "It is gods who have come." (See: [Pronouns](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The Philistines were afraid; they said, "A god has come into the camp." They said, "Woe to us! Nothing like this has happened before!"

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then they became very afraid. They said, "Their God has come into their camp to help them! We are in big trouble now! Nothing like this has happened to us before!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [God](#)

## 1 Samuel 4:8

### Who will protect us from the strength of these mighty gods?

This rhetorical question is an expression of deep fear. It can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is no one who can protect us from these mighty gods." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### these mighty gods...the gods who attacked

Because the word "god" (or "God") in 4:7 is singular, many translations read "this mighty god...the god who attacked," referring to any one of many possible gods, or "this mighty God...the God who attacked," using the proper name of the God of Israel. (See: [Pronouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [hand](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Woe to us! Who will protect us from the strength of these mighty gods? These are the gods who attacked the Egyptians with many different kinds of plagues in the wilderness.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> No one can save us now! This is the God who struck the people of Egypt with many plagues before the Israelites left Egypt and traveled through the desert.

## 1 Samuel 4:9

### be men

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “be strong and fight” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Take courage, and be men, you Philistines, or you will become slaves to the Hebrews, as they have been slaves to you. Be men, and fight.”

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> You Philistine men, be courageous! Fight very hard! If you do not do that, they will defeat us, and then you will become their slaves, just as they have been our slaves previously!”

## 1 Samuel 4:10

### Israel was defeated

This can be stated in active form. Also, "Israel" refers to the army of Israel. Alternate translation: "they defeated the army of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### ULT

**10** The Philistines fought, and Israel was defeated. Every man fled to his house, and the slaughter was very great; for thirty thousand foot soldiers from Israel fell.

### UST

**10** So the Philistine men fought very hard, and they defeated the Israelites. They killed thirty thousand Israelite soldiers, and the other Israelite soldiers fled and ran away to their tents.

## 1 Samuel 4:11

### The ark of God was taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Philistines also took the ark of God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)

#### ULT

**11** The ark of God was taken, and the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, died.

#### UST

**11** The Philistines captured the sacred chest, and they killed Eli's two sons, Hophni and Phinehas.

## 1 Samuel 4:12

### clothes torn and earth on his head

This is a way to express deep mourning in Israelite culture.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- head

#### Translation Words - UST

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- head

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> A man of Benjamin ran from the battle line and came to Shiloh the same day, arriving with his clothes torn and earth on his head.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> On that same day, one man of the tribe descended from Benjamin ran from the place where the armies were fighting. He tore his clothes and threw soil on his head to show that he was very sad. He arrived at Shiloh late that afternoon.

## 1 Samuel 4:13

### his heart trembled with concern

This is an idiom which means he was very fearful or terribly concerned about something. (See: [Idiom](#))

### the whole city

This is a metonym for “all the people in the city.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [tremble, stagger](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [tremble, stagger](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

### ULT

**13** When he arrived, Eli was sitting on his seat by the road watching because his heart trembled with concern for the ark of God. When the man entered the city and told the news, the whole city cried out.

### UST

**13** Eli was waiting beside the road. He wanted to hear news about the battle, and he was also very anxious to know if anything bad had happened to God's sacred chest. When the messenger arrived and told people what had happened, everyone in the town started to cry loudly.

## 1 Samuel 4:14

### The man

“The man of Benjamin”

#### ULT

**14** When Eli heard the noise of the outcry, he said, “What is the meaning of this uproar?” The man quickly came and told Eli.

#### UST

**14** Eli asked, “Why are they making all that noise?” The messenger ran over to Eli and told him the news.

## 1 Samuel 4:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Now Eli was ninety-eight years old; his eyes did not focus, and he could not see.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> At that time, Eli was ninety-eight years old, and he was blind.

## 1 Samuel 4:16

### my son

Eli was not the other man's true father. Eli speaks as if he were the man's father to show the man that he is not angry but that the man needs to answer him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)

### ULT

**16** The man said to Eli, "I am the one who came from the battle line. I fled from the battle today." Eli said, "How did it go, my son?"

### UST

**16** The messenger said to Eli, "I have just come from where the armies were fighting. I left there earlier today." Eli asked, "What happened?"

## 1 Samuel 4:17

### Israel fled from the Philistines

This is a general statement about what happened. The rest of the man's words give details.

### Also, there has been...people. Also, your two sons

"I will now tell you something worse...I will now tell you something worse" or "Not only has there been...people, but your two sons"

### the ark of God has been taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Philistines have taken the ark of God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- people, people group,

### ULT

**17** The man who brought the news answered and said, "Israel fled from the Philistines. Also, there has been a great defeat among the people. Also, your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, are dead, and the ark of God has been taken."

### UST

**17** The man replied, "The Philistines defeated our army. They killed thousands of our soldiers, and the others ran away. The Philistines killed your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas. They also captured God's sacred chest."

## 1 Samuel 4:18

### When he mentioned

"When the man of Benjamin mentioned"

### mentioned

"spoke of"

### His neck was broken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "His neck broke because he fell" or "He broke his neck when he fell" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

**18** When he mentioned the ark of God, Eli fell over backward from his seat by the side of the gate. His neck was broken, and he died, because he was old and heavy. He had judged Israel for forty years.

### UST

**18** Eli was very old, and he was very fat; and when he heard what had happened to the sacred chest, he fell backward from his seat beside the city gate. His neck was broken and he died. He had led the Israelite people for forty years.

## 1 Samuel 4:19

### his daughter-in-law

Eli's daughter-in-law

### the ark of God was captured

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Philistines had captured the ark of God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bride, bridal

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- bride, bridal

#### ULT

**19** Now his daughter-in-law, Phinehas' wife, was pregnant and about to give birth. When she heard the news that the ark of God was captured and that her father-in-law and her husband were dead, she knelt down and gave birth, but her labor pains overwhelmed her.

#### UST

**19** The wife of Eli's son Phinehas was pregnant, and it was almost time for her to give birth to her baby. When she heard that God's sacred chest had been captured and that her husband and her father-in-law were dead, her labor pains suddenly began and were too much for her. She quickly gave birth to a boy, but she began to die.

## 1 Samuel 4:20

### take what they said to heart

“pay any attention to what they said” or “allow herself to feel better”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- heart
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- heart
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> About the time of her death the women attending to her said, “Do not be afraid, for you have given birth to a son.” But she did not answer or take what they said to heart.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> As she was dying, the women who were helping her tried to encourage her by saying to her, “You have given birth to a son!” But she did not pay any attention to what they said.

## 1 Samuel 4:21

### Ichabod

The name is actually a phrase that means “no glory.” The name of a person sometimes reveals information about the person, place, or thing it refers to. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### for the ark of God had been captured

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for the Philistines had captured the ark of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

**21** She named the child Ichabod, saying, “The glory has gone away from Israel!” for the ark of God had been captured, and because of her father-in-law and her husband.

### UST

**21** She named the boy Ichabod, which means “no glory,” because she said, “God’s glory has departed from Israel.” She said that because God’s sacred chest had been captured and because her husband and her father-in-law had died.

## 1 Samuel 4:22

### the ark of God has been captured

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because the Philistines have captured the ark of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Israel, Israelites
- exile, exiled

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Israel, Israelites
- exile, exiled

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> She said, “The glory has gone away from Israel, because the ark of God has been captured.”

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> She said, “God’s glory has left Israel, because God’s sacred chest has been captured!” And then she died.

## **1 Samuel 5**

### **1 Samuel 5 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

The story of the Ark of the Covenant in Philistia continues.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **The Ark in the Philistine Cities**

The Philistines took the Ark of God to Ashdod and put it in their idol temple, but their idol fell down in front of the Ark and the people got sick with bubonic plague. They took it to Gath next, and the people of Gath began dying of the plague. When they took the Ark to Ekron, the people of Ekron were afraid of it too and did not want it there. Finally they decided to send it back to Israel. (See: [temple](#))

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Idioms**

There are two slightly different idioms used in the same way: the “hand was heavy” and the “hand was hard.” Both idioms mean “was severely punished.” (See: [Idiom](#))

## 1 Samuel 5:1

### Now

This word marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a word or phrase that does the same, you could use it here.

### ark of God

See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 3:3](#). This is the a same as the “ark of the covenant of Yahweh” in [1 Samuel 4:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the Philistines had captured the ark of God, and they brought it from Ebenezer to Ashdod.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After the army of the Philistia people group captured God’s sacred chest in the town of Ebenezer, they took it to Ashdod, one of their largest cities.

## 1 Samuel 5:2

### house of Dagon

This refers to the temple of Dagon, the god of the Philistines.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Philistines
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Philistines
- house

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The Philistines took the ark of God, brought it into the house of Dagon, and set it up beside Dagon.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> They carried it into the temple of their god Dagon and placed it alongside a statue of Dagon.

## 1 Samuel 5:3

### behold, Dagon

“they were very surprised to see that Dagon”

### Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground

The reader should understand that Yahweh had caused the statue to fall on its face during the night. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [return](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [return](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> When the people of Ashdod got up early the next day, behold, Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. So they took Dagon and set him up in his place again.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> But early the next morning, when the people of Ashdod went to see it, they saw that the statue had fallen on its face in front of Yahweh's sacred chest! So they set the statue up in its place again.

## 1 Samuel 5:4

### Dagon had fallen

The reader should understand that Yahweh had caused Dagon to fall.

### The head of Dagon and both of his hands were lying cut off

It was as if Yahweh were a soldier who had defeated his enemy and cut off the enemy's head and hands.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- hand
- cut off
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- hand
- cut off
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But when they got up early the next morning, behold, Dagon had fallen facedown on the ground before the ark of Yahweh. The head of Dagon and both of his hands were lying cut off in the doorway. Only the trunk of Dagon remained.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> But the following morning, they saw that it had fallen down in front of the sacred chest again. But this time, it was as if someone had cut the statue's head and hands off; they were lying in the doorway. Only its body remained in one piece.

## 1 Samuel 5:5

### This is why, even today

The writer is about to give some background information separate from the main story. (See: [Background Information](#))

### even today

Here “today” means up to the day when the author was writing this book.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> This is why, even today, the priests of Dagon and anyone who comes into Dagon's house does not step on the doorway of Dagon in Ashdod.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> That is the reason that ever since that time, the priests of Dagon and everyone else who enters the temple of Dagon in Ashdod do not step on the doorsill where the hands and head of Dagon had fallen.

## 1 Samuel 5:6

### Yahweh's hand was heavy upon

This is an idiom. "Yahweh severely judged" (See: [Idiom](#))

### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids.

### both Ashdod and its territories

The name of the town is a metonym for the people living in the town. "both the people of Ashdod and the people in the land surrounding Ashdod" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Yahweh's hand was heavy upon the people of Ashdod. He destroyed them and afflicted them with tumors, both Ashdod and its territories.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then Yahweh made the people of Ashdod suffer very much with tumors. Many sickened and died, both in the city and in the surrounding region.

## 1 Samuel 5:7

### the men of Ashdod realized

"the men of Ashdod understood"

### ark of the God of Israel

See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 3:3](#). This is the a same as the "ark of the covenant of Yahweh" in [1 Samuel 4:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When the men of Ashdod realized what was happening, they said, "The ark of the God of Israel must not stay with us, because his hand is hard against us and against Dagon our god."

### UST

<sup>7</sup> The people of Ashdod realized why this was happening, and they cried out, "The God of the Israelites is punishing us and our god Dagon. So we cannot allow the sacred chest of the God of the Israelites to remain here!"

## 1 Samuel 5:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> So they sent for and gathered together all of the rulers of the Philistines; they said to them, "What should we do with the ark of the God of Israel?" They answered, "Let the ark of the God of Israel be brought around to Gath." So they carried the ark of the God of Israel there.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> They summoned the five kings of the Philistia people group and asked them, "What should we do with the sacred chest of the God of the Israelites?" The kings replied, "Take the sacred chest to the city of Gath." So they moved it to Gath.

## 1 Samuel 5:9

### Yahweh's hand was against

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Yahweh punished" (See: [Idiom](#))

### both small and great

Possible meanings are 1) this is a merism that refers to age. Alternate translation: "men of all ages" or 2) this is a merism that refers social class. Alternate translation: "from the poorest and weakest men to the richest and most powerful men" (See: [Merism](#))

### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#)

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But after they brought it around, Yahweh's hand was against the city, causing a very great confusion. He afflicted the men of the city, both small and great; and tumors broke out on them.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> But after they took it to Gath, Yahweh powerfully struck the people of that city also, with the result that many men, including young men and old men, got tumors on their skins. Then the people became very afraid.

## 1 Samuel 5:10

### cried out

Why they cried out can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “cried out in fear” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- cry, cry out, outcry

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- cry, cry out, outcry

### ULT

**10** So they sent the ark of God to Ekron. But as soon as the ark of God came into Ekron, the Ekronites cried out, saying, “They have brought to us the ark of the God of Israel to kill us and our people.”

### UST

**10** So they took the sacred chest to the city of Ekron. But when the men carried the sacred chest into Ekron, the people there cried out, “Why are you bringing the sacred chest of the God of the Israelites into our city? By doing that you will cause us and the rest of our people to die!”

## 1 Samuel 5:11

### the ark of the God of Israel

See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 3:3](#). This is the same as the “ark of the covenant of Yahweh” in [1 Samuel 4:3](#).

### the God of Israel

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, “the god of Israel.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:7](#).

### there was a deathly panic throughout the city

“people all over the city were afraid that they were going to die”

### the hand of God was very heavy there

The hand is a metonym for God punishing the people. “Yahweh was punishing the people there very severely” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [return](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [return](#)

#### ULT

**11** So they sent for and gathered together all of the rulers of the Philistines; they said to them, “Send away the ark of the God of Israel, and let it return to its own place, so that it does not kill us and our people.” For there was a deathly panic throughout the city; the hand of God was very heavy there.

#### UST

**11** So the people of Ekron also summoned the Philistine kings. When they came, the people said to them, “Take this sacred chest of the god of the Israelites back to its own place! If you do not do that quickly, we will all die!” The people were terrified because they knew that God was starting to punish them severely.

## 1 Samuel 5:12

### The men who did not die

This implies that many men actually died. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

### the cry of the city went up to the heavens

The word “city” is a metonym for the people of the city. Possible meanings are 1) the words “went up to the heavens” is an idiom for “was very great.” Alternate translation: “the people of the city cried out very loudly” or 2) the words “the heavens” is a metonym for the people’s gods. Alternate translation: “the people of the city cried out to their gods” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The men who did not die were afflicted with the tumors, and the cry of the city went up to the heavens.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Some of the people in Ekron had already died, and the rest of the people were suffering because of tumors on their skins. So they all cried out to their gods to help them.

## **1 Samuel 6**

### **1 Samuel 6 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter ends the story of the Ark of the Covenant among the Philistines.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **The Philistines send the Ark back to Israel**

The Philistine leaders asked their priests what they should do with the Ark. The priests said to send it off with an offering. The Philistines put the Ark on a cart drawn by cows and let them go wherever they wanted to go. The cows went straight toward Israel. When some people peeked into the Ark, God killed them. Because of this, the people sent the Ark to Kiriath Jearim.

## 1 Samuel 6:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Philistines

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Philistines

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the ark of Yahweh was in the country of the Philistines for seven months.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> The people of Philistia kept the God's sacred chest in their area for seven months.

## 1 Samuel 6:2

### the priests and the diviners

These were pagan priests and diviners who worshiped Dagon.

### Tell us how we should send it

The Philistines wanted to know how to get rid of the ark without angering Yahweh any further.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Philistines
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Philistines
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then the Philistine people called for the priests and the diviners; they said to them, "What should we do with the ark of Yahweh? Tell us how we should send it back to its own country."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then they summoned their priests and their diviners. They asked them, "What should we do with the sacred chest of Yahweh? Tell us how we should send it back to its own land."

## 1 Samuel 6:3

### the God of Israel

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, "the god of Israel." See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:7](#).

### by all means send him a guilt offering

The words "by all means" are a forceful way of saying something. Alternate translation: "you must send a guilt offering" (See: [Idiom](#))

### you will be healed

"you will no longer be ill"

### you

The pronoun "you" is plural, referring to all of the Philistines. (See: [Forms of You](#))

### why his hand has not been lifted off of you

Here "hand" is a metonym used to represent God's power to afflict or discipline. Alternate translation: "why he has not relieved your suffering" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The priests and diviners said, "If you send back the ark of the God of Israel, do not send it without a gift; by all means send him a guilt offering. Then you will be healed, and you will know why his hand has not been lifted off of you until now."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Those men replied, "Send with it an offering to show Yahweh that you know that you are guilty for capturing the chest, in order that the plague will stop. If you do that, and then if you are healed, you will know that he is the one who caused the plague to strike you. And you will know why you have been suffering until now."

## 1 Samuel 6:4

### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

### mice

more than one mouse

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then they said, "What should the guilt offering be that we are returning to him?" They replied, "Five golden tumors and five golden mice, five being the number that is the same as the number of the rulers of the Philistines. For the same plague afflicted you and your rulers.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The people of Philistia asked, "What kind of offering should we send?" The men replied, "Make five gold models of the tumors on your skin, and five gold models of rats. Make five of each because that will be the same number as the number of your kings, and because the plague has struck both you people and your five kings.

## 1 Samuel 6:5

### models

A model is something that looks like a real thing.

### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

### that ravage

“that are destroying”

### the God of Israel

Possible meanings are 1) they were speaking the proper name of the God of Israel or 2) they believed that Israel worshiped one of many gods, “the god of Israel.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:7](#).

### lift his hand from you, from your gods, and from your land

Here “hand” is a metonym used to represent God’s power to afflict or discipline. Alternate translation: “stop punishing you, your gods and your land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So you must make models of your tumors, and models of your mice that ravage the land, and give glory to the God of Israel. Perhaps he will lift his hand from you, from your gods, and from your land.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Make models that represent the rats and the tumors that are ruining your land. Make them in order to honor the god of the Israelite people. If you do that, perhaps Yahweh will stop punishing you, your gods, and your land.

## 1 Samuel 6:6

### Why should you harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their hearts?

The priests and diviners use a rhetorical question to urge the Philistines to think very seriously about what will happen if they refuse to obey God. This can be translated as a warning. Alternate translation: "Do not be stubborn like the Egyptians and Pharaoh were!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### harden your hearts

This is an idiom that means to be stubborn or unwilling to obey God. Alternate translation: "refuse to obey God" (See: [Idiom](#))

### did not the Egyptians send away the people, and they left?

This is another rhetorical question used to remind the Philistines how the Egyptians finally sent the Israelites out of Egypt so that God would stop afflicting the Egyptians. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "remember that the Egyptians sent the Israelites out of Egypt." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Why should you harden your hearts, as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their hearts? That was when the God of Israel dealt severely with them; did not the Egyptians send away the people, and they left?

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Do not be stubborn as Pharaoh and the Egyptians were. Remember that Yahweh finally made them suffer more than they could bear, and that they finally allowed the Israelites to leave their land.

## 1 Samuel 6:7

### two nursing cows

“two cows that have calves that are still drinking milk”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [return](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [return](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now then, prepare a new cart with two nursing cows that have never been yoked. Tie the cows to the cart, but take their calves home, away from them.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> So you must build a new cart. Then get two cows that have very recently given birth to calves. They must be cows that have never been hitched to a cart. Hitch those cows to the new cart, and take the calves away from their mothers.

## 1 Samuel 6:8

### Then send it off and let it go its own way

Normally the two cows would head back home to their calves.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- gold, golden

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- gold, golden

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then take the ark of Yahweh and place it in the cart. Put the golden figures that you are returning to him as a guilt offering into a box to one side of it. Then send it off and let it go its own way.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Put their god's sacred chest on the cart. Also put in the cart the five gold models of the tumors on your skin and the five gold models of rats. Put them in a small box alongside the sacred chest. They will be an offering to show that you know that you deserved to be punished for capturing the sacred chest. Then send the cows down the road, pulling the cart.

## 1 Samuel 6:9

### if it goes...to Beth Shemesh, then it is Yahweh

It is unlikely that the cows would choose to wander to Beth Shemesh when their calves are back in the Philistine area.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then watch; if it goes up on the way to its own land to Beth Shemesh, then it is Yahweh who has executed this great disaster. But if not, then we will know that it is not his hand that afflicted us; instead, we will know that it happened to us by chance."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Watch the cart as the cows pull it. If they pull it to the town of Bethshemesh in Israel, we will know that it was their god who brought this plague on us. But if they do not take it there, we will know that it was not the god of the Israelites who has punished us. We will know that it happened by chance."

## 1 Samuel 6:10

### two nursing cows

“two cows that have calves that are still drinking milk” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 6:7](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [temple](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [temple](#)

#### ULT

**10** The men did as they were told; they took two nursing cows, tied them to the cart, and confined their calves at home.

#### UST

**10** So the people did what the priests and diviners told them to do. They made a cart, and hitched two cows to it. They took the calves from their mothers.

## 1 Samuel 6:11

### mice

Translated this as in [1 Samuel 6:4](#).

### castings of their tumors

“models of their tumors”

### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**11** They put the ark of Yahweh on the cart, together with a box containing the golden mice and the castings of their tumors.

### UST

**11** They put in the cart Yahweh's sacred chest and the box with the models of the gold rats and the tumors.

## 1 Samuel 6:12

### The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh

Nursing cows would normally return to their calves, but these cows went to Beth Shemesh.

### lowing as they went

Lowling is the noise cows make with their voices.

### they did not turn aside either to the right or to the left

“they did not wander off of the highway.” This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “they stayed on the highway” or “they went straight ahead”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> The cows went straight in the direction of Beth Shemesh. They went along one highway, lowing as they went, and they did not turn aside either to the right or to the left. The rulers of the Philistines followed after them to the border of Beth Shemesh.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then the cows started walking, and they went straight toward Bethshemesh. They stayed on the road, and were mooing all the time. They did not turn to the left or to the right. The five kings of the region of Philistia followed the cows until they reached the edge of Bethshemesh.

## 1 Samuel 6:13

### Now

The writer is introducing a new part of the story. If your language has a way of marking the beginning of a new part of the story, you could use it here.

### people of Beth Shemesh

These were Israelites.

### lifted up their eyes

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “looked up” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- harvest, reap
- harvest, reap
- wheat

### Translation Words - UST

- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- harvest, reap
- harvest, reap
- wheat

### ULT

**13** Now the people of Beth Shemesh were harvesting their wheat in the valley. When they lifted up their eyes and saw the ark, they rejoiced.

### UST

**13** At that time, the people of Bethshemesh were harvesting wheat in the valley outside the city. When the cows came along the road, they looked up and saw the sacred chest. They were extremely happy to see it.

## 1 Samuel 6:14

### A great stone was there

The people used this stone as an altar when they offered the cows as sacrifices.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Joshua
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Joshua
- burnt offering, offering by fire

#### ULT

**14** The cart came into the field of Joshua from the town of Beth Shemesh and stopped there. A great stone was there, and they split the wood from the cart, and offered the cows as a burnt offering to Yahweh.

#### UST

**14-15** The cows pulled the cart into the field of a man named Joshua, and they stopped alongside a large rock. Several men from the tribe of Levi lifted from the cart the sacred chest and the box containing the gold models of the rats and the tumors, and put them all on the large rock. Then the people smashed the cart and kindled a fire with the wood from which the cart had been made. They slaughtered the cows and burned their bodies on the fire to be an offering for Yahweh that would be completely burned. That day the people of Bethshemesh offered to Yahweh many sacrifices that were completely burned, and other sacrifices.

## 1 Samuel 6:15

### The Levites took down the ark of Yahweh

This actually happened before they chopped the cart into firewood to use in offering the cows to Yahweh.

### The Levites took down the ark

According to the law of Moses, only the Levites were permitted to handle the ark.

### the box that was with it, where the golden figures were

“the box containing the gold models of the rats and the tumors”

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- gold, golden
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- gold, golden
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### ULT

**15** The Levites took down the ark of Yahweh and the box that was with it, where the golden figures were, and put them on the great stone. The men of Beth Shemesh offered burnt offerings and made sacrifices the same day to Yahweh.

### UST

**14-15** The cows pulled the cart into the field of a man named Joshua, and they stopped alongside a large rock. Several men from the tribe of Levi lifted from the cart the sacred chest and the box containing the gold models of the rats and the tumors, and put them all on the large rock. Then the people smashed the cart and kindled a fire with the wood from which the cart had been made. They slaughtered the cows and burned their bodies on the fire to be an offering for Yahweh that would be completely burned. That day the people of Bethshemesh offered to Yahweh many sacrifices that were completely burned, and other sacrifices.

## 1 Samuel 6:16

### the five rulers of the Philistines

“the five Philistine kings”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- return

#### ULT

**16** When the five rulers of the Philistines saw this, they returned that day to Ekron.

#### UST

**16** The five kings from the region of Philistia watched all this, and then they returned to Ekron, that same day.

## 1 Samuel 6:17

### tumors

Possible meanings are 1) painful swelling under the skin or 2) hemorrhoids. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 5:6](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

#### ULT

**17** These are the golden tumors which the Philistines returned for a guilt offering to Yahweh—one for Ashdod, one for Gaza, one for Ashkelon, one for Gath, and one for Ekron.

#### UST

**17** The five gold models of tumors that they sent to be an offering to Yahweh to show that they knew that they deserved to be punished were gifts from those five kings who were rulers of the cities of Ashdod, Gaza, Ashkelon, Gath, and Ekron.

## 1 Samuel 6:18

### mice

Translated this as in [1 Samuel 6:4](#).

### fortified cities

These are cities with high walls around them to protect the people inside from attack by their enemies.

### The great stone...remains a witness

The stone is referred to as if it is a person who can see. Alternate translation: "The great stone...is still there, and people remember what happened on it" (See: [Personification](#))

### Joshua

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the Bethshemite

This is what a person from Beth Shemesh is called. Alternate translation: "from Beth Shemesh" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### to this day

to the time at which the writer wrote the book

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

### ULT

**18** The golden mice were the same in number as the number of all the cities of the Philistines belonging to the five rulers, both fortified cities and country villages. The great stone, beside which they set down the ark of Yahweh, remains a witness to this day in the field of Joshua the Bethshemite.

### UST

**18** The models of the five gold rats were gifts from the people of those five cities and the surrounding towns. The large rock at Bethshemesh, on which the men of the tribe of Levi set the sacred chest, is still there in the field that belonged to Joshua. When people see it, they remember what happened there.

## 1 Samuel 6:19

### they had looked into the ark

The ark was so holy that no one was permitted to look inside it. Only the priests were allowed to even see the ark.

### 50,070 men

“fifty thousand and seventy men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- mourn, mourner, weeping

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- mourn, mourner, weeping

### ULT

**19** Yahweh attacked some of the men of Beth Shemesh because they had looked into the ark of Yahweh. He killed 50,070 men. The people mourned, because Yahweh had given the people a great blow. <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

**19** But some men from Bethshemesh looked into Yahweh's sacred chest, and because of that, Yahweh caused 50,070 of them to die. Then the people mourned very much because Yahweh punished those men like that.

## 1 Samuel 6:20

### Who is able to stand before Yahweh, this holy God?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question that expresses the people's fear of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "There is no one who can resist Yahweh because he is so holy!" or 2) this is a question asking for information. The phrase "stand before Yahweh" may refer to priests who serve Yahweh. It is implied that the people were looking for a priest whom Yahweh would permit to handle the ark. Alternate translation: "Is there a priest among us who serves this holy God, Yahweh, and is able to handle this ark?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### To whom will the ark go up from us?

This is a question asking for information. It is implied that the people want Yahweh and the ark to go somewhere else so he will not punish them again. Alternate translation: "Where can we send this ark so that Yahweh will not punish us again?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> The men of Beth Shemesh said, "Who is able to stand before Yahweh, this holy God? To whom will the ark go up from us?"

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> They said, "Who can stand before Yahweh, our holy God? Where can we send away this sacred chest?"

## 1 Samuel 6:21

### Kiriath Jearim

This was a town in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Philistines
- messenger

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Philistines
- messenger

#### ULT

**21** They sent messengers to the inhabitants of Kiriath Jearim, saying, "The Philistines have brought back the ark of Yahweh; come down and take it back with you."

6:19 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *50,070 men* , some later copies and modern versions have, *seventy men* .

#### UST

**21** They sent messengers to the people of the city of Kiriath Jearim to tell them, "The people of Philistia have returned Yahweh's sacred chest to us! Come here and take it to your city!"

## **1 Samuel 7**

### **1 Samuel 7 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter completes the section on Samuel leading Israel.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Israel begins to worship Yahweh again**

Samuel told the people to get rid of all their idols and worship Yahweh alone. The people were obedient. When the Philistines heard the Israelites were all gathered together, the Philistines attacked, but God defeated them. There was a time of peace during which Samuel settled disputes between the people as the judges had done before.

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Idioms**

Whenever Samuel spoke to a group of people, he used many idioms: “to turn to” means “to worship”; “with your whole heart” means “completely”; and “rescue from the hand” means “rescued from the power.” (See: [Idiom](#))

## 1 Samuel 7:1

### Kiriath Jearim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Abinadab...Eleazar

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The men of Kiriath Jearim came, took the ark of Yahweh, and brought it into the house of Abinadab on the hill. They set apart his son Eleazar to keep the ark of Yahweh.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> When the men of Kiriath Jearim received the message, they came to Bethshemesh and took the sacred chest of Yahweh. They took it to the house of Abinadab, which was on a hillside. They set apart Abinadab's son Eleazar to take care of the chest.

## 1 Samuel 7:2

### twenty years

“20 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> From the day the ark remained in Kiriath Jearim, a long time passed, twenty years. All the house of Israel lamented and wished to turn to Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> The sacred chest stayed in Kiriath Jearim for a long time. It stayed there for twenty years. During that time all the people of Israel mourned because it seemed that Yahweh had abandoned them, and they wanted to turn to him for help again.

## 1 Samuel 7:3

### the entire house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the people who live in the house and their descendants. Alternate translation: “all of the descendants of Israel” or “all of the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### return to Yahweh with your whole heart

Here “with your whole heart” is an idiom that means to be completely devoted to something. Alternate translation: “become completely devoted to worshiping and obeying Yahweh only” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Samuel said to the entire house of Israel, “If you return to Yahweh with your whole heart, remove the foreign gods and the Ashtoreths from among you, turn your hearts to Yahweh, and worship him only, then he will rescue you from the hand of the Philistines.”

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then Samuel said to all the Israelite people, “If you truly want to honor Yahweh again, you must get rid of your statues of the goddess Ashtoreth and the idols the Philistine people.”

## 1 Samuel 7:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then the people of Israel removed the Baals and the Ashtoreths, and worshiped Yahweh only.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So the Israelites got rid of all their statues of the gods Baal and Ashtoreth, and they began to worship only Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 7:5

### all Israel

“all the people of Israel” or “all the Israelites”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Mizpah

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Mizpah

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then Samuel said, “Bring together all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray to Yahweh for you.”

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then Samuel told them, “All you Israelite people must gather with me at Mizpah. Then I will pray to Yahweh for you.”

## 1 Samuel 7:6

### drew water and poured it out before Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) the people denied themselves water as part of fasting or 2) they got water out of a stream or well and poured it on the ground as an outward sign of being sorry for their sin. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [fast, fasting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [fast, fasting](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> They gathered at Mizpah, drew water and poured it out before Yahweh. They fasted that day and said, "We have sinned against Yahweh." It was there that Samuel decided disputes for the people of Israel and led the people.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So they gathered at Mizpah, where Samuel acted as leader for the people of Israel. They had a big ceremony there. They drew water from a well, and poured the water on the ground while Yahweh watched. To show that they were sorry for having worshiped idols, they did not eat any food on that day, and they confessed that they had sinned against Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 7:7

### the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel

It can be stated plainly that it was the army and not the rulers by themselves who attacked Israel. Alternate translation: “the Philistine rulers led their army and attacked Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Mizpah
- Philistines
- Philistines
- Philistines

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Mizpah
- Philistines
- Philistines
- Philistines

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now when the Philistines heard the people of Israel had gathered at Mizpah, the rulers of the Philistines attacked Israel. When the people of Israel heard of it, they were afraid of the Philistines.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> When the kings of the region of Philistia heard that the Israelite people had gathered at Mizpah, they led their armies there to attack the Israelites. When the Israelites found out that the Philistine army was approaching them, they became very afraid.

## 1 Samuel 7:8

### save us from the hand of the Philistines

The “hand” is a metonym for the power of the person. Alternate translation: “save us from the Philistine army” or “keep the Philistine army from harming us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- hand
- tongue, language
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- hand
- tongue, language
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then the people of Israel said to Samuel, “Do not stop calling out to Yahweh our God for us, so he will save us from the hand of the Philistines.”

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> They told Samuel, “Pray to Yahweh to rescue us from the Philistine army, and do not stop pleading with him!”

## 1 Samuel 7:9

### nursing lamb

a lamb that is still drinking its mother's milk

### cried out

"cried out for help"

### Yahweh answered him

"Yahweh did what Samuel asked him to do"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- cry, cry out, outcry
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- cry, cry out, outcry
- burnt offering, offering by fire

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Samuel took a nursing lamb and offered it as a whole burnt offering to Yahweh. Then Samuel cried out to Yahweh for Israel, and Yahweh answered him.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So Samuel took a very young lamb and killed it and offered it to Yahweh to be a sacrifice that was completely burned on the altar. Then he prayed and pleaded that Yahweh would help the Israelites, and Yahweh did help them.

## 1 Samuel 7:10

### As Samuel...they were routed before Israel

This begins to explain what the writer means by “Yahweh answered him” in (1 Samuel 7:9).

### threw them into confusion

The word “confusion” here is used as a casual way of saying the Philistines were unable to think clearly. Alternate translation: “made them unable to think clearly” (See: [Idiom](#))

### they were routed before Israel

This can be translated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) “Yahweh routed them before Israel” or 2) “Israel routed them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### routed

To rout people is to defeat them before they can cause any harm.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [voice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [voice](#)

### ULT

**10** As Samuel was offering up the burnt offering, the Philistines approached to attack Israel. But Yahweh thundered with a loud sound that day against the Philistines and threw them into confusion, and they were routed before Israel.

### UST

**10** While Samuel was burning the offering, the Philistine army came near to attack the Israelites. But Yahweh caused it to thunder very loudly. The men of the Philistine army became very frightened, and then they panicked. So the Israelites were able to drive them back completely.

## 1 Samuel 7:11

### The men of Israel...Beth Kar

This finishes explaining what the writer means by “Yahweh answered him” in (1 Samuel 7:9).

### Beth Kar

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

**11** The men of Israel went from Mizpah, and they pursued the Philistines and killed them as far as below Beth Kar.

### UST

**11** The Israelite men ran out of Mizpah and chased the Philistine soldiers almost to the town of Beth Kar. They killed many Philistine soldiers who were trying to run away.

## 1 Samuel 7:12

### took a stone and set it

The Israelites and other peoples in that land would place a large stone where important events had happened as a reminder of God's help.

### Mizpah...Shen

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- name
- Mizpah
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- name
- Mizpah
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

**12** Then Samuel took a stone and set it between Mizpah and Shen. He named it Ebenezer, saying, "Thus far Yahweh has helped us."

### UST

**12** After that happened, Samuel took a large stone and set it up between the towns of Mizpah and Shen. He named the stone "Ebenezer," which means "stone of help," because he said "Yahweh has helped us until the present time."

## 1 Samuel 7:13

### So the Philistines were subdued

The writer has just finished telling how the Philistines were subdued. If your language has a way of marking the end of a description, you could use it here.

### the Philistines were subdued

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh subdued the Philistines" or "Yahweh kept the Philistines from causing harm" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### they did not enter the border of Israel

The Philistines did not enter Israel's border to attack them.

### The hand of Yahweh was against the Philistines

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: "Yahweh used his power against the Philistines" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**13** So the Philistines were subdued and they did not enter the border of Israel. The hand of Yahweh was against the Philistines all the days of Samuel.

### UST

**13** So the Philistine people were defeated, and for a long time they did not enter the Israelite land to attack them again. During the time that Samuel was alive, Yahweh powerfully protected the Israelite people from being attacked by the Philistine army.

## 1 Samuel 7:14

### The towns...from Israel were restored to Israel

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) Here "Israel" refers to the "land" of Israel. "Yahweh restored to the land of Israel the towns...from Israel" or 2) "Israel" is a metonym for the people who live there. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel were able to reclaim the towns...from Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#) (2)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
- [return](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#) (2)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
- [return](#)

### ULT

**14** The towns that the Philistines had taken from Israel were restored to Israel, from Ekron to Gath; Israel brought back their territory from the Philistines. Then there was peace between Israel and the Amorites.

### UST

**14** The Israelite army was able to capture again the Israelite towns between Ekron and Gath that the Philistine army had captured before. The Israelites were also able to take again the other areas around those cities that the Philistine army had taken from the Israelites previously. And there was peace between the Israelites and the Amor people group.

## 1 Samuel 7:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life.

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Samuel continued to be the leader of the Israelite people until he died.

## 1 Samuel 7:16

### went on a circuit

traveled from place to place in a rough circle

### He decided disputes

Disputes are arguments or disagreements between two or more people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- judge, judgment

### ULT

**16** Each year he went on a circuit to Bethel, to Gilgal, and to Mizpah. He decided disputes for Israel in all these places.

### UST

**16** Every year he traveled among the cities of Bethel and Gilgal and Mizpah. In those cities he listened to disputes between people and made decisions about them.

## 1 Samuel 7:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Ramah
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Ramah
- house

### ULT

**17** Then he would return to Ramah, because his house was there; and there also he decided disputes for Israel. He also built an altar there to Yahweh.

### UST

**17** After he made decisions in each of those cities, he returned to his home at Ramah, and he would listen to people's disputes there, also, and make decisions about them. He built an altar at Ramah to offer sacrifices to Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 8

### 1 Samuel 8 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

##### Saul and Samuel

The section including chapters 8-16 begins a new part of the story. The people wanted a king, and God chose Saul, the man the people wanted, to be their king. He was not the king Yahweh wanted.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### The people want a king

When Samuel was old, he appointed his sons to be judges. They were corrupt and took bribes, so the people came and asked Samuel to appoint a king for them. Samuel asked God, who gave them a king but warned them what a king would be like. Despite Samuel's warning that a king would oppress them, the people still wanted a king. This was sinful because they were rejecting God as their king. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [oppress](#), [oppressed](#), [oppression](#), [oppressor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

## 1 Samuel 8:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When Samuel was old, he made his sons judges over Israel.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> When Samuel became old, he appointed his two sons, Joel and Abijah, to lead the people of Israel.

## 1 Samuel 8:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Joel

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- name
- Joel

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The name of his firstborn was Joel, and the name of his second son was Abijah. They were judges in Beersheba.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> They judged people's disputes in the town of Beersheba.

## 1 Samuel 8:3

### chased after dishonest gain

The writer speaks of money that people would give Samuel's sons as if it were a person or animal running away from Samuel's sons, and he speaks of Samuel's sons as if they were physically chasing that person or animal. Alternate translation: "they worked hard to gain money by being dishonest" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### perverted justice

"judged in favor of those who did evil"

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- judge, judgment
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- judge, judgment
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> His sons did not walk in his ways, but chased after dishonest gain. They took bribes and perverted justice.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But they were not like their father. They wanted only to get a lot of money. They accepted bribes, and they did not make honest decisions about people's disputes.

## 1 Samuel 8:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Ramah
- elder, older, old

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Ramah
- elder, older, old

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then all the elders of Israel gathered together and came to Samuel at Ramah.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Finally, the Israelite leaders met in the town of Ramah to discuss the matter with Samuel.

## 1 Samuel 8:5

### do not walk in your ways

The way a person lives is spoken of as walking on a path. Alternate translation: “do not do the things you do” or “do not do what is just the way you do” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Appoint for us a king to judge us like all the nations

Possible meanings are 1) “Appoint for us a king like the kings of all the nations so that he can judge us” or 2) “Appoint for us a king who will judge us the way the kings of the nations judge them”

### Appoint for us a king to judge us

The leaders wrongly believed that a king, and his sons after him, would rule justly.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [nation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [nation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> They said to him, “Look, you are old, and your sons do not walk in your ways. Appoint for us a king to judge us like all the nations.”

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> They said to him, “Listen! You are now old, and your sons are not like you. Appoint a king to rule over us, like the kings that other countries have!”

## 1 Samuel 8:6

### But it displeased Samuel...Give us a king to judge us

Samuel was unhappy that the people did not just want him to remove his corrupt sons and to appoint honest judges, but they wanted a king to rule over them like other countries had.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- pray, prayer
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- pray, prayer
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But it displeased Samuel when they said, "Give us a king to judge us." So Samuel prayed to Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Samuel was very unhappy with them for requesting that, so he prayed to Yahweh about it.

## 1 Samuel 8:7

### Obey the voice of the people

Here “the voice” is a metonym for the will or the desire of the people.  
Alternate translation: “Do what the people say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### but they have rejected me

Yahweh knew that the people were not just rejecting corrupt judges, but they were rejecting Yahweh as their king.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [voice](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [voice](#)

#### ULT

7 Yahweh said to Samuel, “Obey the voice of the people in everything they say to you; for they have not rejected you, but they have rejected me from being king over them.

#### UST

7 Yahweh replied, “Do what they have requested you to do. But do not think that you are the one whom they are really rejecting. I have been their king, and I am the one they are really rejecting.

## 1 Samuel 8:8

### I brought them out of Egypt

This refers to Yahweh freeing the Israelites from slavery in Egypt many years before.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Egypt, Egyptian

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Egypt, Egyptian

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> They are acting now the same as they did since the day I brought them out of Egypt, forsaking me, and serving other gods, and so they are also doing to you.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Ever since I brought them out of Egypt, they have rejected me, and they have worshiped other gods. And now they are also rejecting you in the same way.

## 1 Samuel 8:9

### Now listen to them

"Now do what they are asking you to do"

### warn them solemnly

"be very serious as you warn them"

### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- judge, judgment
- voice
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- judge, judgment
- voice
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Now listen to them; but warn them solemnly and let them know the way the king will rule over them."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Do what they are asking you to do. But warn them about how their kings will act toward them!"

## 1 Samuel 8:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> So Samuel told all the words of Yahweh to the people who were asking for a king.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So Samuel told those people what Yahweh had said.

## 1 Samuel 8:11

### This will be the practice...He will take

The practice of the king will be to take. This begins the list of things he will take.

### This will be the practice of the king who will reign over you

The abstract noun “practice” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “This is how the king who will reign over you will act” or “This is what the king who will reign over you will do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### appoint them to his chariots

“have them drive chariots in battle”

### be his horsemen

They will ride horses into battle.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### ULT

**11** He said, “This will be the practice of the king who will reign over you. He will take your sons and appoint them to his chariots and to be his horsemen, and to run before his chariots.

### UST

**11** He said, “If a king rules over you, this is what he will do to you: He will force many of your sons to join the army. He will make some of them run in front of your chariots to clear things out of the way.

## 1 Samuel 8:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- harvest, reap
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- harvest, reap
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> He will appoint for himself captains of thousands and captains of fifties. He will make some plow his ground, some reap his harvest, and some make his weapons of war and the equipment for his chariots.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Some of them will be commanders of his soldiers, but others will work for him like slaves. He will force some of them to plow his fields and then later harvest his crops. He will force others to make his weapons and equipment for his chariots.

## 1 Samuel 8:13

### Connecting Statement:

Samuel continues to tell what things the king will take.

### to be perfumers

“to make good-smelling oils to put on his body”

#### ULT

**13** He will also take your daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers.

#### UST

**13** The king will take some of your daughters from you and force them to make perfumes for him and cook food for him and bake bread for him.

## 1 Samuel 8:14

### olive orchards

“fields of olive trees”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- olive
- vineyard
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- olive
- vineyard
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**14** He will take the very best of your fields, your vineyards, and your olive orchards, and give them to his servants.

#### UST

**14** He will take your best fields and vineyards and olive tree groves, and give them to his own officials.

## 1 Samuel 8:15

### a tenth of your grain

They will have to divide their grain into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king's officers and servants. (See: [Fractions](#))

### a tenth...of your vineyards

They will have to divide the wine that they produce in their vineyards into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king's officers and servants. (See: [Fractions](#))

### officers

These are the leaders of the king's army.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [vineyard](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [vineyard](#)

#### ULT

**15** He will take a tenth of your grain and of your vineyards and give to his officers and his servants.

#### UST

**15** He will take a tenth of your harvests and distribute it among the officers and servants who work in his palace.

## 1 Samuel 8:16

### Connecting Statement:

Samuel continues to tell what things the king will take.

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- donkey, mule
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- donkey, mule
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**16** He will take your male servants and your female servants and the best of your young men and your donkeys; he will put them all to work for him.

### UST

**16** He will take from you your male and female servants, your best cattle and donkeys, and force them to work for him.

## 1 Samuel 8:17

### the tenth of your flocks

They will have to divide their flocks into ten equal parts and give one of those parts to the king's officers and servants. See how you translated "tenth" in [1 Samuel 8:15](#). (See: [Fractions](#))

### you will be his slaves

"you will feel as if you are his slaves"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

**17** He will take the tenth of your flocks, and you will be his slaves.

#### UST

**17** He will take one tenth of your sheep and goats. And you will become his slaves!

## 1 Samuel 8:18

### you will cry out

Possible meanings are 1) the people will ask Yahweh to rescue them from the king or 2) the people will ask the king to stop treating them so badly .

#### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- cry, cry out, outcry
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- cry, cry out, outcry
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

**18** Then on that day you will cry out because of your king whom you have chosen for yourselves; but Yahweh will not answer you on that day."

#### UST

**18** When that time comes, you will complain loudly to the king, the king that you yourselves have chosen, but Yahweh will not pay attention to you."

## 1 Samuel 8:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- voice
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- voice
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But the people refused to listen to Samuel; they said, "No! There must be a king over us

### UST

<sup>19</sup> But the people refused to pay attention to what Samuel said. They said, "We do not care about what you say! We want a king!

## 1 Samuel 8:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- judge, judgment
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- judge, judgment
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> so that we might be like all the other nations, and so that our king may judge us and go out before us and fight our battles.”

### UST

<sup>20</sup> We want to be like the other nations. We want a king to rule us and to lead our soldiers when they go to fight.”

## 1 Samuel 8:21

### he repeated them in the ears of Yahweh

Here “the ears of Yahweh” refers to Yahweh. Samuel prayed to Yahweh repeating all that the people said. Alternate translation: “he repeated them to Yahweh” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> When Samuel heard all the words of the people he repeated them in the ears of Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> When Samuel told Yahweh what the people had said,

## 1 Samuel 8:22

### Obey their voice

Here the metonym “their voice” refers to the will of the people.  
Alternate translation: “Obey the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### cause someone to be king for them

“make someone king over them.” Use the common term in your language for making someone king.

### go to his own city

“go home”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- voice
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- voice
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

### ULT

**22** Yahweh said to Samuel, “Obey their voice and cause someone to be king for them.” So Samuel said to the men of Israel, “Every man must go to his own city.”

### UST

**22** Yahweh replied, “Do what they are telling you to do. Give them a king!” So Samuel agreed, and then he sent the people home.

## **1 Samuel 9**

### **1 Samuel 9 General Notes**

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Samuel chooses Saul to be their king**

When the donkeys of Saul's father strayed away, Saul went looking for them. When he could not find them, he asked Samuel to ask God where they were. Samuel said the donkeys had been found. He invited Saul as the guest of honor to a feast and gave him a place to sleep for the night.

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Rhetorical questions**

Saul uses two rhetorical questions to convince Samuel he is not important: "Am not I a Benjamite, from the smallest of the tribes of Israel? Is not my clan the least of all the clans of the tribe of Benjamin?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 1 Samuel 9:1

### General Information:

If your language has a way of telling the reader that the writer is giving background information in these verses, you could use it here. (See: [Background Information](#))

### a man of influence

Possible meanings are 1) he was a wealthy man or 2) he was a nobleman or 3) he was a mighty and brave man.

### Kish...Abiel...Zeror...Bekorath...Aphiah

These are names of the men of Saul's family line. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Benjamite

A Benjamite is someone who belongs to the tribe of Benjamin.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)
- son (5)
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son (2)
- son (3)
- son (4)
- son (5)
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> There was a man from Benjamin, a man of influence. His name was Kish son of Abiel son of Zeror son of Bekorath son of Aphiah, the son of a Benjamite.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Now there was a rich and influential man, whose name was Kish. He belonged to the tribe descended from Benjamin. Kish was son of Abiel and the grandson of Zeror. He was from the family of Bekorath and from the clan of Aphiah.

## 1 Samuel 9:2

### handsome

someone who looks good

### From his shoulders upward he was taller than any of the people

The other tall people in Israel did not even come up to his shoulders.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> He had a son named Saul, a handsome young man. There was no man among the people of Israel who was a more handsome person than he. From his shoulders upward he was taller than any of the people.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Kish had a son whose name was Saul. He was more handsome than any of the other Israelite men, and he was a head taller than any of the other Israelite men.

## 1 Samuel 9:3

### Now

The writer has ended the background information that began in (1 Samuel 9:1) and starts a new main part of the story.

### arise and go

“stop what you are doing and go”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now the donkeys of Kish, Saul's father, were lost. So Kish said to Saul his son, "Take one of the servants with you; arise and go look for the donkeys."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> One day, some of Kish's female donkeys wandered off. So Kish told Saul, "Take one of my servants with you, and go and search for the donkeys!"

## 1 Samuel 9:4

**the hill country of Ephraim...the land of Shalishah...the land of Shaalim...the land of the Benjamites**

These are all areas in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**did not find them...they were not there...did not find them**

The words "them" and "they" all refer to the donkeys.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation (2)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So Saul passed through the hill country of Ephraim and went through the land of Shalishah, but they did not find them. Then they passed through the land of Shaalim, but they were not there. Then he passed through the land of the Benjamites, but they did not find them.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So Saul did that. He took a servant, and they walked through the hill country where the descendants of Ephraim lived, and then they went through the regions of Shalishah and Shaalim, and then they went through all the region belonging to the tribe of Benjamin, but they could not find the donkeys.

## 1 Samuel 9:5

### land of Zuph

This is an area in Israel just north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When they came to the land of Zuph, Saul said to his servant who was with him, "Come, let us go back, or my father may stop caring for the donkeys and begin to worry about us."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Finally, they came to the region of Zuph. Then Saul said to the servant, "Let us go back home. If we do not do that, my father will stop worrying about the donkeys and start worrying about us."

## 1 Samuel 9:6

### man of God

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 2:27](#). Alternate translation: “a man who hears and tells words from God”

### which way we should go on our journey

“which way we should go to find the donkeys”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> But the servant said to him, “Listen, there is a man of God in this city. He is a man who is held in honor; everything that he says comes true. Let us go there; maybe he can tell us which way we should go on our journey.”

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But the servant said, “I have another idea. There is one of God’s prophets who lives in this town. People respect him very much, because everything he predicts comes true. Let us go and talk to him. Perhaps he can tell us where we can go to find the donkeys.”

## 1 Samuel 9:7

### what can we bring the man?

Giving a gift is a sign of respect for the man of God.

### man of God

This phrase usually means a prophet of Yahweh. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 2:27](#). Alternate translation: “a man who hears and tells words from God”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [bread](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [bread](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Saul said to his servant, “But if we go, what can we bring the man? For the bread in our sack is gone, and there is no present to bring to the man of God. What do we have?”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Saul replied to the servant, “If we go to talk with him, we should give a gift to him, but what can we give to him? We have no more food in our sacks. Do we have anything else to give to him?”

## 1 Samuel 9:8

### one-fourth of a shekel

"1/4 of a shekel." A shekel is a type of money used in the Old Testament. (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Fractions](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> The servant answered Saul and said, "Here, I have with me one-fourth of a shekel of silver that I will give to the man of God, to tell us which way we should go."

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> The servant replied, "Look at this! I have a small piece of silver. I can give this to him, and then he will tell us where to go to find the donkeys."

## 1 Samuel 9:9

### Formerly in Israel...seer

This is cultural information added by the Hebrew author. If it is not natural in your language to state this information here, it can be moved to the end of verse 11. (See: [Background Information](#))

### For today's prophet was formerly called a seer

"Seer is the old name for what we call a prophet today"

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> (Formerly in Israel, when a man went to seek the knowledge of God's will, he said, "Come, let us go to the seer." For today's prophet was formerly called a seer.)

### UST

<sup>9-11</sup> Saul said, "Very good, let us go talk to him." So they went to the town where the prophet lived. As they were going up the hill into the town, they met some young women who were coming out of the town to get some water from a well. One of them asked the women, "Is the seer in the town today?" They said that because previously, if people in Israel wanted a message from God, they would say, "Let us go to the seer," and people who now are called prophets were at that time called seers, or "those who see visions from God."

## 1 Samuel 9:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- walk, walked
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then Saul said to his servant, "Well said. Come, let us go." So they went to the city where the man of God was.

### UST

## 1 Samuel 9:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**11** As they went up the hill to the city, they found young women coming out to draw water; Saul and his servant said to them, "Is the seer here?"

### UST

**9-11** Saul said, "Very good, let us go talk to him." So they went to the town where the prophet lived. As they were going up the hill into the town, they met some young women who were coming out of the town to get some water from a well. One of them asked the women, "Is the seer in the town today?" They said that because previously, if people in Israel wanted a message from God, they would say, "Let us go to the seer," and people who now are called prophets were at that time called seers, or "those who see visions from God."

## 1 Samuel 9:12

### the people are sacrificing today

These are likely the feast or first-fruit sacrifices, not the sin sacrifices, which must be held at the tabernacle.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> They answered, and said, "He is; see, he is just ahead of you. Hurry up, for he is coming to the city today, because the people are sacrificing today at the high place.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> The women replied, "Yes, he is in the town. In fact, he is walking on the road ahead of you. He arrived in the town today because the people are going to offer a sacrifice on the altar where the people gather to worship God.

## 1 Samuel 9:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- people, people group,
- devour
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- people, people group,
- devour
- devour

### ULT

**13** As soon as you enter the city you will find him, before he goes up to the high place to eat. The people will not eat until he comes, because he will bless the sacrifice; afterwards those who are invited will eat. Now go up, for you will find him immediately."

### UST

**13** If you go quickly, you will have time to talk to him before he goes there. The people who have been invited will not start eating until he arrives there and blesses the sacrifice."

## 1 Samuel 9:14

### to go up to the high place

This is a place that the people had designated as holy to make sacrifices and offerings to Yahweh. The writer writes as though it were outside the wall that was around the city.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**14** So they went up to the city. As they were entering the city, they saw Samuel coming out toward them, to go up to the high place.

#### UST

**14** So Saul and the servant entered the town. As they went through the gates, they saw Samuel as he was coming toward them; he was on his way to where people were going to offer sacrifices.

## 1 Samuel 9:15

### General Information:

The writer stops telling the story and gives background information so the reader can understand what happens next. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- exile, exiled

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- exile, exiled

### ULT

**15** Now the day before Saul came, Yahweh had revealed to Samuel:

### UST

**15** On the previous day, Yahweh had told Samuel,

## 1 Samuel 9:16

### you will anoint him to be prince

The term prince is used here instead of king. This is the man whom God has chosen to be king of Israel. (See: [Euphemism](#))

### the land of Benjamin

"the land where people from the tribe of Benjamin live"

### from the hand of the Philistines

Here the word "hand" is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: "from the control of the Philistines" or "so the Philistines will no longer control them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### For I have looked on my people with pity

"My people are suffering and I want to help them"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

#### ULT

**16** "Tomorrow about this time I will send you a man from the land of Benjamin, and you will anoint him to be prince over my people Israel. He will save my people from the hand of the Philistines. For I have looked on my people with pity because their call for help has come to me."

#### UST

**16** "At this time tomorrow, I will send to you a man from the land where the descendants of Benjamin live. Pour olive oil on his head to indicate that he will be the leader of my Israelite people. I have seen that my people are suffering because the Philistine people are oppressing them, and I have heard my people as they have called out to me for help. The man whom you anoint will rescue my people from the power of the Philistine people."

## 1 Samuel 9:17

### Yahweh told him

“Yahweh told Samuel”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

#### ULT

**17** When Samuel saw Saul, Yahweh told him, “Here is the man I told you about! He is the one who will rule over my people.”

#### UST

**17** When Samuel saw Saul, Yahweh said to him, “This is the man I told you about yesterday! He is the one who will rule my people!”

## 1 Samuel 9:18

### the seer

“the prophet of Yahweh”

### Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

### ULT

**18** Then Saul came close to Samuel in the gate and said, “Tell me where is the house of the seer?”

### UST

**18** Saul saw Samuel at the town gate, but he did not know that it was Samuel. He went over to him and asked him, “Can you tell me, where is the house of the man who sees visions from God?”

## 1 Samuel 9:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- devour

### Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- devour

### ULT

<sup>19</sup> Samuel answered Saul and said, "I am the seer. Go up before me to the high place, for today you will eat with me. In the morning I will let you go, and I will tell you everything that is on your mind."

### UST

<sup>19</sup> Samuel replied, "I am that man. Go ahead of me with your servant to the place where the people make sacrifices. Both of you will eat with me today. Tomorrow morning I will tell you what you are wanting to know, and then I will send you home."

## 1 Samuel 9:20

### Then on whom are all the desires of Israel set? Is it not on you and all your father's house?

These questions are an expression of deep conviction that Saul is the one whom Yahweh wants to be the king that the Israelites are looking for. The questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "You should know that it is on you that all the desires of Israel are set. They are set on you and your father's family." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> As for your donkeys that were lost three days ago, do not worry about them, for they have been found. Then on whom are all the desires of Israel set? Is it not on you and all your father's house?"

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Also, do not worry anymore about those donkeys that wandered away three days ago. Someone has found them."

## 1 Samuel 9:21

**Am not I a Benjamite...of Israel? Is not my clan... Benjamin? Why then have you spoken to me in this manner?**

Saul is expressing surprise because Benjamin was the smallest tribe in Israel, and other Israelites considered the tribe unimportant. Also, Benjamites considered the clan of which Saul was a member as unimportant. These questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "I am from the tribe of Benjamin, the least important of all tribes. And my clan is the least important clan in our tribe. I do not understand why you are saying that the Israelite people want me and my family to do something important." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- family, household
- family, household
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- family, household
- family, household
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen (2)

### ULT

**21** Saul answered and said, "Am not I a Benjamite, from the smallest of the tribes of Israel? Is not my clan the least of all the clans of the tribe of Benjamin? Why then have you spoken to me in this manner?"

### UST

**21** Saul replied, "I am from the tribe of Benjamin, the smallest of all tribes! And my family is the least important family in our tribe! So why are you talking to me like this, about the Israelite people wanting me and my family?"

## 1 Samuel 9:22

### the hall

The writer assumes that the reader knows that near the place where they would offer sacrifices there was a large building in which people would eat together.

### head place

This is the seat of honor.

### thirty people

"30 people" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**22** So Samuel took Saul and his servant, brought them into the hall, and seated them at the head place of those who had been invited, who were about thirty people.

### UST

**22** Then Samuel brought Saul and the servant into the big dining room, and told them to sit at the head of the table, indicating that he was honoring them more than he was honoring the thirty people who had been invited.

## 1 Samuel 9:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Samuel said to the cook, "Bring the portion which I gave to you, of which I said to you, 'Put it aside.'"

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Then Samuel told the cook, "Bring to me the special piece of meat that I told you to set aside."

## 1 Samuel 9:24

### what was on it

Possible meanings are 1) the other food that Saul was to eat along with the meat or 2) other parts of the bull.

### Then Samuel said

In the original language it is not clear who is speaking. It is possible that the cook is speaking to Saul. Alternate translation: "Then the cook said"

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- appoint, appointed
- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- people, people group,
- devour
- devour
- feast, feasting
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- appoint, appointed
- exalt, exalted, exaltation
- people, people group,
- devour
- devour
- feast, feasting
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### ULT

**24** So the cook took up the thigh and what was on it and set it before Saul. Then Samuel said, "See what has been kept is set before you. Eat it, because it has been kept for you until the appointed time, from the time when I said, 'I have invited the people.'" So Saul ate with Samuel that day.

### UST

**24** So the cook brought the leg and the meat that was on it; he set it in front of Saul. Samuel said to Saul, "Start eating it. I told the cook to save this for you, so that you could eat it at this time, when all these people whom I invited are here." So Saul and Samuel ate together.

## 1 Samuel 9:25

### on the rooftop

This is a normal place for family and guests to eat, visit, and sleep. It tends to be cooler in the evening and at night than the inside of the house.

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> When they had come down from the high place into the city, Samuel spoke with Saul on the rooftop.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> After they finished eating, they returned to the town. Then Samuel took Saul up to the flat roof of his house, and talked with him there.

## 1 Samuel 9:26

### Samuel called to Saul on the rooftop and said

What Saul was doing on the rooftop can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “while Saul was sleeping on the rooftop, Samuel called to him and said” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Then at the break of dawn, Samuel called to Saul on the rooftop and said, “Get up, so I can send you on your way.” So Saul got up, and both he and Samuel went out into the street.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> As the sun was rising the next morning, Samuel called up to Saul, “Get up! It is time for me to send you on the road back home.” So Samuel got up, and later Samuel and Saul left the house together.

## 1 Samuel 9:27

### ahead of us”—and he went ahead—”but you must stay

It is possible that Samuel speaks all of these words. Alternate translation: “ahead of us, and when he has gone ahead, you must stay”

### that I may announce the message of God to you

“so that I can tell you God’s message for you”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- appoint, appointed
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- appoint, appointed
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> As they were going to the outskirts of the city, Samuel said to Saul, “Tell the servant to go ahead of us”—and he went ahead—”but you must stay here awhile, that I may announce the message of God to you.”

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> When they got to the edge of the town, Samuel told Saul to send his servant ahead. After the servant left, Samuel said to Saul, “Stay here for a few minutes, in order that I can give you a message I received from God.”

## 1 Samuel 10

### 1 Samuel 10 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This is the first chapter about King Saul.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Saul as the New King

Samuel told Saul that God had chosen him to be king, and on the way home he would meet some prophets. Saul would then begin prophesying and God would give him the Holy Spirit to help him to know what to do. Samuel told everyone to come to Mizpah where he announced that God had chosen Saul to be their king. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Spirit](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical questions

This chapter uses rhetorical questions to express different ideas: to state a fact ("Has not Yahweh anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance?"), to express surprise ("And who is their father?"), to say he is someone very special ("Do you see the man that Yahweh has chosen?"), and to express contempt ("How can this man save us?"). (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

##### Idioms

Samuel frequently uses idioms when prophesying: "going to God" means "going to worship God"; "take it from their hands" means "accept their gift"; "rush upon you" means "control you"; "hand finds to do" means "what you think you should do"; "God is with you" means "God is directing you"; "another heart" means "a different way of thinking"; "came to pass" means "happened"; "before Yahweh" means "to do work for Yahweh"; and "hearts God had touched" means "God had made them want to help Saul." (See: [Idiom](#))

## 1 Samuel 10:1

### took a flask of oil, poured it on Saul's head

In Israelite culture, when a prophet poured oil on someone's head, that person received a blessing from Yahweh.

#### flask

a small container made from baked clay

### Has not Yahweh anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance?

Samuel knows the answer to his question. He is reminding Saul that Yahweh has chosen him to be king of Israel. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has certainly anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- head

#### Translation Words - UST

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Yahweh
- head

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Samuel took a flask of oil, poured it on Saul's head, and kissed him. He said, "Has not Yahweh anointed you to be a ruler over his inheritance?"

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Samuel took a small jar of olive oil and poured some of it on Saul's head. Then he kissed Saul on the cheek, and told him, "I am doing this because Yahweh has chosen you to be the leader of his Israelite people."

## 1 Samuel 10:2

### Zelzah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### What should I do about my son?

Saul's father is now concerned about Saul and wants to find him.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> When you leave me today, you will find two men near Rachel's tomb, in the territory of Benjamin at Zelzah. They will say to you, 'The donkeys that you were looking for have been found. Now your father has stopped caring about the donkeys and is worried about you, saying, "What should I do about my son?"'

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> When you leave me today, and when you arrive near Rachel's tomb at Zelzah, in the region of the tribe of Benjamin, you will meet two men. They will say to you, 'The donkeys have been found, but now your father is worrying about you, and he is asking people if they have seen you.'

## 1 Samuel 10:3

### Tabor

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [bread](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [bread](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then you will go on further from there, and you will come to the oak of Tabor. Three men going to God at Bethel will meet you there, one carrying three young goats, another carrying three loaves of bread, and another carrying a skin of wine.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> When you arrive at the large oak tree at the town of Tabor, you will see three men coming toward you. They will be on their way to worship God at Bethel. One of them will be leading three young goats, one will be carrying three loaves of bread, and one will be carrying a container of wine.

## 1 Samuel 10:4

### take from their hands

The hands are a synecdoche for the person. “take from them” or “accept” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [bread](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [bread](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> They will greet you and give you two loaves of bread, which you will take from their hands.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> They will greet you, and they will offer you two of the loaves of bread. Accept them.

## 1 Samuel 10:5

### tambourine

This is a musical instrument with a head like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)
- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)
- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> After that, you will come to the hill of God, where the garrison of the Philistines is. When you arrive at the city, you will meet a group of prophets coming down from the high place with a harp, a tambourine, a flute, and a lyre before them; they will be prophesying.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> When you arrive at the hill where people worship God near the town of Gibeah, where there is a camp where the Philistine soldiers stay, you will meet a group of prophets who will be coming down from the altar on top of the hill. There will be people in front of them who will be playing various musical instruments: A harp, a tambourine, a flute, and a lyre. And all of them will be shouting out messages from God.

## 1 Samuel 10:6

### The Spirit of Yahweh will rush upon you

The phrase “rush upon” means that Yahweh’s Spirit will influence Saul. In this case it means it means he will make Saul prophesy and act like a different person. (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> The Spirit of Yahweh will rush upon you, and you will prophesy with them, and you will be changed into a different man.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> At that time the Spirit of Yahweh will come upon you, and you also will shout out in the same way. You will be changed, so that you will become like a different person.

## 1 Samuel 10:7

### do whatever your hand finds to do

Here Samuel speaks of Saul's hand as if it were a person trying to find things. Alternate translation: "do whatever you think is right to do" (See: [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now, when these signs come to you, do whatever your hand finds to do, for God is with you.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> After those things occur, do whatever you think is right to do, because God is with you.

## 1 Samuel 10:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Go down before me to Gilgal. Then I will come down to you to offer burnt offerings and to sacrifice peace offerings. Wait seven days until I come to you and show you what you must do."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then go ahead of me, down to the city of Gilgal, and wait for me for seven days. Then I will join you there to burn sacrifices and offer other sacrifices to enable you to continue to have fellowship with God. When I arrive there, I will tell you what other things you should do."

## 1 Samuel 10:9

### God gave him another heart

God enabled Samuel to think differently from the way he had thought before. (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> When Saul turned his back to leave Samuel, God gave him another heart. Then all these signs came to pass that day.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> As Saul started to leave there, God changed Saul's inner being. And all the things that Samuel had predicted happened on that day.

## 1 Samuel 10:10

### the Spirit of God rushed upon him

Samuel speaks as if the Spirit of Yahweh were a person running up to Saul and taking complete control of him. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:6](#). Alternate translation: “the Spirit of Yahweh took complete control of him” (See: [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- spirit, spiritual

#### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- spirit, spiritual

#### ULT

**10** When they came to the hill, a group of prophets met him, and the Spirit of God rushed upon him so that he prophesied with them.

#### UST

**10** When Saul and his servant arrived at Gibeah, they saw some prophets who were speaking messages that came directly from God. As the prophets were approaching Saul and his servant, God's Spirit came upon Saul powerfully, and he also began to shout out messages from God.

## 1 Samuel 10:11

### What has happened to the son of Kish?

Possible meanings are 1) the people are asking for information or 2) this is a rhetorical question that means Saul is not important.

Alternate translation: "Kish is not an important person, so it cannot be true that his son has become a prophet!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the son of Kish

"Saul, the son of Kish"

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**11** When everyone who knew him before saw him prophesying with the prophets, the people said to each other, "What has happened to the son of Kish? Is Saul one of the prophets now?"

### UST

**11** When people who had known Saul previously heard him doing what the prophets were doing, they said to each other, "What has happened to this son of Kish? Is he now really one of the prophets?"

## 1 Samuel 10:12

### Then who is their father?

This man uses a rhetorical question to remind people that being a prophet has nothing to do with who one's parents are. The question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It does not matter who the parents of these other prophets are. What matters is that, amazingly, Saul is speaking messages from God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Because of this, it became a saying, "Is Saul also one of the prophets?"

This became a proverb among the Israelites. Apparently people said this to express surprise when a person unexpectedly did something that he had not done before. The implied meaning of the question can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "And that is why, when people cannot believe some report, they think about what happened to Saul and say, 'Is Saul really one of the prophets?'" (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> A man who was from that same place answered, "Then who is their father?" Because of this, it became a saying, "Is Saul also one of the prophets?"

### UST

<sup>12</sup> One of the men who lived there replied, "It does not matter who the parents of these other prophets are. What matters is that, amazingly, Saul is speaking messages from God." And that is why, when people are very skeptical about some report, they think about what happened to Saul and say, "Is Saul really one of the prophets?"

## 1 Samuel 10:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**13** When he finished prophesying, he came to the high place.

### UST

**13** When Saul finished speaking the messages that God gave him, he went to the place where the people offered sacrifices.

## 1 Samuel 10:14

### Then Saul's uncle said to him

"Then the brother of Saul's father said to Saul"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**14** Then Saul's uncle said to him and his servant, "Where did you go?" He replied, "To look for the donkeys. When we saw that we could not find them, we went to Samuel."

#### UST

**14** Later, Saul's uncle saw him there, and asked him, "Where did you go?" Saul replied, "We went to look for the donkeys. When we could not find them, we came here to ask Samuel if he could tell us where they were."

## 1 Samuel 10:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**15** Saul's uncle said, "Please tell me what Samuel said to you."

### UST

**15** Saul's uncle replied, "What did Samuel tell you?"

## 1 Samuel 10:16

### he did not tell him about the matter of the kingdom

"Saul did not tell his uncle that God had appointed him to be the king of Israel"

#### ULT

**16** Saul replied to his uncle, "He told us plainly that the donkeys had been found." But he did not tell him about the matter of the kingdom, of which Samuel had spoken.

#### UST

**16** Saul replied, "He assured us that someone had found the donkeys." But he did not tell his uncle what Samuel had said about him becoming the king of Israel.

## 1 Samuel 10:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Mizpah
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Mizpah
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Now Samuel called the people together before Yahweh at Mizpah.

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Later Samuel summoned the people of Israel to gather at Mizpah to hear a message from Yahweh.

# 1 Samuel 10:18

## I brought up Israel out of Egypt

The name "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel. "I brought the people of Israel out of Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## the hand of the Egyptians...the hand of all the kingdoms

The word "hand" is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: "the power of the Egyptians...the power of all the kingdoms" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

**18** He said to the people of Israel, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel says: 'I brought up Israel out of Egypt, and I rescued you from the hand of the Egyptians, and from the hand of all the kingdoms that oppressed you.'

### UST

**18** After they arrived, he said to them, "This is what Yahweh, the God we Israelite people worship, says: 'I brought you Israelite people out of Egypt. I rescued your ancestors from the power of the rulers of Egypt and from all the other kings who oppressed them.

## 1 Samuel 10:19

### today

Samuel is speaking of the time since Israel had begun to reject God, not only the time since the sun had last set.

### Set a king over us

"Give us a king to rule us"

### present yourselves before Yahweh by your tribes and by your clans

"gather together by tribes and clans and come to stand before Yahweh"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- king, kingdom, kingship
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- king, kingdom, kingship
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### ULT

**19** But today you have rejected your God, who saves you from all of your calamities and your distresses; and you have said to him, 'Set a king over us.' Now present yourselves before Yahweh by your tribes and by your clans."

### UST

**19** I am the one who saves you from all your troubles and difficulties. But you have shown that you do not want to worship me. Instead, you have asked me to select a man to rule you as king. So now, your tribal and clan leaders must gather in my presence."

## 1 Samuel 10:20

### the tribe of Benjamin was chosen

This can be translated in active form. It is probably best not to say how the people knew whom Yahweh had chosen. Alternate translation: "Yahweh chose the tribe of Benjamin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

#### ULT

**20** So Samuel brought all the tribes of Israel near, and the tribe of Benjamin was chosen.

#### UST

**20** When those representatives came near to Samuel, God indicated that he had chosen someone from the tribe descended from Benjamin.

## 1 Samuel 10:21

### the clan of the Matrites was chosen...Saul son of Kish was chosen

This can be translated in active form. It is probably best not to say how the people knew whom Yahweh had chosen. Alternate translation: "Yahweh chose the clan of the Matrites...Yahweh chose Saul son of Kish" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- clan
- family, household
- seek, search, look for
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- clan
- family, household
- seek, search, look for
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

#### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Then he brought the tribe of Benjamin near by their clans; and the clan of the Matrites was chosen; and Saul son of Kish was chosen. But when they went looking for him, he could not be found.

#### UST

<sup>21</sup> Then Samuel told representatives of the tribe of Benjamin to come forward, and God indicated that from that tribe he had chosen someone from the family of Matri, and then God indicated that from the family of Matri he had chosen Saul son of Kish. But when they looked for Saul, they could not find him.

## 1 Samuel 10:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Then the people wanted to ask God more questions, "Is there still another man to come?" Yahweh answered, "He has hidden himself among the baggage."

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> So they asked Yahweh, "Has someone else been chosen, perhaps?" Yahweh replied, "The man is hiding among the army equipment."

## 1 Samuel 10:23

**he was taller than any of the people from his shoulders upward**

The other tall people in Israel did not even come up to his shoulders. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 9:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then they ran and retrieved Saul from there. When he stood among the people, he was taller than any of the people from his shoulders upward.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So they quickly went there and found Saul, and brought him in front of all the people. They could see that truly he was a head taller than anyone else.

## 1 Samuel 10:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- alarm, alarmed
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- alarm, alarmed
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then Samuel said to the people, "Do you see the man whom Yahweh has chosen? There is no one like him among all the people!" All the people shouted, "Long live the king!"

### UST

<sup>24</sup> Then Samuel said to all the people there, "This is the king whom Yahweh has chosen for you. Truly, there is no one else like him in all Israel!" All the people shouted, "May this king live a long time!"

## 1 Samuel 10:25

### the customs and rules of kingship

The abstract noun “kingship” can be translated with a noun clause. Alternate translation: “the customs and rules that a king would be required to follow” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- house

#### ULT

**25** Then Samuel told the people the customs and rules of kingship, wrote them down in a book, and placed it before Yahweh. Samuel then sent all the people away, each man to his own house.

#### UST

**25** Then Samuel told the people what things that the king would force them to do, and all the things the king was required to do. He wrote all those things in a scroll, and then he put it in the place of the temple where Yahweh was. Then Samuel sent all the people home.

## 1 Samuel 10:26

### whose hearts God had touched

God touching a person's heart is an idiom that means God put something in their mind or moved them to do something. Alternate translation: "who wanted to go with Saul because God had changed their thinking" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Saul also went to his home at Gibeah, and with him went some strong men, whose hearts God had touched.

#### UST

<sup>26</sup> When Saul returned to his home in the town of Gibeah, a group of courageous men decided to continually accompany Saul. They did that because God motivated them to do that.

## 1 Samuel 10:27

### How can this man save us?

This is a rhetorical question that is used to express sarcasm.  
Alternate translation: "This man has no power to save us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### despised

strongly disliked or hated

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- grain offering

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- grain offering

### ULT

**27** But some worthless men said, "How can this man save us?" These people despised Saul and did not bring him any gifts. But Saul kept silent. <sup>[1]</sup>

10:27 <sup>[1]</sup> Some modern versions add to this verse the following paragraph: *Nahash king of the Ammonites had severely oppressed the Gadites and Reubenites. He dug out the right eye of each man and did not allow anyone to rescue Israel. Across the Jordan River was left no Israelites whose right eye Nahash king of the Ammonites had not dug out. But seven thousand men had escaped from the Ammonites and had gone into Jabesh Gilead .*

### UST

**27** But some worthless men said, "How can this man save us from our enemies?" They despised him and refused to give him any gifts to show that they would be loyal to him. But Saul did not say anything to rebuke them.

# 1 Samuel 11

## 1 Samuel 11 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the story of King Saul by telling of his first victory in war.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Saul rescues the people of Jabesh Gilead

Nahash, king of the Ammonites, and his army surrounded the Israeli town of Jabesh Gilead. When the city's leaders asked for peace terms, Nahash demanded the right to poke out one eye of every man in order to show Israel their weakness. When Saul heard this, he called for all of Israel to help save this city. Many people came to help Saul's army. Israel was victorious and everyone wanted Saul as their king. At this time, Israel was not a truly unified country, even though it is often spoken of as one country. (See: [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Idioms

The idioms in this chapter explain the effect God has on his people: "rushed upon him" means "empowered him"; "terror...fell" means "they became afraid"; "as one man" means "they all agreed"; and "put to death" means "kill." (See: [Idiom](#))

## 1 Samuel 11:1

### Nahash

This is a man from Ammon, a descendent of Lot, Abraham's nephew. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonite](#)
- [cut off](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonite](#)
- [cut off](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then Nahash the Ammonite went and laid seige to Jabesh Gilead. All the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, "Make a covenant with us, and we will serve you."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> About a month later, King Nahash of Ammon led his army across the Jordan River, and they surrounded the city of Jabesh in the region of Gilead. But all the men of Jabesh appointed someone who said to Nahash, "Make an agreement with us not to kill us, and then we will let you rule us."

## 1 Samuel 11:2

### I gouge out

"I cut out" or "I pluck out"

### bring disgrace on

"bring shame on" or "bring a bad reputation to"

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Ammon, Ammonite
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- cut off

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Ammon, Ammonite
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- cut off

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Nahash the Ammonite replied, "On this condition will I make a treaty with you, that I gouge out all of your right eyes, and in this way bring disgrace on all Israel."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Nahash replied, "I will do that if you do one thing. Allow us to gouge out all the right eyes of your people. By doing that we will cause the people in other countries to despise all you Israelite people."

## 1 Samuel 11:3

### seven days

"7 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [elder](#), [older](#), [old](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [elder](#), [older](#), [old](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then the elders of Jabesh replied to him, "Leave us alone for seven days, so that we may send messengers to all the territory of Israel. Then, if there is no one to save us, we will surrender to you."

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> The leaders of Jabesh replied, "Do not attack us for the next seven days. During that time, we will send messengers throughout Israel to tell them what you are demanding. If no one will help us, then we will surrender to you."

## 1 Samuel 11:4

### Gibeah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The messengers came to Gibeah, where Saul lived, and told the people what had happened. All the people wept loudly.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> So the leaders of Jabesh sent messengers throughout Israel. When the messengers came to Gibeah, which was the city where Saul lived, and they told the people there about the situation, everyone started to cry.

## 1 Samuel 11:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Now Saul was following the oxen out of the field. Saul said, "What is wrong with the people that they are weeping?" They told Saul what the men of Jabesh had said.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> At that time, Saul was plowing in the field. When he returned home, he asked, "Why are all the people crying?" So they told him what the messengers from Jabesh had reported.

## 1 Samuel 11:6

### the Spirit of God rushed upon him

The phrase “rushed upon” means Yahweh’s Spirit influenced Saul. In this case he enabled Saul to cause the people to fearfully respect him as their king and to join his army. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 10:6](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- spirit, spiritual

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- spirit, spiritual

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When Saul heard what they said, the Spirit of God rushed upon him, and he was very angry.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then God’s Spirit came powerfully upon Saul, and he became very angry because of what Nahash wanted to do.

## 1 Samuel 11:7

### does not come out after

Saul was calling all the men of Israel to come fight against Nahash and the Ammonites.

### Then the terror of Yahweh fell on the people

Yahweh enabled people to fearfully respect Saul as their king. The result was that the men rallied together with Saul at Bezek.

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> He took a yoke of oxen, cut them into pieces, and sent them throughout all the territory of Israel with the messengers. He said, "Whoever does not come out after Saul and after Samuel, this is what will be done to his oxen." Then the terror of Yahweh fell on the people, and they came out together as one man.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> He took two of his oxen and killed them and cut them into pieces. Then he sent messengers carrying those pieces throughout Israel to tell people this message: "Saul says that he cut this ox in pieces, and that he will do the same thing to the oxen of anyone who refuses to come with him and Samuel to fight the army from Ammon!" Then Yahweh caused all the people of Israel to be afraid of what Saul might do to them if they did not go and help Saul. So the men all gathered together.

## 1 Samuel 11:8

### Bezek

This is the name of a town near Jabesh Gilead. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

**the people of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand**

“the people of Israel were 300,000, and the men of Judah were 30,000” ( See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> When he mustered them at Bezek, the people of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> When Saul counted them at Bezek, he saw that there were 300,000 Israelite men there, as well as thirty thousand men from the tribe of Judah.

## 1 Samuel 11:9

### They said to the messengers

"They" refers to Samuel and Saul.

### by the time the sun is hot

"before the hottest part of the day" or "before noon"

### Jabesh Gilead...Jabesh

These are the names of places. See how you translated them in [1 Samuel 11:1](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

### Translation Words - UST

- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> They said to the messengers that came, "You will tell the men of Jabesh Gilead, 'Tomorrow, by the time the sun is hot, you will be rescued.'" So the messengers went and told the men of Jabesh, and they were glad.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So Saul sent messengers back to the people at Jabesh to tell them, "We will rescue you by the time the weather is hot tomorrow morning." The messengers went and told the people of Jabesh, who became very happy when they heard the news.

## 1 Samuel 11:10

### Nahash

This is the name of a king. See how you translated this name in [1 Samuel 11:1](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**10** Then the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, "Tomorrow we will surrender to you, and you can do to us whatever seems good to you."

#### UST

**10** Then the men of Jabesh told Nahash, "Tomorrow we will surrender to you, and then you can do to us whatever you want to."

## 1 Samuel 11:11

### the morning watch

This was before dawn when most people in the camp were still asleep.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- head

#### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- head

#### ULT

**11** The next day Saul put the people in three groups. They came into the middle of the camp during the morning watch, and they attacked and defeated the Ammonites until the heat of the day. Those who survived were scattered, so that no two of them were left together.

#### UST

**11** But before the sun rose the next morning, Saul and his army arrived. He divided them into three groups. They rushed into the camp of the soldiers from Ammon, and attacked them. By noontime they had killed most of them, and those who were not killed scattered. Each of them who ran away ran away alone.

## 1 Samuel 11:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then the people said to Samuel, "Who was it who said, 'Will Saul reign over us?' Bring the men, so we can put them to death."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then the people of Jabesh said to Samuel, "Where are those men who said that they did not want Saul to be our king? Bring them here, and we will kill them!"

## 1 Samuel 11:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

#### ULT

<sup>13</sup> But Saul said, “No one must be put to death this day, because today Yahweh has rescued Israel.”

#### UST

<sup>13</sup> But Saul replied, “No, we are not going to execute anyone today, because this is the day that Yahweh has saved us Israelite people. It is a day to rejoice, not to kill anyone.”

## 1 Samuel 11:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### ULT

**14** Then Samuel said to the people, "Come, let us go to Gilgal and renew the monarchy there."

### UST

**14** Then Samuel said to the people, "Let us all go to Gilgal, and there we will again proclaim that Saul is our king."

## 1 Samuel 11:15

### made Saul king before Yahweh

“made Saul king while Yahweh watched”

### There they sacrificed peace offerings before Yahweh

Part of Samuel's service to Yahweh is to offer sacrifices even though he is not from the line of Aaron or Levi.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Gilgal
- people, people group,
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- reign, rule

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Gilgal
- people, people group,
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- reign, rule

#### ULT

**15** So all the people went to Gilgal and made Saul king before Yahweh in Gilgal. There they sacrificed peace offerings before Yahweh, and Saul and all the men of Israel rejoiced greatly.

#### UST

**15** So they went to Gilgal. There, knowing that Yahweh was watching, they proclaimed that Saul was their king. Then they offered sacrifices to enable them to continue to have fellowship with Yahweh. And Saul and all the other Israelite people were very happy.

## 1 Samuel 12

### 1 Samuel 12 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Samuel's farewell address

This chapter serves as a type of farewell address. This is a way for leaders to give instructions to their followers before they leave or die. Samuel first established his holiness before calling on the people to repent of their desire to have a king. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#) and [repent](#), [repentance](#))

#### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

It is common in Scripture to use Israel's history to show how faithful God has been. This gives the readers evidence to trust in Yahweh in their current situation. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

## 1 Samuel 12:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- voice
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- voice
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Samuel said to all Israel, "I have listened to everything you said to me, and I have set a king over you.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Samuel said this to all the Israelite people: "I have done everything that you told me to do, and I have given a king to rule you.

## 1 Samuel 12:2

### the king walking before you...I have walked before you

These expressions mean that people can actually see the kind of lives Saul and Samuel are living. Alternate translation: “the king’s life was seen...My life was seen” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Now, here is the king walking before you; and I am old and gray; and, my sons are with you. I have walked before you from my youth until today.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> My own sons are grown up and with you now, but I have appointed Saul instead of one of them, and he is now your leader. I am now old, and my hair is gray. I have been your leader ever since I was a boy.

## 1 Samuel 12:3

### Here I am; testify against me before Yahweh and before his anointed one

By this statement, Samuel is challenging the people to speak up if he has done anything wrong to anyone. Alternate translation: "I stand in front of you now. I ask you to speak in front of Yahweh and his anointed king if I have done you any wrong" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Whose ox have I taken? Whose donkey have I taken?

Samuel uses rhetorical questions to remind the people that he has never stolen their animals. Alternate translation: "I have never stolen a prized animal from anyone." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Whom have I defrauded?

Samuel uses another rhetorical question to say he has always been honest. Alternate translation: "I have never cheated or bribed any man." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Testify against me, and I will restore it to you

"If I have done any of these evil things, speak now, and I will pay back what I owe. I will make right any wrong"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- donkey, mule
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- donkey, mule
- return

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Here I am; testify against me before Yahweh and before his anointed one. Whose ox have I taken? Whose donkey have I taken? Whom have I defrauded? Whom have I oppressed? From whose hand have I taken a bribe to blind my eyes with? Testify against me, and I will restore it to you."

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Now tell me, while Yahweh is listening, and while the king whom he has chosen is listening, whose ox or donkey have I stolen during all those years? Whom have I cheated? Whom have I oppressed badly? From whom have I accepted a bribe, in order that I would ignore the evil things he had done? If I have done any of these things, tell me, and I will pay back what I owe."

## 1 Samuel 12:4

### from any man's hand

This phrase means what a person possesses or what they have done to obtain favor from others. This is a polite way of saying he has not stolen, nor has he given or taken bribes. (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> They said, "You have not cheated us, oppressed us, or have stolen anything from any man's hand."

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> They replied, "No, you have never cheated anyone or oppressed anyone or accepted a bribe from anyone."

## 1 Samuel 12:5

### in my hand

This phrase means what a person possesses or what they have done to obtain favor from others. This is a polite way of saying he has not stolen, nor has he given or taken bribes. (See: [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)
- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)
- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He said to them, "Yahweh is witness against you, and his anointed one is witness today, that you have found nothing in my hand." They replied, "Yahweh is witness."

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then Samuel said, "Today Yahweh can testify, and the king whom you chose can testify, that I have not taken a bribe from anyone." They replied, "Yes, Yahweh can say that he knows that is true."

## 1 Samuel 12:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Samuel said to the people, "It is Yahweh who appointed Moses and Aaron, and who brought your fathers up from the land of Egypt.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Samuel continued by saying, "Yahweh is the one who appointed Moses and Aaron to lead our ancestors. He is the one who brought them out of Egypt. And he is the one who will testify that what I am saying is true.

## 1 Samuel 12:7

### all of the righteous deeds of Yahweh

Samuel is calling their attention to the history of Yahweh's dealing with Israel, which has been filled with goodness and purpose.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now then, present yourself, so that I may plead with you before Yahweh about all of the righteous deeds of Yahweh, which he did for you and your fathers.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Now while Yahweh is listening, stand here quietly while I accuse you and tell you that your requesting a king instead of trusting Yahweh to lead you was wrong. I will do that by reminding you of all the great miracles that Yahweh performed for you and your ancestors.

## 1 Samuel 12:8

### Jacob...Moses...Aaron

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- cry, cry out, outcry

#### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Aaron
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- cry, cry out, outcry

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> When Jacob came to Egypt, and your ancestors cried out to Yahweh, then Yahweh sent Moses and Aaron, who led your ancestors out of Egypt and they settled in this place.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Many years after our ancestor Jacob went to Egypt, his descendants pleaded to Yahweh to help them. So Yahweh sent Moses and Aaron to them, and they led our ancestors out of Egypt, and eventually they settled in this land.

## 1 Samuel 12:9

### into the hand of Sisera...Philistines...king of Moab

“into the power of Sisera...Philistines...king of Moab”

#### Sisera

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Hazor

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### he sold them

This is an expression for God giving them over to their enemies to be their slaves.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But they forgot Yahweh their God; he sold them into the hand of Sisera, captain of the armies of Hazor, into the hand of the Philistines, and into the hand of the king of Moab; these all fought against your ancestors.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> But our ancestors soon forgot about Yahweh, their God. So he allowed Sisera, the commander of the army from Hazor, to defeat them. He also allowed the Philistines and the army of the king of Moab to fight our ancestors and defeat them.

## 1 Samuel 12:10

### They cried out to Yahweh

"They" refers to the nation of Israel.

### have served the Baals and the Ashtoreths

Serving here is referring to acting worshipful towards the false gods. Alternate translation: "have worshiped false gods and goddesses" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the hand of our enemies

This statement is using "hand" to refer to power. Alternate translation: "the power or control of our enemies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- adversary, enemy
- cry, cry out, outcry

### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- adversary, enemy
- cry, cry out, outcry

### ULT

**10** They cried out to Yahweh and said, 'We have sinned, because we have forsaken Yahweh and have served the Baals and the Ashtoreths. But now rescue us from the hand of our enemies, and we will serve you.'

### UST

**10** Then our ancestors pleaded with Yahweh again to help them. They admitted, 'Yahweh, we have sinned, and we have forsaken you. We have worshiped idols that represent the god Baal and the goddess Ashtoreth. But if you rescue us from our enemies, we will worship you only.'

## 1 Samuel 12:11

### Jerub Baal

This is sometimes translated Jerubbaal. This is a name of godly honor and strength to fight the false god.

### Yahweh sent...and gave you victory

Samuel is telling the story of what God did after the people's confession of sin and plea for help. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Jerub Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel

These are the names of some judges that God raised up. Samuel included himself in this list. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

**11** So Yahweh sent Jerub Baal, Bedan, Jephthah, and Samuel, and gave you victory over your enemies all around you, so that you lived in security.

### UST

**11** So Yahweh sent men such as Gideon, Barak, Jephthah, and me to save you. And as a result, you did not have to worry about any enemies attacking you.

## 1 Samuel 12:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> When you saw that Nahash the king of the people of Ammon came against you, you said to me, 'No! Instead, a king must reign over us'—although Yahweh your God, was your king.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> But now, when King Nahash of Ammon came with his army to attack you, you were afraid. So you came to me, and said, 'We want a king to rule us,' even though Yahweh was already your king!

## 1 Samuel 12:13

### whom you have chosen, whom you have asked for

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that this is the king whom the people wanted. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

**13** Now here is the king whom you have chosen, whom you have asked for and whom Yahweh has now appointed as king over you.

#### UST

**13** So now, look, here is the king whom you have chosen. You asked for a king, and Yahweh has now appointed a king for you.

## 1 Samuel 12:14

### fear...serve...obey...not rebel

These similar words are used to emphasize how important this is.  
(See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- voice
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- voice
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

**14** If you fear Yahweh, serve him, obey his voice, and not rebel against the command of Yahweh, then both you and the king who reigns over you will be followers of Yahweh your God.

#### UST

**14** If you honor Yahweh and if you serve him, and if you listen to what he says and obey what he commands, and if you and the king who rules over you do what Yahweh your God wants you to do, things will go well for you all.

## 1 Samuel 12:15

### Yahweh's hand will be against you, as it was against your ancestors

This speaks of Yahweh punishing the people as his “hand” being against them. The word “hand” here represents Yahweh's power and control. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will punish you, just as he punished your ancestors” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [voice](#)
- [disobey](#), [disobeyed](#), [disobedience](#), [rebellious](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [voice](#)
- [disobey](#), [disobeyed](#), [disobedience](#), [rebellious](#)

#### ULT

**15** If you do not obey the voice of Yahweh, but rebel against the commands of Yahweh, then Yahweh's hand will be against you, as it was against your ancestors.

#### UST

**15** But if you do not listen to what Yahweh says, if you disobey what he commands, then he will punish you, just as he punished our ancestors.

## 1 Samuel 12:16

### before your eyes

The word “eyes” here represents the people of the nation of Israel.  
Alternate translation: “out in the open where all of the nation of Israel may see” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**16** Even now present yourself and see this great thing which Yahweh will do before your eyes.

### UST

**16** Now stand here quietly and see the great thing that Yahweh is about to do.

## 1 Samuel 12:17

### Is it not the wheat harvest today?

Samuel knows it is harvest time. He is using a rhetorical question to emphasize that it does not usually rain at this time so the people will know that the rain that will ruin their harvest is a judgment from Yahweh. Alternate translation: "It is harvest time and does not usually rain at this time" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### he may send thunder and rain

Samuel is asking Yahweh to punish Israel for asking for a king by sending a rainstorm during the harvest which will ruin the grain.

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- harvest, reap
- king, kingdom, kingship
- wheat
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- harvest, reap
- king, kingdom, kingship
- wheat
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**17** Is it not the wheat harvest today? I will call upon Yahweh, that he may send thunder and rain. Then you will know and see that your wickedness is great, which you have done in the sight of Yahweh, in asking for yourselves a king."

### UST

**17** You know that it does not rain at this time of the year, during the time when you harvest wheat. But I will ask Yahweh to send thunder and lightning and rain today. When he does that, you will realize that Yahweh considers that you have done a very wicked thing by requesting a king."

## 1 Samuel 12:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

**18** So Samuel called to Yahweh; and that same day Yahweh sent thunder and rain. Then all the people greatly feared Yahweh and Samuel.

### UST

**18** Then Samuel prayed to Yahweh, and Yahweh caused it to thunder and lightning and rain. So all the people became very afraid of Yahweh and of Samuel.

## 1 Samuel 12:19

### so that we do not die

The ultimate punishment for sin is death. The nation of Israel had seen Yahweh destroy the nations that had oppressed them. They were concerned that they had become “dedicated for destruction” like those nations.

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**19** Then all the people said to Samuel, “Pray for your servants to Yahweh your God, so that we do not die. For we have added to all our sins this evil in asking for a king for ourselves.”

### UST

**19** They cried out to Samuel, “Pray for us! We have added to our previous sins by requesting a king! Pray to Yahweh, your God, in order that we will not die because of having done that!”

## 1 Samuel 12:20

### Do not be afraid

The people did evil and were afraid of God destroying them.  
 Alternate translation: “Do not be afraid that God will be angry and destroy you because of this sin” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Samuel replied, “Do not be afraid. You have done all this evil, but do not turn away from Yahweh, but serve Yahweh with all your heart.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Samuel replied, “Do not be afraid! You have done this evil thing, but do not stop doing the things that Yahweh wants you to do. Instead, serve Yahweh with your whole inner being.

## 1 Samuel 12:21

### turn away after empty things

“pursue worship of false gods”

#### ULT

**21** Do not turn away after empty things that cannot profit or rescue you, because they are useless.

#### UST

**21** Do not abandon Yahweh and worship useless idols. They cannot help you or save you from your enemies, because they are truly useless.

## 1 Samuel 12:22

### For the sake of his great name

Here “name” refers to the reputation of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “So that people will continue to honor and respect Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> For the sake of his great name, Yahweh will not reject his people, because it has pleased Yahweh to make you a people for himself.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Yahweh decided to make us his people. So he will not abandon us people whom he has chosen, because he would injure his own reputation of being completely faithful if he did that.

## 1 Samuel 12:23

### far be it from me that I should sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you

The people are filled with fear because of the rain and thunder that Yahweh sent when Samuel prayed. Some people may believe Samuel would use his prayers to harm them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- pray, prayer

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> As for me, far be it from me that I should sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you. Instead, I will teach you the way that is good and right.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> But as for me, I have solemnly promised that I will not sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you. And I will continue to teach you what things are good and right for you to do.

## 1 Samuel 12:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- heart
- Yahweh
- proud, pride, prideful

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- heart
- Yahweh
- proud, pride, prideful

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Only fear Yahweh and serve him in truth with all your heart. Consider the great things he has done for you.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> But you must honor Yahweh and serve him with your whole inner being. Never forget all the great things that he has done for you.

## 1 Samuel 12:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- afflict, affliction, distress
- afflict, affliction, distress
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- afflict, affliction, distress
- afflict, affliction, distress
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> But if you persist in doing evil, both you and your king will be destroyed."

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> If you keep doing wicked things, he will get rid of you and your king!"

## **1 Samuel 13**

### **1 Samuel 13 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter is the beginning of a story about Jonathan's victory over the Philistines.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Preparation for the battle**

Saul sent most of his army home before Jonathan attacked and defeated a Philistine garrison. This attack made the Philistines very angry, and they brought a huge army into Israel and camped at the top of a hill. Most of Saul's army ran away in fear and hid from the Philistines. There are many aspects of this story that give the reader the impression that Israel was unprepared for battle.

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Hyperbole**

Wanting to express the vast number of enemy soldiers, the author uses a hyperbole: "as numerous as the sand on the seashore," meaning "too many to count." (See: [Hyperbole](#))

## 1 Samuel 13:1

### General Information:

Samuel has renewed Saul's kingdom at Gilgal and Samuel has reminded the people to follow the Lord.

### Saul was thirty years old...over Israel

The text of this verse in ancient copies seems to have been mutilated, so modern versions have many different translations. They are all attempts to represent the most probable meaning of the original text.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Saul was thirty years old when he began to reign; when he had reigned forty years over Israel,

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Saul was thirty years old when he began to reign. He ruled for forty years.

## 1 Samuel 13:2

### chose three thousand men

"chose 3,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Two thousand were with him

"2,000 men were with him" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Michmash

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Gibeah of Benjamin

Gibeah is a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:26](#).

### The rest of the soldiers he sent home

"He sent the rest of the soldiers home"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> he chose three thousand men of Israel. Two thousand were with him in Michmash and in the hill country of Bethel, while a thousand were with Jonathan in Gibeah of Benjamin. The rest of the soldiers he sent home, each man to his tent.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Some years after he became king, he chose three thousand men from the Israelite army to go with him to fight the Philistines. Then he sent the other soldiers back home. Of the men he chose, two thousand stayed with Saul at Micmash and in the hill country near Bethel, and a thousand stayed with Saul's son Jonathan at Gibeah, in the area of the tribe of Benjamin.

## 1 Samuel 13:3

### **garrison of the Philistines**

“military base of the Philistines” or “military camp of the Philistines”

### **Geba**

This is the name of the town that the Philistine garrison was stationed in. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### **Translation Words - UST**

- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [trumpet, trumpeters](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### **ULT**

<sup>3</sup> Jonathan defeated the garrison of the Philistines that was at Geba and the Philistines heard of it. Then Saul blew the trumpet throughout all the land, saying, “Let the Hebrews hear.”

### **UST**

<sup>3</sup> Jonathan and the men who were with him attacked the Philistine soldiers who were camped at Geba. The other Philistines heard about that. So Saul realized that the army of Philistia would probably come to fight the Israelites again. So Saul sent messengers to blow trumpets throughout Israel to gather the people together and proclaim to them, “All you Hebrews need to hear that now the Philistines will start a war with us!”

## 1 Samuel 13:4

### All Israel heard that Saul had defeated

Possible meanings are that 1) Saul was taking responsibility for Jonathan's actions or 2) Saul was taking credit for Jonathan's actions.

### Israel had become a rotten smell to the Philistines

The Philistines hating the Israelites is spoken of as if the Israelites had become a bad smell that offended the Philistines. Alternate translation: "the Philistines hated the Israelites" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the soldiers were summoned together to join Saul at Gilgal

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Saul called the soldiers together to join him at Gilgal" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> All Israel heard that Saul had defeated the garrison of the Philistines, and also that Israel had become a rotten smell to the Philistines. Then the soldiers were summoned together to join Saul at Gilgal.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> The messengers told the rest of the army to gather together with Saul at Gilgal. And all the people in Israel heard the news. People were saying, "Saul's army has attacked the Philistine camp, with the result that now the Philistines hate us Israelites very much."

## 1 Samuel 13:5

### three thousand...six thousand

"3,000...6,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

### troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

This is an exaggeration that means a group of soldiers so large that it was difficult to count them. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Michmash

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Beth Aven

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel, with three thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. They came up and encamped at Michmash, east of Beth Aven.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> The Philistines gathered together and were given equipment to fight the Israelites. The Philistines had three thousand chariots and six thousand chariot drivers. Their soldiers seemed to be as many as grains of sand on the seashore. They went up and set up their tents at Micmash, to the east of Beth Aven, that is, Bethel.

## 1 Samuel 13:6

### General Information:

The Philistines had gathered together to fight against Israel.

### the people

This phrase refers to the nation of Israel.

### the people were distressed

“the people worried greatly”

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When the men of Israel saw that they were in trouble—for the people were distressed, the people hid in caves, in the underbrush, in rocks, in wells, and in pits.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> The Philistines attacked the Israelites very strongly, and the Israelite soldiers realized that they were in a very bad situation. So many of the Israelite soldiers hid in caves and holes in the ground, or among the rocks, or in pits, or in wells.

## 1 Samuel 13:7

### followed him trembling

The people were greatly afraid.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Gilgal
- Gad
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- Jordan River, Jordan
- Gilgal
- Gad
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Some of the Hebrews went over the Jordan to the land of Gad and Gilead. But Saul was still at Gilgal, and all the people followed him trembling.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Some of them crossed the Jordan River and went to the area where the region of the tribe of Gad and to the region of Gilead. But Saul stayed at Gilgal. All the soldiers who were with him were shaking because they were so afraid.

## 1 Samuel 13:8

### the time Samuel had set

“according to the time Samuel had told them he would come”

### the people were scattering from Saul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people had started to leave Saul” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- feast, feasting

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- feast, feasting

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He waited seven days, the time Samuel had set. But Samuel did not come to Gilgal, and the people were scattering from Saul.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Saul waited seven days, which was the number of days that Samuel had told him to wait for him. But Samuel did not come to Gilgal during that time, so many of the men in Saul's army began to leave him and run away.

## 1 Samuel 13:9

### Then he offered the burnt offering

Only the line of Aaron was permitted to perform the burnt offering sacrifice to God.

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Saul said, "Bring me the burnt offering and the peace offerings." Then he offered the burnt offering.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> So Saul said to the soldiers, "Bring to me an animal to be completely burned on the altar and one for the offering to enable us to continue to have fellowship with God." So the men did that.

## 1 Samuel 13:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> As soon as he finished offering the burnt offering Samuel arrived. Saul went out to meet him and to greet him.

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> And just as he was finished burning these offerings, Samuel arrived. Saul went to greet him.

## 1 Samuel 13:11

### What have you done

Samuel was not really asking a question, but giving a rebuke to Saul. Saul sought to defend his actions even though they were wrong. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Michmash

Michmash is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:2](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- feast, feasting

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- feast, feasting

### ULT

**11** Then Samuel said, "What have you done?" Saul replied, "When I saw that the people were leaving me, and that you did not come within the set time, and that the Philistines had assembled at Michmash,

### UST

**11** Samuel saw what Saul had done, and he said to Saul, "Why have you done this?" Saul replied, "I saw that my men were leaving me and running away, and that you did not come here during the time that you said that you would come, and that the Philistine army was gathering together at Micmash.

## 1 Samuel 13:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- face, facial

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Philistines
- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> I said, 'Now the Philistines will come down against me at Gilgal, and I have not sought the favor of Yahweh.' So I forced myself to offer the burnt offering."

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> So I thought, 'The Philistine army is going to attack us here at Gilgal, and I have not yet asked Yahweh to bless us.' So I felt it was necessary to offer the burnt offerings to seek God's blessings."

## 1 Samuel 13:13

### You have not kept the command of Yahweh

Saul was to wait for Samuel to come and sacrifice the burnt offering to God. He was not to perform the sacrifice himself.

### established your rule

“set up your rule” or “authorized your rule” or “appointed your rule”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- kingdom

#### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- kingdom

#### ULT

**13** Then Samuel said to Saul, “You have acted foolishly. You have not kept the command of Yahweh your God that he gave you. For then Yahweh would have established your rule over Israel forever.

#### UST

**13** Samuel replied, “What you did was very foolish! You have not obeyed what Yahweh, your God, commanded about sacrifices. If you had obeyed him, God would have allowed you and your descendants to rule Israel for a long time.

## 1 Samuel 13:14

### your rule will not continue

This is a litotes that can be stated in the positive form. Alternate translation: "your rule will end soon" (See: [Litotes](#))

### a man after his own heart

Here "heart" represents Yahweh's desire or will. The phrase "man after his own heart" is an idiom that means to be a person who does what Yahweh desires. Alternate translation: "a man who is the kind of person he wants" or "a man who will obey him" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- seek, search, look for
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- kingdom

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- seek, search, look for
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- kingdom

### ULT

**14** But now your rule will not continue. Yahweh has sought out a man after his own heart, and Yahweh has appointed him to be prince over his people, because you have not obeyed what he commanded you."

### UST

**14** But now because of what you have done, you will die, and after you die, none of your descendants will continue to rule. Yahweh is seeking a man to be king who be just the kind of person that he wants him to be, so that he can appoint him to be the leader of his people. Yahweh will do this because you have not obeyed what he commanded."

## 1 Samuel 13:15

### Samuel arose and went up

This is an idiom for “Samuel left and went up.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### went up from Gilgal

Gilgal is a city. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 7:15](#).

### Gibeah of Benjamin

Gibeah is a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:26](#).

### six hundred men

“600 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),

### ULT

**15** Then Samuel arose and went up from Gilgal to Gibeah of Benjamin. Then Saul numbered the people who were present with him, about six hundred men.

### UST

**15** Then Samuel left Gilgal and went up to Gibeah. Saul stayed at Gilgal with his soldiers. There were only about six hundred of them left who did not run away.

## 1 Samuel 13:16

### Geba of Benjamin

Geba is a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:3](#).

### Philistines camped at Michmash

Michmash is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:2](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- people, people group,

#### ULT

**16** Saul, his son Jonathan, and the people who were present with them, stayed in Geba of Benjamin. But the Philistines camped at Michmash.

#### UST

**16** Saul and his son Jonathan and the soldiers who were with them went to the city of Geba in the area of the tribe of Benjamin and set up their tents there. The Philistine army set up their tents at Micmash.

## 1 Samuel 13:17

### Raiders came

Raiders are normally military people who attack enemy villages for their food and other supplies.

### Ophrah, to the land of Shual

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [head](#)
- [chief](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [head](#)
- [chief](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

#### ULT

**17** Raiders came from the camp of the Philistines in three groups. One group turned toward Ophrah, to the land of Shual.

#### UST

**17** Three groups of Philistia soldiers soon left the place where their army was staying, and went and made raids on Israelite towns. One group went north toward the city of Ophrah in the region of Shual.

## 1 Samuel 13:18

### Beth Horon...Valley of Zeboyim

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**18** Another group turned toward Beth Horon, and another group turned toward the border that overlooks the Valley of Zeboyim toward the wilderness.

#### UST

**18** One group went west to the city of Beth Horon. The third group went toward the Israelite border, above Zeboim Valley, near the wilderness.

# 1 Samuel 13:19

## General Information:

The narrative shifts to background information regarding blacksmiths in Israel.

## No blacksmith could be found

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one could find a blacksmith” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

## blacksmith

Here “blacksmith” refers to someone who made or sharpened metal tools and weapons.

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

## ULT

**19** No blacksmith could be found throughout all of Israel, because the Philistines said, “Otherwise the Hebrews would make swords or spears for themselves.”

## UST

**19** At that time, there were no men in Israel who were blacksmiths. The people of Philistia would not permit the Israelites to have men who could do that, because they were afraid that they would make iron swords and spears for the Hebrews to use.

## 1 Samuel 13:20

### sharpen his plow points

The words “plow points” refer to the point of a metal tool used for digging up the ground for planting crops.

### mattock...ax...sickle

These are common garden tools.

#### mattock

A “mattock” is a broad-bladed axe, with a horizontal blade that is used for breaking up hard soil.

#### sickle

a curved blade for cutting grasses and grain stalks

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed

#### ULT

**20** But all the men of Israel used to go down to the Philistines, each to sharpen his plow points, his mattock, his ax, and his sickle.

#### UST

**20** So whenever the Israelites needed to sharpen the blades of their plows, or picks, or axes, or sickles, they were forced to take those things to a Philistine man who could sharpen those things.

## 1 Samuel 13:21

### two-thirds of a shekel

The shekel is divided into 3 parts, 2 of 3 parts are given. "2/3 of a shekel" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

### straightening the goads

"taking out the bend and making the ox goad straight again so it could be used"

#### ULT

**21** The charge was two-thirds of a shekel for the plow points, and the mattocks, and one-third of a shekel for sharpening axes and for straightening the goads.

#### UST

**21** They needed to pay about eight grams of silver for the sharpening of their plow blades and their picks. They needed to pay about four grams of silver for the sharpening of their axes or sickles, or to straighten the goads used to drive the oxen.

## 1 Samuel 13:22

### General Information:

The narrative continues.

### there were no swords or spears

This explains in part why Saul's army was afraid. They did not have any weapons to fight.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- hand
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- hand
- people, people group,
- sword, swordsmen

### ULT

**22** So on the day of battle, there were no swords or spears found in the hands of any of the soldiers who were with Saul and Jonathan; only Saul and his son Jonathan had them.

### UST

**22** So because the Israelites could not make swords and spears out of iron, at the time when the Israelites fought against the army of Philistia. Saul and Jonathan were the only Israelite men who had swords. None of the others had a sword. They had only bows and arrows and some kinds of other weapons.

## 1 Samuel 13:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> The garrison of the Philistines went out to the pass of Michmash.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Before the battle started, some Philistine men went to the mountain pass outside Micmash to guard it.

## **1 Samuel 14**

### **1 Samuel 14 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter completes the story of Jonathan's victory over the Philistines.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **The battle against the Philistines**

Jonathan took his armor bearer to where the Philistines were on the top of the hill. He said God could use a few people just as easily as he could use many people to win his battles. He and his armor bearer started killing the Philistines, and suddenly the Philistines began fighting each other or running away. The rest of Israel, who had hidden, came and chased the Philistines. Even though Israel had a king, God was still in control of the nation of Israel.

#### **Important figures of speech in this chapter**

##### **Special reference**

The people of Israel often used the term "uncircumcised" to refer to Gentiles. Here it is used to mean the Philistines. (See: [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#))

## 1 Samuel 14:1

### General Information:

Jonathan begins his second raid on the Philistines' army.

### his young armor bearer

a teenage boy who is responsible for caring for his master's weapons of war

### Philistines' garrison

This is an outpost staffed by the Philistine army.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Philistines
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Philistines
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> One day, Jonathan son of Saul said to his young armor bearer, "Come, let us go over to the Philistines' garrison on the other side." But he did not tell his father.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> One day, Jonathan said to the young man who carried his weapons, "Come with me; we will go over to where the Philistine soldiers have put up their tents." So they went, but Jonathan did not tell his father what they were going to do.

## 1 Samuel 14:2

### Gibeah

This is the name of a hill north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### under the pomegranate tree

a tree whose fruit is thick skinned, round, red and has many seeds to eat

### that is in Migron

“Migron” is the name of a place north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### six hundred men were with him

“600 men were with him” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Saul was staying on the outskirts of Gibeah under the pomegranate tree that is in Migron. About six hundred men were with him,

### UST

<sup>2</sup> On that day, Saul and the six hundred soldiers who were with him were sitting around a pomegranate tree at a place where the people threshed grain, near Gibeah.

## 1 Samuel 14:3

### son of Ahitub (Ichabod's brother)

"Ahitub" and "Ichabod" are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Phinehas son of Eli

Phinehas was one of the priests. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 1:3](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- son
- son (2)
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- son
- son (2)
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> including Ahijah son of Ahitub (Ichabod's brother) son of Phinehas son of Eli, the priest of Yahweh at Shiloh, who wore an ephod. The people did not know that Jonathan was gone.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Ahijah the priest was also there, one of those who wore the sacred apron. Ahijah son of Ahitub, who was a brother of Ichabod. Ichabod and Ahitub were the sons of Phinehas son of Eli, who had been Yahweh's priest at Shiloh. Now no one knew that Jonathan had left the Israelite camp.

## 1 Samuel 14:4

### One rocky cliff was called Bozez

A “cliff” is a rocky height with a steep drop. The cliff was well-known and given the name “Bozez.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the other rocky cliff was called Seneh

This was the name of the other cliff. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> On each side of the pass through which Jonathan wanted to go in order to get to the Philistines' garrison, there was a rocky cliff on one side and another rocky cliff on the other side. One rocky cliff was called Bozez and the other rocky cliff was called Seneh.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Jonathan planned that he and the young man would go through a narrow pass to get to where the Philistine army was. The cliff on one side of the pass was named Bozez, and the other cliff was named Seneh.

## 1 Samuel 14:5

### Michmash...Geba

towns north of Jerusalem (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> One rocky cliff stood on the north in front of Michmash, and the other on the south in front of Geba.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> One cliff faced north toward Michmash, and the cliff on the other side faced south toward the town of Geba.

## 1 Samuel 14:6

### his young armor bearer

This was a teenage boy who was responsible for caring for his master's weapons of war. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 14:1](#).

### uncircumcised fellows

a derogatory term used for non-Jewish men

### work on our behalf

"work for our support" or "help us"

### nothing can stop Yahweh from saving

This double negative can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh can save" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

### by many or by few people

These extremes also include everything in between. Alternate translation: "by any number of people" (See: [Merism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Jonathan said to his young armor bearer, "Come, let us cross over to the garrison of these uncircumcised fellows. It may be that Yahweh will work on our behalf, for nothing can stop Yahweh from saving by many or by few people."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Jonathan said to the young man who carried his weapons, "Come with me. We will go to where those pagans have set up their tents. Perhaps Yahweh will help us. It does not matter whether we are only two men or many people; nothing can stop Yahweh from enabling us to defeat them."

## 1 Samuel 14:7

### everything that is in your heart

Here “heart” refers to Jonathan’s desires. Alternate translation: “everything that you desire to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> His armor bearer replied, “Do everything that is in your heart. Go ahead, see, I am with you, to obey all your commands.”

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> The young man who was carrying Jonathan’s weapons said, “Do what you think is the best thing for us to do. I will be helping you.”

## 1 Samuel 14:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Jonathan said, "We will cross over to the men, and we will show ourselves to them."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then Jonathan said, "Very well, come with me. We will cross the valley to where the Philistine army is, and allow them to see us."

## 1 Samuel 14:9

### will not cross over to them

“will not go over to the other side of the valley where the Philistines are”

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> If they say to us, ‘Wait there until we come over to you’—then we will stay in our place and will not cross over to them.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> If they then say to us, ‘You two stay there until we come down to you,’ we will stay there and not go up to them.

## 1 Samuel 14:10

### has given them into our hand

Here “hand” refers to the power to defeat them. Alternate translation: “will enable us to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### This will be the sign to us

“This will confirm that the Lord will be with us”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**10** But if they reply, ‘Come over to us,’ then we will cross over; because Yahweh has given them into our hand. This will be the sign to us.”

### UST

**10** But if they say to us, ‘Come up here,’ that will show us that Yahweh will enable us to defeat them. Then we will go up and fight them.”

## 1 Samuel 14:11

### revealed themselves to the garrison of the Philistines

“allowed the Philistine soldiers to see them”

### the garrison

the army camp

### coming out of the holes where they have hidden themselves

The Philistines implied that the Hebrews had been hiding in holes in the ground like animals. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**11** So both of them revealed themselves to the garrison of the Philistines. The Philistines said, “Look, Hebrews are coming out of the holes where they have hidden themselves.”

### UST

**11** When the two of them crossed the valley, the Philistine soldiers saw them coming. They said, “Look! The Hebrews are crawling out of the holes in which they have been hiding!”

## 1 Samuel 14:12

### we will show you something

This is an idiom that means “we will teach you a lesson.” (See: [Idiom](#))

### has given them into the hand of Israel

Here “hand” refers to power to defeat the Philistines. Alternate translation: “will enable Israel to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**12** Then the men of the garrison called to Jonathan and his armor bearer, and said, “Come up to us, and we will show you something.” Jonathan said to his armor bearer, “Follow after me, because Yahweh has given them into the hand of Israel.”

#### UST

**12** Then the Philistine soldiers who were closest to Jonathan and the young man who carried his weapons said, “Come up here, and we will teach you something about how to fight!” Jonathan said to the young man who was with him, “Come behind me and climb up, because Yahweh is going to help us to defeat them!”

## 1 Samuel 14:13

### Jonathan climbed up on his hands and feet

He did this because it was very steep. This could be made explicit. Alternate translation: "So Jonathan climbed up, using his hands and his feet because it was very steep" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The Philistines were put to death before Jonathan

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jonathan killed the Philistines" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### his armor bearer put some to death behind him

"Jonathan's armor bearer followed him and also killed Philistine soldiers"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

#### ULT

**13** Jonathan climbed up on his hands and feet, and his armor bearer followed behind him. The Philistines were put to death before Jonathan, and his armor bearer put some to death behind him.

#### UST

**13** So Jonathan climbed up, using his hands and his feet because it was very steep. The young man climbed up following him. As Jonathan climbed, he struck and killed many Philistine soldiers, and the young man who was with him killed many more as he followed behind Jonathan.

## 1 Samuel 14:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**14** That first attack that Jonathan and his armor bearer made, killed about twenty men within an area of half an acre.

### UST

**14** In that first battle the two of them killed about twenty Philistine soldiers in an area that was a half-hectare.

## 1 Samuel 14:15

### There was a panic in the camp, in the field, and among the people

The abstract noun “panic” can be translated as a verb or as an adjective. Alternate translation: “The Philistine soldiers in the camp and in the field, and all the people with them, panicked” or “The Philistine soldiers in the camp and in the field, and all the people with them, became very afraid” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the raiders

the Philistines who were raiding Israelite cities

### The earth quaked

It may be helpful to state the cause. Alternate translation: “God caused the ground to shake” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> There was a panic in the camp, in the field, and among the people. Even the garrison and the raiders panicked. The earth quaked, and there was a great panic.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Then all the other Philistine soldiers, the ones in the camp and the ones who had been attacking the Israelite towns, ones who were out in the field much closer, panicked. Then God caused the ground to shake, and they all became terrified afraid.

## 1 Samuel 14:16

### Gibeah

This was the town where Saul was born. Translated “Gibeah” as in [1 Samuel 10:26](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### was dispersing...going here and there

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that the soldiers were running away in every direction. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Benjamin](#), [Benjamite](#)

### ULT

**16** Then Saul's watchmen in Gibeah of Benjamin looked; the crowd of Philistine soldiers was dispersing, and they were going here and there.

### UST

**16** Saul's lookouts were in the town of Gibeah in the region of the tribe of Benjamin. They saw that the soldiers of the Philistine army were running away in all directions.

## 1 Samuel 14:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- walk, walked

### ULT

**17** Then Saul said to the people that were with him, "Count and see who is missing from us." When they had counted, Jonathan and his armor bearer were missing.

### UST

**17** Saul realized that some of his soldiers must have attacked the Philistine army. So he said to the soldiers who were with him, "Check to see if any of our men are not here." So they checked, and found out that Jonathan and the man who carried his weapons were gone.

## 1 Samuel 14:18

### Bring the ark of God here

A few versions have “ephod” here instead of “ark of God.” (See: [Textual Variants](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites

#### ULT

**18** Saul said to Ahijah, “Bring the ark of God here,” for at that time it was with the people of Israel.

#### UST

**18** So Saul said to Ahijah the priest, “Bring the sacred chest here.” For the Israelite people had been carrying the sacred chest with them.

## 1 Samuel 14:19

### commotion

great noise and confusion

### Withdraw your hand

This seems to be an idiom that means "Stop what you are doing." Saul did not want Ahijah to continue to use the ark to ask God for direction. Alternate translation: "Do not bring the sacred chest at this time" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

**19** While Saul was talking to the priest, the commotion in the camp of the Philistines was continuing and increasing. Then Saul said to the priest, "Withdraw your hand."

### UST

**19** But while Saul was talking to the priest, he saw that the Philistine soldiers were becoming more panicked. So Saul said to Ahijah, "Do not bring the sacred chest at this time."

## 1 Samuel 14:20

### the people who were with him

the remnant of the Israelite army that remained with Saul

### Every Philistine's sword was against his fellow countrymen

The swords are spoken of as if they were living people. Alternate translation: "The Philistine soldiers were striking each other with their swords" (See: [Personification](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)
- [cry](#), [cry out](#), [outcry](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)
- [cry](#), [cry out](#), [outcry](#)

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Saul and all the people who were with him rallied and went into battle. Every Philistine's sword was against his fellow countrymen, and there was very great confusion.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> Then Saul gathered his men and they went toward the battle. They found that the Philistine soldiers were so confused that they were striking each other with their swords.

## 1 Samuel 14:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

**21** Now those Hebrews who previously had been with the Philistines, and who had gone with them into the camp, even they joined with the Israelites that were with Saul and Jonathan.

#### UST

**21** Before that, some of the Hebrew men had deserted their army and gone to join with the Philistine army. But now those men revolted and joined with Saul and Jonathan and the other Israelite soldiers.

## 1 Samuel 14:22

### the men of Israel who had hidden themselves in the hills

This does not refer to an ambush. These soldiers were hiding because they were afraid of the Philistines. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “the Israelite soldiers who were afraid and had hidden themselves in the hills” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Philistines](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Philistines](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> When all the men of Israel who had hidden themselves in the hills near Ephraim heard that the Philistines were fleeing, even they chased after them in battle.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> Some of the Israelite soldiers had previously run away and hidden in the mountains where the tribe of Ephraim lived. But when they heard that the Philistine soldiers were running away, they came down and joined the other Israelite soldiers and pursued the Philistine soldiers.

## 1 Samuel 14:23

### Beth Aven

This is a place in Israel. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:5](#).  
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

#### ULT

**23** So Yahweh saved Israel that day, and the battle passed beyond Beth Aven.

#### UST

**23** So Yahweh rescued the Israelites on that day. The Israelite soldiers continued to pursue their enemies beyond the town of Beth Aven.

## 1 Samuel 14:24

### So none of the troops tasted food

It was understood by the troops that no refreshment was permitted under Saul's oath.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- curse, cursed, cursing
- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- bread
- bread
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour

#### Translation Words - UST

- curse, cursed, cursing
- Israel, Israelites
- adversary, enemy
- bread
- bread
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour

#### ULT

**24** That day the men of Israel were distressed because Saul had put the people under an oath and said, "Cursed be the man that eats any food until evening and I am avenged on my enemies." So none of the troops tasted food.

#### UST

**24** Before Saul's soldiers went to the battle, Saul declared to them solemnly, "I do not want any of you to eat any food before this evening, before we have defeated all our enemies. If anyone eats anything, Yahweh will curse because they were very hungry.

## 1 Samuel 14:25

### the people entered the forest

The Philistine soldiers fled through the forests and the Israelite soldiers followed them there.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### Translation Words - UST

- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then all the people entered the forest and there was honey upon the ground.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> The Israelite army went into the forest, and they found honeycombs on the ground, but they did not eat any honey.

## 1 Samuel 14:26

### the honey flowed

This is an exaggeration to emphasize how much honey there was in the forest. Alternate translation: “there was a lot of honey everywhere” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### no one put his hand to his mouth

Here putting one’s “hand to his mouth” is a metonym that means to eat. Alternate translation: “no one ate any” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the people feared the oath

The people were not afraid of the oath, but of the punishment that was associated with breaking the oath. Alternate translation: “the people were afraid of what Saul would do to them if they broke his oath” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### ULT

**26** When the people entered into the forest, the honey flowed, but no one put his hand to his mouth for the people feared the oath.

#### UST

**26** They were afraid to eat any, because they had solemnly promised that they would not eat any food.

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- hand
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- hand
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

## 1 Samuel 14:27

### General Information:

Jonathan learns of his father's oath.

### bound the people with an oath

Here the obligation to obey an oath is spoken of as if the people were bound with ropes. Alternate translation: "commanded that the people obey his oath" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### He raised his hand to his mouth

Here "hand to his mouth" is a metonym that means to eat. Alternate translation: "He ate some honey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### his eyes brightened

This idiom means that he was strengthened. Alternate translation: "he regained his strength" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand
- people, people group,
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand
- people, people group,
- return

### ULT

**27** But Jonathan had not heard that his father had bound the people with an oath. He reached out the tip of the staff that was in his hand and dipped it in the honeycomb. He raised his hand to his mouth, and his eyes brightened.

### UST

**27** But Jonathan did not hear that his father had bound the people by a solemn promise. Jonathan had left the camp very early in the morning and when he saw a honeycomb, he dipped the end of his walking stick into it and ate some honey. After he ate the honey, he felt stronger.

## 1 Samuel 14:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- curse, cursed, cursing
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- curse, cursed, cursing
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- bread
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### ULT

**28** Then one of the people, answered, "Your father strictly charged the people with an oath, by saying, 'Cursed be the man that eats food on this day,' even though the people are weak from hunger."

### UST

**28** But one of the Israelite soldiers saw him and said to him, "Your father solemnly declared to us that Yahweh would curse anyone who ate any food today. So now we are very tired and weak from being hungry because we obeyed him."

## 1 Samuel 14:29

### for the land

This is a metonym that represents the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "for Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### my eyes have become brightened

This idiom means that he was strengthened. Alternate translation: "I regained my strength" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Then Jonathan said, "My father has made trouble for the land. See how my eyes have become brightened because I tasted a little of this honey.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Jonathan exclaimed, "My father had caused trouble for all of us! See how refreshed I am after eating a little honey!

## 1 Samuel 14:30

### How much better if the people...that they found?

Jonathan uses this hypothetical question to state that the people should have been allowed to eat. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: "Our victory would have been better if the people had eaten freely today of the plunder that they took from their enemies." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### plunder

This word refers to the things the people had taken from the battle with their enemy.

### Because now the slaughter has not been great

Because the troops were not able to eat during the battle, as the day progressed, they became weaker. Because of this, they were not able to kill as many of the Philistines.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)

### ULT

**30** How much better if the people had eaten freely today of the plunder from their enemies that they found? Because now the slaughter has not been great among the Philistines."

### UST

**30** If he had permitted all of us to eat from the food we took from our enemies while we were pursuing them, we would have been able to kill many more of their soldiers!"

## 1 Samuel 14:31

### General Information:

Jonathan's words lead the army to sin against God in their great hunger.

### Michmash

This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 13:2](#).

### Aijalon

a place in Zebulun in Israel (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### The people

This refers to the Israelites.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),

### Translation Words - UST

- [people](#), [people group](#),

### ULT

**31** They attacked the Philistines that day from Michmash to Aijalon. The people were very weary.

### UST

**31** The Israelites pursued and killed Philistine soldiers all that day, from Micmash town west to Aijalon. But they continued to become more weak from being hungry.

## 1 Samuel 14:32

### ate them with the blood

The were so hungry they did not drain the blood first before eating. This was a violation of the Law which was given to Moses for the nation of Israel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “ate them without draining the blood first as required by the law” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour
- slaughter, slaughtered
- flock, herd
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour
- slaughter, slaughtered
- flock, herd
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> The people rushed greedily on the plunder and took sheep, oxen and calves, and killed them on the ground. The people ate them with the blood.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> They had taken many sheep and cattle that the Philistine soldiers had abandoned. Now, because they were extremely hungry, they butchered some of those animals and ate the meat without draining the blood from the animals.

## 1 Samuel 14:33

### by eating with the blood

This was a violation of the Law which was given to Moses for the nation of Israel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “by eating meat without draining the blood first as required by the law” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### You have acted unfaithfully

Saul is accusing his whole army of acting unfaithfully though this is a generalization because not every soldier acted unfaithfully. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Now, roll a big stone here to me

The stone would hold the animals up and make it easier to drain the blood from them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- people, people group,

### ULT

**33** Then they told Saul, “Look, the people are sinning against Yahweh by eating with the blood.” Saul said, “You have acted unfaithfully. Now, roll a big stone here to me.”

### UST

**33** One of the soldiers told Saul, “Look! The men are sinning against Yahweh by eating meat that still has blood in it!” Saul replied to the men who were near him, “They have disobeyed Yahweh! Roll a large stone over here!”

## 1 Samuel 14:34

### kill them here, and eat

This would allow Saul to observe if the blood was properly drained from the animals.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour
- slaughter, slaughtered
- slaughter, slaughtered

#### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- hand
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- devour
- slaughter, slaughtered
- slaughter, slaughtered

#### ULT

**34** Saul said, "Go out among the people, and tell them, 'Let every man bring his ox and his sheep, kill them here, and eat. Do not sin against Yahweh by eating with the blood.'" So each of the people brought his own ox with him that night and killed it there.

#### UST

**34** After they did that, he said to those men, "Go and tell all the soldiers that each of them must bring an ox or a sheep to me, and kill it here on this stone, and drain the blood before he eats any of the meat. They should not sin against Yahweh by eating meat from some animal without draining its blood." So that night all the soldiers brought animals and slaughtered them there. Then Saul built an altar to worship Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 14:35

### General Information:

Saul had told the people to bring their animals to a big stone to kill and eat.

### Saul built an altar to Yahweh

It is unclear if Saul built this altar with the large stone that the people brought to him in [1 Samuel 14:33](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- altar
- altar (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

### ULT

**35** Saul built an altar to Yahweh, which was the first altar that he built to Yahweh.

### UST

**35** That was the first time that he built an altar for Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 14:36

### General Information:

Saul seeks to continue the fight against the Philistines.

### let us not leave one of them alive

This is stated in a negative way to emphasize the slaughter. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "let us kill every one of them" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Do whatever seems good to you

Saul had the support of his army to continue the fight.

### Let us approach God here

Here "approaching God" is associated with asking him counsel. Alternate translation: "Let us ask God what we should do" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- priest, priesthood
- Philistines

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- priest, priesthood
- Philistines

### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Then Saul said, "Let us pursue the Philistines by night and plunder them until morning; let us not leave one of them alive." They replied, "Do whatever seems good to you." But the priest said, "Let us approach God here."

### UST

<sup>36</sup> Then Saul said to the Israelite soldiers, "Let us chase the Philistine soldiers tonight. We can attack them all night. We will not allow any of them to escape alive." The Israelite soldiers answered, "We will do whatever you think is the best thing for us to do." But the priest said, "We should ask Yahweh what he thinks we should do."

## 1 Samuel 14:37

### give them into the hand of Israel

Here “hand” refers to the power to defeat them. Alternate translation: “enable us to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### But God did not answer him that day

This implies that God was not willing to help Saul.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>37</sup> Saul asked God, “Should I pursue the Philistines? Will you give them into the hand of Israel?” But God did not answer him that day.

#### UST

<sup>37</sup> So Saul asked God, “Should we chase the Philistine soldiers? Will you enable us to defeat them?” But God did not answer Saul that day.

## 1 Samuel 14:38

### the people

This refers to the Israelites.

### learn and see how this sin has happened

“find who sinned”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**38** Then Saul said, “Come here, all you leaders of the people; learn and see how this sin has happened today.

#### UST

**38** Then Saul summoned all the leaders of his army. He said to them, “I am sure that God has not answered me because someone has sinned. We must find out what sin someone has committed.

## 1 Samuel 14:39

### even if it is in Jonathan my son, he will surely die

Saul stated this as a hypothetical situation because he did not believe that Jonathan was guilty. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

### But none of the men among all the people answered him

The people remained silent because most of them knew that Jonathan had broken Saul's oath. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "His men knew who was guilty, but none of them said anything to Saul" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> For, as Yahweh lives, who saves Israel, even if it is in Jonathan my son, he will surely die." But none of the men among all the people answered him.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> Yahweh has rescued us from the Philistine army. Just as surely as Yahweh is alive, whoever has sinned must be executed. Even if it is my son Jonathan who has sinned, he must be executed." His men knew who was guilty, but none of them said anything to Saul.

## 1 Samuel 14:40

### Then he said to all Israel

This was a generalization since only the Israelite soldiers were present. Alternate translation: "Then he said to the Israelite soldiers who were there" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- people, people group,

### ULT

**40** Then he said to all Israel, "You must stand on one side, and I and Jonathan my son will be on the other." The people said to Saul, "Do what seems good to you."

### UST

**40** Then Saul said to all the Israelite soldiers, "You stand on one side. My son Jonathan and I will stand on the other side." His men replied, "Do whatever you think is best."

## 1 Samuel 14:41

### give the Thummim

The Israelites at that time used special stones called the Urim and the Thummim to receive direction from God. Alternate translation: "Show us by means of the Thummim" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Thummim

This is a borrowed word from the original language. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

### Jonathan and Saul were taken by lot, but the army was exonerated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The lots indicated that either Jonathan or Saul was guilty, but the army was not guilty" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**41** Saul said, "Yahweh, God of Israel! If this sin has been committed by me or by my son Jonathan, then, Yahweh, God of Israel, give the Urim. But if this sin has been committed by your people Israel, give the Thummim." <sup>[1]</sup> Then Jonathan and Saul were taken by lot, but the army was exonerated.

### UST

**41** Then Saul prayed to Yahweh, the Israelites' God, "Tell me who is guilty and who is not guilty." Then the priest cast lots, and they indicated that it was either Jonathan or Saul who was the guilty one, and that the other men were not guilty.

## 1 Samuel 14:42

### Then Jonathan was taken by lot

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then the lot indicated that Jonathan was guilty" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Then Saul said, "Cast lots between me and Jonathan my son." Then Jonathan was taken by lot.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> Then Saul said to the priest, "Throw the stones again to indicate which of us two is guilty." So he did, and the stones indicated that Jonathan was the guilty one.

## 1 Samuel 14:43

### General Information:

The lots had just showed that Jonathan had sinned.

### Tell me what you have done

"Tell me how you have sinned" or "Tell me what you have done that was wrong"

### I will die

Possible meanings are 1) "I am willing to die" or 2) "do I deserve to be executed because of doing that?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- hand

### ULT

**43** Then Saul said to Jonathan, "Tell me what you have done." Jonathan told him, "I tasted a little honey with the end of the rod that was in my hand. Here I am; I will die."

### UST

**43** Then Saul said to Jonathan, "Tell me what you have done that was wrong." Jonathan replied, "I ate a little bit of honey. It was only a little bit that was on the end of my stick. Do I deserve to be executed because of doing that?"

## 1 Samuel 14:44

**God do so and more also to me, if you do not die,  
Jonathan**

Saul makes a second foolish oath in less than one day. Alternate translation: "May God kill me if I do not kill you, Jonathan"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)

### ULT

<sup>44</sup> Saul said, "God do so and more also to me, if you do not die, Jonathan."

### UST

<sup>44</sup> Saul replied, "Yes, you must be executed! I hope that God will strike me and kill me if you are not executed for having done that!"

## 1 Samuel 14:45

### General Information:

The Army defends and protects Jonathan from Saul.

### Should Jonathan die, who has accomplished this great victory for Israel? Far from it!

The people scold Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Jonathan has just accomplished this great victory for Israel. He should surely not die." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### As Yahweh lives

The people were expressing their certainty that they would not let anything happen to Jonathan.

### not one hair of his head will fall to the ground

This exaggeration shows how the people of Israel would protect Jonathan and keep him safe. This litotes can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "we will protect him from any harm" (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- head
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> Then the people said to Saul, "Should Jonathan die, who has accomplished this great victory for Israel? Far from it! As Yahweh lives, not one hair of his head will fall to the ground, for he has worked with God today." So the people rescued Jonathan so that he did not die.

### UST

<sup>45</sup> But the Israelite soldiers said to Saul, "Jonathan has won a great victory for all us Israelites. Should he be executed for eating some honey? Certainly not! Just as surely as Yahweh lives, we will not allow you to injure him in any manner, because today God helped Jonathan to kill many soldiers of the Philistine army!" So by saying that the Israelite soldiers rescued Jonathan, and he was not executed.

## 1 Samuel 14:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>46</sup> Then Saul stopped pursuing the Philistines, and the Philistines went to their own place.

### UST

<sup>46</sup> Then Saul ordered his soldiers to stop pursuing the Philistine army, so the Philistine soldiers returned to their homes.

# 1 Samuel 14:47

## General Information:

For a brief period Saul served with great courage in defeating Israel's enemies.

## Israel

This is a metonym that represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the Israelites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Moab

This refers to the people of Moab. Alternate translation: "the Moabites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Edom

This refers to the people of Edom. Alternate translation: "the Edomites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

## Wherever he turned

"Wherever he sent his army"

## Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

## ULT

<sup>47</sup> When Saul began to rule over Israel, he fought against all his enemies on every side. He fought against Moab, the Ammonites, Edom, the kings of Zobah, and the Philistines. Wherever he turned, he inflicted punishment on them.

## UST

<sup>47</sup> After Saul became the ruler, he fought against enemies on every side. He fought against Moab, the Ammonites, Edom, the kings of Zobah, and the Philistines. Wherever the Israelite army fought, they defeated their enemies.

## 1 Samuel 14:48

### out of the hands

The word “hand” represents control. Alternate translation: “out of the control” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

#### ULT

**48** He acted with great courage and defeated the Amalekites. He rescued Israel out of the hands of those who plundered them.

#### UST

**48** Saul's army fought bravely and defeated the very tall descendants of Amalek. His army rescued the Israelites from those who had plundered them.

## 1 Samuel 14:49

### General Information:

This is background information on Saul's family.

### Ishvi...Malki-Shua

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Merab...Michal

These are names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [name](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [name](#)

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> The sons of Saul were Jonathan, Ishvi, and Malki-Shua. The names of his two daughters were Merab, the firstborn, and Michal, the younger.

### UST

<sup>49</sup> Saul's sons were Jonathan, Ishbosheth, and Malki-Shua. He also had two daughters, Merab and her younger sister Michal.

## 1 Samuel 14:50

### Ahinoam

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ahimaaz...Abner...Ner

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### ULT

<sup>50</sup> The name of Saul's wife was Ahinoam; she was the daughter of Ahimaaz. The name of the captain of his army was Abner son of Ner, Saul's uncle.

### UST

<sup>50</sup> Saul's wife was Ahinoam, the daughter of Ahimaaz. The commander of Saul's army was Abner son of Saul's uncle Ner.

## 1 Samuel 14:51

### Kish...Ner...Abner...Abiel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)

#### ULT

<sup>51</sup> Kish was Saul's father; and Ner, the father of Abner, was the son of Abiel.

#### UST

<sup>51</sup> Saul's father Kish and Abner's father Ner were both sons of Abiel.

## 1 Samuel 14:52

### all the days of Saul

“all of Saul's life”

### he attached him to himself

“he forced him to join his army”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Philistines
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- strength, strengthen, strong

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Philistines
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- strength, strengthen, strong

### ULT

**52** There was hard fighting against the Philistines all the days of Saul. When Saul saw any mighty man, or any valiant man, he attached him to himself.

14:41 <sup>[1]</sup> The ULT follows the LXX in the quotation. The Hebrew text has *Give me the right answer* .

### UST

**52** All the time that Saul was alive, his army fought against the Philistine army. And whenever Saul saw a young man who was brave and strong, he forced him to join his army.

## 1 Samuel 15

### 1 Samuel 15 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This is the end of the section on Saul and Samuel (8-15).

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God wants total obedience

Samuel told Saul that God wanted him to completely destroy the Amalekite people and animals. Saul fought the Amalekites and killed all the people except the king. He destroyed the animals that were not very good but saved the best animals. Saul told Samuel he had obeyed God's command. Samuel asked him about the animals Saul had. Saul said he had saved them for a sacrifice to God. God said that obedience was better than sacrifice. Because Saul had disobeyed him, God had chosen someone else to become king.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Idiom

"He has turned back from following me" is an idiom meaning "he has stopped obeying me." (See: [Idiom](#))

##### Rhetorical questions

When Saul insisted that he had obeyed God, Samuel rebuked him with these rhetorical questions: "What then is this bleating of sheep in my ears, and the lowing of the oxen that I hear?"; "Though you are little in your own sight, were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel?"; "Why then did you not obey the voice of Yahweh, but instead you seized the booty and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh?"; and "Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 1 Samuel 15:1

### the words of Yahweh

“the message of Yahweh”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Samuel said to Saul, “Yahweh sent me to anoint you king over his people Israel. Now listen to the words of Yahweh.

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> One day Samuel said to Saul, “Yahweh sent me to appoint you to be the king of the Israelite people. So now listen to this message from Yahweh:

## 1 Samuel 15:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> This is what Yahweh of hosts says, 'I have noted what Amalek did to Israel in opposing them on the way, when they came up from Egypt.'

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, has declared this: 'I am going to punish the descendants of Amalek for attacking the Israelite people after the Israelites left Egypt.'

## 1 Samuel 15:3

**completely destroy all that they have...kill both man and woman, child and infant, ox and sheep, camel and donkey**

These two phrases mean the same thing. The second phrase gives specific details about what they are to destroy completely. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Do not spare them

This negative statement emphasizes the completeness of the destruction. (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now go and attack Amalek and completely destroy all that they have. Do not spare them, but kill both man and woman, child and infant, ox and sheep, camel and donkey.”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So now go with your army and attack the Amalek people group. Destroy them completely—destroy them and everything that belongs to them—the men and women, their children and infants, their cattle and sheep and camels and donkeys. Do not spare any of them!”

## 1 Samuel 15:4

### the people

“the army”

### numbered them

“counted them”

### two hundred thousand men on foot, and ten thousand men of Judah

“200,000 men on foot, and 10,000 men of Judah” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Saul summoned the people and numbered them at the city of Telaim—two hundred thousand men on foot, and ten thousand men of Judah.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So Saul summoned the army, and they gathered at Telaim town. There were 200,000 soldiers. Ten thousand of them were from Judah, and the others were from the other Israelite tribes.

## 1 Samuel 15:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- rebuke

### Translation Words - UST

- rebuke

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then Saul came to the city of Amalek and waited in the valley.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then Saul went with his army to a town where some of the Amalek people group lived. The army prepared to attack them suddenly by hiding in the valley.

## 1 Samuel 15:6

### Kenites

a nomad people group that had always been friendly to the nation of Israel (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then Saul said to the Kenites, “Go, depart, come out from among the Amalekites, so I do not destroy you along with them. For you showed kindness to all the people of Israel, when they came from Egypt.” So the Kenites moved away from the Amalekites.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then Saul sent this message to the Kenite people group who lived in that area: “You acted kindly toward all our Israelite ancestors when they left Egypt. But we are going to kill all of the Amalek people group, because they opposed our ancestors. So move away from where the Amalek people group live. If you do not move away, you will be killed when they are killed.” So when the Kenite people group heard that, they immediately left that area.

## 1 Samuel 15:7

### Havilah...Shur

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- face, facial

#### Translation Words - UST

- Egypt, Egyptian
- face, facial

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Saul attacked the Amalekites, from Havilah as far as Shur, which is east of Egypt.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then Saul's army slaughtered the Amalek people group, from the town of Havilah in the east to the town of Shur in the west. Shur was at the border between Israel and Egypt.

## 1 Samuel 15:8

### General Information:

Yahweh had told Saul to destroy everything, but here Saul disobeys Yahweh's command.

### he took Agag

Here Saul represents himself accompanied by his army. Alternate translation: "Saul and his army took Agag" or "Saul and his army captured Agag" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### he completely destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword

The "edge of the sword" represents the swords and other weapons that soldiers used in battle. Here Saul represents himself accompanied by his army. Alternate translation: "they completely destroyed all of the people with their swords" or "they killed all of the people with their swords" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then he took Agag the king of the Amalekites alive; he completely destroyed all the people with the edge of the sword.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Saul's army captured Agag, the king of the Amalek people group, but they killed everyone else.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- people, people group,
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- people, people group,
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship

## 1 Samuel 15:9

### Saul...spared Agag

Saul disobeyed God by letting Agag live.

### as well as the best of the sheep

Saul disobeyed God by keeping the best of the livestock.

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> But Saul and the people spared Agag, as well as the best of the sheep, oxen, fattened calves, and the lambs. Everything that was good, they did not destroy. But they completely destroyed anything that was despised and worthless.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> They not only spared Agag, but they also took the best sheep and goats and cattle. They took everything that was good. They destroyed only the animals that they considered to be worthless.

## 1 Samuel 15:10

### the word of Yahweh came to Samuel, saying,

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to Samuel. He said,” or “Yahweh spoke this message to Samuel:” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then the word of Yahweh came to Samuel, saying,

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> Then Yahweh said to Samuel,

## 1 Samuel 15:11

### It grieves me

"I am sorry"

### he has turned back from following me

Saul not obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if Saul had physically turned away from walking behind God. Alternate translation: "he has stopped following me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### has not performed my commandments

"has not obeyed what I commanded him to do." Saul was to completely destroy everything and everyone. God had placed a ban on the Amalekites. But Saul permitted some livestock to live.

### Samuel was angry

Possible meanings are 1) Samuel was angry with Saul for his disobedience or 2) Samuel was disturbed.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted](#)

### ULT

**11** "It grieves me that I have made Saul king, for he has turned back from following me and has not performed my commandments." Samuel was angry; he cried out to Yahweh all night.

### UST

**11** "I am sorry that I appointed Saul to be your king, because he has stopped worshipping me. He has not obeyed what I commanded him to do." Samuel was very disturbed when he heard that, and he cried out to Yahweh all that night.

## 1 Samuel 15:12

### Samuel was told

"Someone told Samuel"

### he set up a monument to himself

Saul was full of pride.

### down to Gilgal

Gilgal was lower in elevation than Carmel.

### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Samuel got up early to meet Saul in the morning. Samuel was told, "Saul came to Carmel and he set up a monument to himself, then turned and proceeded on down to Gilgal."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Early the next morning, Samuel got up and went to talk with Saul. But someone told Samuel, "Saul went to the city of Carmel, where he has set up a monument to honor himself. Now he has left there and gone down to Gilgal."

## 1 Samuel 15:13

### I have fulfilled the command of Yahweh

It is not clear if Saul understood that he had not fully obeyed God's command to completely destroy the Amalekites.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

#### Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

#### ULT

**13** Then Samuel came to Saul, and Saul said to him, "Blessed are you by Yahweh! I have fulfilled the command of Yahweh."

#### UST

**13** When Samuel arrived at Gilgal and came to Saul, Saul said, "I wish that Yahweh may bless you! I have obeyed what Yahweh told me to do."

## 1 Samuel 15:14

### General Information:

Samuel questions why Saul did not utterly destroyed the Amalekites.

### bleating of sheep...lowing of the oxen

These are the sounds that these animals make. Your language may have different terms for these.

### in my ears...that I hear

These two phrases mean the same thing. Here "in my ears" refers to hearing. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [pray, prayer](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**14** Samuel said, "What then is this bleating of sheep in my ears, and the lowing of the oxen that I hear?"

### UST

**14** But Samuel replied, "If that is true, why is it that I hear cattle mooing and I hear sheep bleating?"

## 1 Samuel 15:15

### They have brought...the people spared

The word “they” and the phrase “the people” here both represent Saul’s army. Saul is blaming the people rather than himself.

### to sacrifice to Yahweh your God

Saul is arguing that animals for sacrifice were an exception to Yahweh’s command to destroy everything.

### Yahweh your God

Saul here does not describe Samuel’s God as his own God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

**15** Saul replied, “They have brought them from the Amalekites. For the people spared the best of the sheep and oxen, to sacrifice to Yahweh your God. The rest we have completely destroyed.”

### UST

**15** Saul replied, “The soldiers took them from the Amalek people group. They saved the best sheep and cattle, in order to offer them as sacrifices to Yahweh, your God. But we have completely destroyed all the others.”

## 1 Samuel 15:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

#### ULT

**16** Then Samuel said to Saul, "Wait, and I will tell you what Yahweh has said to me tonight." Saul said to him, "Speak!"

#### UST

**16** Samuel said to Saul, "Stop talking! Allow me to tell you what Yahweh said to me last night." Saul replied, "Tell me what he said."

## 1 Samuel 15:17

### in your own sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "in your own opinion" or "in your judgment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel?

Samuel uses this question to remind Saul of how much God had given him. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh made you the ruler of the tribes of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### ULT

**17** Samuel said, "Though you are little in your own sight, were you not made the head of the tribes of Israel? Then Yahweh anointed you king over Israel,

### UST

**17** Samuel said, "Previously you did not think that you were important. But now you have become the leader of the tribes of Israel. Yahweh appointed you to be their king.

## 1 Samuel 15:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- walk, walked
- consume, devour

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- walk, walked
- consume, devour

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> and Yahweh sent you on your way and said, 'Go and completely destroy the sinners, the Amalekites, and fight against them until they are destroyed.'

### UST

<sup>18</sup> And Yahweh sent you to do something for him. He said to you, 'Go and get rid of all those sinful people, the Amalek people group. Attack them and kill all of them.'

## 1 Samuel 15:19

### Why did you not obey...Yahweh?

Samuel asks this question to rebuke Saul for disobeying Yahweh. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have obeyed...Yahweh!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the voice of Yahweh

Here "voice" refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: "the things that Yahweh commanded" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### but instead you seized the booty

Samuel is accusing Saul of direct disobedience. Yahweh commanded Saul to completely destroy everything belonging to the Amalekites, and not to bring anything back to camp.

### the booty

"the plunder" or "the possessions you took from the enemy"

### what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here "sight" refers to Yahweh's thoughts or opinion. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh considers to be evil" or "what is evil in Yahweh's judgement" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [voice](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [voice](#)

### ULT

**19** Why did you not obey the voice of Yahweh, but instead you seized the booty and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh?"

### UST

**19** So why did you not obey Yahweh? Why did you take the plunder for yourself instead of destroying it? You have done what Yahweh says is evil, and he knows it!"

## 1 Samuel 15:20

### I have indeed obeyed the voice of Yahweh

This is an emphatic statement. It is unclear if Saul thought this was true, or if he was simply making excuses for his sin.

### the voice of Yahweh

Here “voice” refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: “the things that Yahweh commanded” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Agag

This is the name of the king of the Amalekites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [voice](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [voice](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then Saul said to Samuel, “I have indeed obeyed the voice of Yahweh, and have gone on the way that Yahweh sent me. I have captured Agag, the king of Amalek, and have completely destroyed the Amalekites.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Saul replied to Samuel, “I did what Yahweh sent me to do! I brought back King Agag, but we killed everyone else!

## 1 Samuel 15:21

### But the people took

This appears to be shifting the blame to the people.

### things devoted to destruction

“animals that Yahweh commanded them to destroy”

### Gilgal

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Gilgal
- firstfruits
- people, people group,
- flock, herd

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Yahweh
- Gilgal
- firstfruits
- people, people group,
- flock, herd

### ULT

**21** But the people took some of the booty—sheep and oxen, the best of the things devoted to destruction, to sacrifice to Yahweh your God in Gilgal.”

### UST

**21** My men brought back only the best sheep and cattle and other things, in order to sacrifice them to Yahweh your God here at Gilgal.”

## 1 Samuel 15:22

### Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh?

Samuel asks this question to emphasize that obedience is much more important than sacrifice. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh does not delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as much as in obeying his voice!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### the voice of Yahweh

Here "voice" refers to the commands that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: "the things that Yahweh commanded" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Obedience is better than sacrifice

God wanted Saul's complete obedience in the destruction of the Amalekites. Nothing in the land was fit for sacrifice.

#### better than the fat of rams

"better than to sacrifice the fat of rams as a burnt offering"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [voice](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [voice](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Samuel replied, "Has Yahweh as much delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Yahweh? Obedience is better than sacrifice, and to listen is better than the fat of rams."

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> But Samuel replied, "Which do you think pleases Yahweh more, animals that are completely burned on the altar and other sacrifices, or people obeying him? It is better to obey Yahweh than to offer sacrifices to him. It is better to pay attention to what he says than to burn the fat of rams, which God said should be sacrificed to him."

## 1 Samuel 15:23

### rebellion is like the sin of divination

The abstract noun “rebellion” can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: “to rebel is as sinful as practicing divination” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### stubbornness is like wickedness and iniquity

The abstract noun “stubbornness” can be translated with a verb and the abstract noun “wickedness” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “being stubborn is as bad as doing wicked things and practicing iniquity” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### the word of Yahweh

“Yahweh’s message” or “Yahweh’s command”

### rejected you from being king

“decided that you will no longer be king”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

**23** For rebellion is like the sin of divination, and stubbornness is like wickedness and iniquity. Because you have rejected the word of Yahweh, he has also rejected you from being king.”

### UST

**23** To rebel against God is as sinful as doing sorcery, and being stubborn is as sinful as worshipping idols. So, because you disobeyed what Yahweh told you to do, he has declared that you will no longer be king.”

## 1 Samuel 15:24

### I have broken Yahweh's commandment

This is an idiom that means he had disobeyed the commandment. Alternate translation: "I have disobeyed what Yahweh commanded" (See: [Idiom](#))

### because I was afraid of the people

This is the reason Saul gives for not obeying God. Alternate translation: "because I was afraid of the soldiers"

### obeyed their voice

Here "voice" refers to what the soldiers asked Saul to do. Alternate translation: "did what they asked" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- voice

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- voice

### ULT

**24** Then Saul said to Samuel, "I have sinned; for I have broken Yahweh's commandment and your words, because I was afraid of the people and obeyed their voice.

### UST

**24** Then Saul said to Samuel, "Yes, I have sinned. I disobeyed what you told me to do, which is what Yahweh commanded. I did that because I was afraid of what my men would say if I did not do what they wanted. So I did what they demanded.

## 1 Samuel 15:25

### return with me

Saul and Samuel were apparently talking in private away from the other people.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- return

#### ULT

**25** Now, please pardon my sin, and return with me so that I may worship Yahweh."

#### UST

**25** But now, please forgive me for having sinned. And come back with me to where the people are in order that I may worship Yahweh."

## 1 Samuel 15:26

### for you have rejected the word of Yahweh

Samuel made it clear that Saul understood that he was disobeying God at the time when he spared the best animals and did not kill Agag.

### rejected the word of Yahweh

“rejected Yahweh’s command” or “rejected Yahweh’s message.” This means that he refused to obey Yahweh’s command. Alternate translation: “refused to obey Yahweh’s command” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### ULT

**26** Samuel said to Saul, “I will not go back with you; for you have rejected the word of Yahweh, and Yahweh has rejected you from being king over Israel.”

#### UST

**26** But Samuel replied, “No, I will not go back with you. You have rejected what Yahweh commanded you to do. So he has rejected you, and declared that you will no longer be the king of Israel. So I do not want to talk anymore with you, either.”

## 1 Samuel 15:27

### Saul took hold of the hem of his robe

Saul did this to try to stop Samuel from leaving. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “Saul tried to stop him by grabbing the edge of Samuel’s robe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the hem of his robe

“the edge of his robe” or “the fringe of his robe”

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> As Samuel turned to leave, Saul took hold of the hem of his robe, and it tore.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> As Samuel turned to leave, Saul tried to stop him by grabbing the edge of Samuel’s robe, and it tore.

## 1 Samuel 15:28

### Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel

This refers back to when Saul tore Samuel's robe in [1 Samuel 15:27](#). This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Just as you tore my robe, Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### has given it to a neighbor of yours, one who is better than you

God had already decided who would be the next king after Saul.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Samuel said to him, "Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel from you today and has given it to a neighbor of yours, one who is better than you.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Samuel said to him, "Today Yahweh has torn away from you the kingdom of Israel. He will appoint someone else to be king, someone who is a better man than you are.

## 1 Samuel 15:29

### the Strength of Israel

Here Yahweh is referred to as “the Strength of Israel” because he gives strength to the Israelites. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, who is the strength of Israel” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### will not lie nor change his mind

This is stated as a negative to emphasize that God tells the truth. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “will always tell the truth and do what he says” (See: [Litotes](#))

### his mind

This refers to his thoughts and decisions. Alternate translation: “what he has decided to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he is not a man, that he should change his mind

This is stated as a negative to emphasize that God is trustworthy. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “he is God, and will do what he says he will do” (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Also, the Strength of Israel will not lie nor change his mind; for he is not a man, that he should change his mind.”

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> And since the one who is the glorious God of the Israelite people does not lie, he will not change his mind. Humans sometimes change their minds, but God does not do that, because he is not a human.”

## 1 Samuel 15:30

### But please honor me now before the elders

Saul may have been more interested in being honored by the people than in actually worshipping God.

### before the elders of my people and before Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "before the people of Israel and the elders who lead them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Turn again with me

"Come back with me" or "Return with me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [return](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [return](#)

### ULT

**30** Then Saul said, "I have sinned. But please honor me now before the elders of my people and before Israel. Turn again with me, that I may worship Yahweh your God."

### UST

**30** Then Saul pleaded again. He said, "I know that I have sinned. But please honor me in front of the leaders of the Israelite people and in front of all the other Israelite people by coming back to them with me in order that I may worship Yahweh your God."

## 1 Samuel 15:31

### So Samuel turned again after Saul

This implies that Samuel changed his mind, and that they went together to where the people were. Alternate translation: "So Samuel finally agreed to do that, and they went together back to where the people were"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- return

#### ULT

**31** So Samuel turned again after Saul, and Saul worshiped Yahweh.

#### UST

**31** So Samuel finally agreed to do that, and they went together back to where the people were, and Saul worshiped Yahweh there.

## 1 Samuel 15:32

### Agag came to him confined with chains and said

"They brought Agag to him bound by chains and Agag said"

### Surely the bitterness of death has past

This idiom appears to mean that Agag no longer thought he would be killed. Alternate translation: "Surely I am no longer in danger or dying" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Then Samuel said, "Bring Agag the king of the Amalekites here to me." Agag came to him confined with chains and said, "Surely the bitterness of death has past."

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> Then Samuel said, "Bring King Agag to me." So they brought Agag to him. Agag was brought before him, and he was locked in chains. He thought, "Surely the bitterness of death is past!"

## 1 Samuel 15:33

### **As your sword has made women childless, so shall your mother be childless among women**

Both of these phrases have similar meaning and may be intended to be in poetic form. Alternate translation: "Since you have killed people, you will also be killed" (See: [Parallelism](#))

### **made women childless, so shall your mother be childless**

This is a polite way of referring to killing people. Alternate translation: "killed the sons of other women, so shall I kill your mother's son" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### **Then Samuel chopped Agag to pieces**

Samuel is the one who completed this task that Yahweh commanded Saul to do. Alternate translation: "Then Samuel cut Agag into pieces with his sword"

#### **Translation Words - ULT**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Gilgal](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

#### **Translation Words - UST**

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Gilgal](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

#### **ULT**

<sup>33</sup> Samuel replied, "As your sword has made women childless, so shall your mother be childless among women." Then Samuel chopped Agag to pieces before Yahweh at Gilgal.

#### **UST**

<sup>33</sup> But Samuel said to him, "You have killed the sons of many women with your sword, so now your mother will no longer have a son." And Samuel cut Agag into pieces with his sword, there at Gilgal, where the Israelites worshiped Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 15:34

### Ramah...Gibeah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### went up to his house at Gibeah

Gibeah was higher in elevation than Gilgal where Saul and Samuel had been talking.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ramah](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Ramah](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**34** Samuel went to Ramah, and Saul went up to his house at Gibeah of Saul.

### UST

**34** Then Samuel left there and returned to his home in Ramah, and Saul went to his home in Gibeah.

## 1 Samuel 15:35

### Samuel did not see Saul until the day of his death

"Samuel did not see Saul again for as long as he lived"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- comfort, comforts, comforter, comforted

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- comfort, comforts, comforter, comforted

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> Samuel did not see Saul until the day of his death, for he mourned for Saul. Yahweh was grieved that he had made Saul king over Israel.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> Samuel never saw Saul again, but he was very sad about what Saul had done. And Yahweh was very sorry that he had appointed Saul to be the king of Israel.

## 1 Samuel 16

### 1 Samuel 16 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

##### 1 Samuel 16-31 Saul and David

Chapter 16 establishes God's choice of David to be the next king. David receives the Holy Spirit to empower and guide him as the king. This chapter also records the Holy Spirit leaving Saul because of his disobedience. (See: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Spirit](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David chosen to be the next king

Humans judge others by what they look like, but God judges people by their true inner character. God rejected David's older brothers in favor of David, who truly loved and obeyed him. (See: [judge](#), [judgment](#) and [love](#), [beloved](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

==Rhetorical Question == God scolds Samuel with this rhetorical question for his unwillingness to accept God's decision: "How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel?" It was wrong to mourn because it was God's punishment of Saul. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 1 Samuel 16:1

### How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke from God and can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Stop mourning that I rejected Saul from being king over Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Fill your horn with oil

The term "horn" was sometimes used to refer to a "flask" that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Jesse
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- olive
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Jesse
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- olive
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Yahweh said to Samuel, "How long will you mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him from being king over Israel? Fill your horn with oil and go. I will send you to Jesse of Bethlehem, for I have selected for myself a king among his sons."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Finally, Yahweh said to Samuel, "I have decided that I will not allow Saul to continue to be the king. So you should not keep feeling sad about what he has done. Put some olive oil in a small container and go to Bethlehem to anoint someone with the oil, and appoint him to be king. I am sending you there to a man named Jesse, because I have chosen one of his sons to be the king of Israel."

## 1 Samuel 16:2

### How can I go?

Samuel uses a question to emphasize that he is worried about going to Bethlehem. Alternate translation: "I cannot go!" or "I am afraid to go." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### with you and say

You can state the understood information. Alternate translation: "with you to Bethlehem and say to the people there" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### say, 'I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "say to the people there that you have come to sacrifice to Yahweh." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Samuel said, "How can I go? If Saul hears of it, he will kill me." Yahweh said, "Take a heifer with you and say, 'I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh.'

### UST

<sup>2</sup> But Samuel said, "I am afraid to go. If Saul hears that I have appointed someone else to be king, he will kill me." Yahweh answered, "Take with you a female cow that has not calved, and say to people that you have come to kill it and offer it as a sacrifice to me.

## 1 Samuel 16:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Call Jesse to the sacrifice, and I will show you what you will do. You will anoint for me the one whom I tell you."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Invite Jesse to come to the sacrifice. When he comes, I will show you what you should do. And I will show you which of his sons I have chosen to be the king. Then you should anoint him with the olive oil to be the king."

## 1 Samuel 16:4

### The elders of the city were trembling as they came to meet him

It seems the elders were trembling because they were worried that Samuel came to rebuke them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- elder, older, old
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- elder, older, old
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Samuel did as Yahweh said and went to Bethlehem. The elders of the city were trembling as they came to meet him and said, "Are you coming in peace?"

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Samuel did what Yahweh told him to do. He went to Bethlehem. When the town leaders came to him, they trembled, because they were worried that Samuel had come to rebuke them about something. One of them asked him, "Have you come to speak peacefully to us?"

## 1 Samuel 16:5

### In peace

This can be stated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "Yes, I have come in peace" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### to set...apart

To set someone apart means to get that person ready for Yahweh's purposes by making sure that person is ritually clean according to the law of Moses.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [son](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [son](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He said, "In peace; I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh. Prepare to set yourselves apart and come with me to the sacrifice." Then he set apart Jesse and his sons and invited them to the sacrifice.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Samuel replied, "Yes. I have come peacefully, to make a sacrifice to Yahweh. Set yourself apart for the honor of Yahweh, and then come with me to where they will offer the sacrifice." Then Samuel set apart Jesse to do what honors God, along with his sons, and then he invited them to the sacrifice.

## 1 Samuel 16:6

### When they came

Here “they” refers to Jesse and his sons.

### he looked at Eliab

Here “he” refers to Samuel.

### Eliab

This is the name of Jesse’s oldest son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### standing before him

Here “him” refers to Yahweh.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When they came, he looked at Eliab and said to himself that Yahweh’s anointed was certainly standing before him.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> When they arrived there, Samuel looked at Jesse’s oldest son Eliab, and thought, “Surely this is the one whom Yahweh has appointed be king!”

## 1 Samuel 16:7

### Yahweh does not see as man sees

Here “see” means to evaluate something. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### For Yahweh does not see...Yahweh looks

Yahweh is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “For I, Yahweh, do not see...I, Yahweh, look” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### on the heart

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> But Yahweh said to Samuel, “Do not look at his outward appearance, or on the height of his stature; because I have rejected him. For Yahweh does not see as man sees; man looks on the outward appearance, but Yahweh looks on the heart.”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> But Yahweh said to Samuel, “Do not think that he is the one whom I have chosen because of his being handsome and very tall, because I have not chosen him. I do not evaluate people as people do. You people evaluate people by their appearance, but I evaluate people by what is in their inner beings.”

## 1 Samuel 16:8

### Abinadab

This is the name of one of Jesse's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### made him pass before Samuel

"told him to go to Samuel"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Jesse called Abinadab and made him pass before Samuel. Then Samuel said, "Neither has Yahweh chosen this one."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Then Jesse told his next oldest son Abinadab to step forward and walk in front of Samuel. But when he did that, Samuel said, "Yahweh has not chosen this one, either."

## 1 Samuel 16:9

### Jesse then made Shammah pass by

It is understood that Shammah passed by Samuel. Alternate translation: "Jesse then made Shammah pass before Samuel" or "Jesse then told Shammah to go to Samuel" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Shammah

This is the name of one of Jesse's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Jesse then made Shammah pass by, but Samuel said, "Neither has Yahweh chosen this one."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then Jesse told his next oldest son Shammah to step forward. He stepped forward, but Samuel said, "Yahweh has not chosen this one, either."

## 1 Samuel 16:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Jesse
- Jesse
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Jesse
- Jesse
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Jesse made seven of his sons pass before Samuel. Then Samuel said to Jesse, "Yahweh has not chosen any of these."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Similarly, Jesse told his other four sons to walk in front of Samuel. But Samuel said to Jesse, "Yahweh has not chosen any of these sons of yours."

## 1 Samuel 16:11

### There remains yet the youngest

"There is still my youngest son"

### we will not sit down

It is understood that they were waiting to sit down and eat. Alternate translation: "we will not sit down to eat" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesse](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Jesse](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**11** Then Samuel said to Jesse, "Are all of your sons here?" He replied, "There remains yet the youngest, but he is tending the sheep." Samuel said to Jesse, "Send and get him; for we will not sit down until he comes here."

### UST

**11** Then Samuel asked Jesse, "Do you have any other sons?" Jesse replied, "My youngest son is not here; he is out in the fields taking care of the sheep." Samuel said, "Send someone to bring him here! We will not sit down to eat until he gets here."

## 1 Samuel 16:12

### Now...appearance

The word "Now" is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells about a new person in the story.

### this son was ruddy

The word "ruddy" means David was healthy looking.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

### ULT

**12** Jesse sent and brought him in. Now this son was ruddy and had beautiful eyes and a handsome appearance. Yahweh said, "Arise, anoint him; for he is the one."

### UST

**12** So Jesse sent someone to bring David there. And when David arrived, Samuel saw that he was handsome and healthy, and had bright eyes. Then Yahweh said, "This is the one whom I have chosen; anoint him to be king."

## 1 Samuel 16:13

### the horn of oil

The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 16:1](#).

### Samuel rose up and went

It is implied that he rose up after they sat down to eat. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### The Spirit of Yahweh rushed on David

The phrase “rushed on” means Yahweh’s Spirit influenced David. In this case it means he enabled David to fulfill whatever Yahweh wanted him to do. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 10:6](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Ramah
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Ramah
- David

### ULT

**13** Then Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed him in the middle of his brothers. The Spirit of Yahweh rushed on David from that day forward. Then Samuel rose up and went to Ramah.

### UST

**13** So as David stood there in front of his older brothers, Samuel took the container of oil that he had brought and poured some of it on David’s head to set him apart to serve God. After they all ate, Samuel left there and returned to Ramah. But Yahweh’s Spirit came on David powerfully, and stayed with David for the rest of his life.

## 1 Samuel 16:14

### Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

### harmful spirit

This may refer to either a “spirit that causes trouble” or an “evil spirit.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

### ULT

**14** Now the Spirit of Yahweh left Saul, and a harmful spirit from Yahweh troubled him instead.

### UST

**14** But Yahweh's Spirit left Saul. Instead of his Spirit staying with Saul, Yahweh sent an evil spirit to Saul to terrify him repeatedly.

## 1 Samuel 16:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- spirit, spiritual
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**15** Saul's servants said to him, "Look, a harmful spirit from God troubles you.

### UST

**15** One of his servants said to him, "It is evident that an evil spirit sent by God is terrifying you.

## 1 Samuel 16:16

### Let our master now command

The servants refer to Saul in the third person as “our master.”  
Alternate translation: “We ask that you, our master, command” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### command your servants who are before you to look

The servants refer to themselves in the third person as “your servants.” Alternate translation: “command us, your servants who attend to you, to look” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### is on you

“troubles you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**16** Let our master now command your servants who are before you to look for a man who is a skillful player on the harp. Then when the harmful spirit from God is on you, he will play it and you will be well.”

### UST

**16** So we suggest that you allow us your servants here to search for a man who plays the harp well. He can play the harp whenever the evil spirit bothers you. Then you will calm down and you will be well again.”

## 1 Samuel 16:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>17</sup> Saul said to his servants, "Find me a man that can play well and bring him to me."

### UST

<sup>17</sup> Saul replied, "Fine, find for me a man who can play the harp well, and bring him to me."

## 1 Samuel 16:18

### a strong, courageous man

Possible meanings are 1) "a great warrior" or 2) "a very brave man."

### one prudent in speech

"one wise in speech" or "one who speaks wisely"

### Yahweh is with him

Here "with him" means Yahweh helps and blesses David. (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prosper](#), [prosperity](#), [prosperous](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### ULT

**18** Then one of the young men answered, and said, "I have seen a son of Jesse the Bethlehemite, who is skillful in playing, a strong, courageous man, a man of war, one prudent in speech, a handsome man; and Yahweh is with him."

### UST

**18** One of his servants said to him, "A man named Jesse, in the city of Bethlehem, has a son who plays the harp very well. Furthermore, he is a brave man, and is a capable soldier. He is handsome and he always speaks wisely. And Yahweh always protects him."

## 1 Samuel 16:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Jesse
- messenger

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Jesse
- messenger

#### ULT

**19** So Saul sent messengers to Jesse, and said, "Send me your son David, who is with the sheep."

#### UST

**19** So Saul sent some messengers to Jesse. He told them to say to Jesse, "Send your son David to me, the one who takes care of sheep."

## 1 Samuel 16:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- Jesse
- hand
- donkey, mule
- bread
- wine, wineskin, new wine

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- Jesse
- hand
- donkey, mule
- bread
- wine, wineskin, new wine

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Jesse took a donkey loaded with bread, a container of wine, and a young goat, and sent them with his son David to Saul.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> So after they went and told that to Jesse, he agreed and got a young goat, a container of wine, a donkey on which he put some loaves of bread and gave them to David to take to Saul as a present.

## 1 Samuel 16:21

### David came to Saul

Here “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

### entered his service

The abstract noun “service” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “began to serve him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### he became his armor bearer

“David became Saul’s armor bearer”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

**21** Then David came to Saul and entered his service. Saul loved him greatly, and he became his armor bearer.

### UST

**21** Then David went to Saul and started to work for him. Saul liked David very much, and he became the man who carried Saul’s weapons when Saul went to fight in battles.

## 1 Samuel 16:22

### Let David stand before me

Here “stand before me” is an idiom that means to continue in Saul's service. Alternate translation: “Let David stay in my service” (See: [Idiom](#))

### he has found favor in my eyes

Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and “my sight” represents how Saul judges or evaluates David. Alternate translation: “he has found favor in my judgment” or “I am pleased with him” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- appoint, appointed
- David
- Jesse

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- appoint, appointed
- David
- Jesse

#### ULT

**22** Saul sent to Jesse, saying, “Let David stand before me, for he has found favor in my eyes.”

#### UST

**22** Then Saul sent a messenger to go to Jesse and tell him, “I am pleased with David. Please let him stay here and work for me.”

## 1 Samuel 16:23

### harmful spirit

Here “harmful spirit” may refer to either a “spirit that causes trouble” or an “evil spirit.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 16:14](#).

### was upon Saul

“troubled Saul”

### Saul would be refreshed and well

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the music would refresh Saul and make him well” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Whenever the harmful spirit from God was upon Saul, David took the harp and played it. So Saul would be refreshed and well, and the harmful spirit would depart from him.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> Jesse agreed, and after that, whenever the evil spirit whom God sent tormented Saul, David played the harp. Then Saul would become calm, and the evil spirit would leave him.

# 1 Samuel 17

## 1 Samuel 17 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter introduced David as a soldier, a skill that will be important for the rest of his life.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David kills Goliath

Trust in God is more powerful than physical might or military training and equipment. David, trusting in the Lord and armed only with a sling, defeats Goliath who is well-armed and physically strong but who did not believe in Yahweh. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

#### Uncircumcised

The people of Israel often used the term “uncircumcised” to refer to Gentiles. Here it is used to describe the Philistines. (See: [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#))

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical questions

David uses rhetorical questions to state his desire to fight the giant: “What will be done for the man who kills this Philistine and takes away the disgrace from Israel? Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

His brother uses rhetorical questions to show his disdain for his younger brother, whom he thinks is pretending to be bigger than he really is: “Why did you come down here? With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness?” David defends himself with some questions: “What have I done now? Was it not just a question?”

Goliath also uses a rhetorical question to show his contempt for young David: “Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?”

## 1 Samuel 17:1

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Philistines

### Translation Words - UST

- Judah
- Philistines

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the Philistines gathered their armies for battle. They were gathered at Sokoh, which belongs to Judah. They had encamped between Sokoh and Azekah, in Ephes Dammim.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> The Philistines gathered their army to fight the Israelite army. They gathered together near Sokoh, in the area where the descendants of Judah lived. They set up their tents at Ephes Dammim, which is between Sokoh and Azekah.

## 1 Samuel 17:2

### the Valley of Elah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Saul and the men of Israel gathered and encamped in the Valley of Elah, and drew up their battle line to meet the Philistines.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> Saul gathered the Israelite army near Elah Valley, and they set up their tents. Then they all took their places, ready to fight the Philistines.

## 1 Samuel 17:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The Philistines stood on a mountain on one side, and Israel stood on a mountain on the other side with a valley between them.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> So the Philistine and Israelite armies faced each other. They were on two hills, with a valley between them.

## 1 Samuel 17:4

### six cubits and a span

A cubit is a unit of measurement equal to about 46 centimeters. A span is a unit of measurement equal to about 23 centimeters.  
Alternate translation: "about 3 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [name](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [name](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> A strong man came out of the Philistines' camp, a man named Goliath of Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Then Goliath, from the city of Gath, came out from the Philistine camp. He was a great warrior, three meters tall.

## 1 Samuel 17:5

### he was armed with a coat of chainmail

A “coat of chainmail” is a flexible piece of body armor covered with protective scales or small plates. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he protected himself by wearing a coat of chainmail” or “he wore a coat of chainmail” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### five thousand shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: “about 55 kilograms” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [bronze](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [bronze](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> He had a helmet of bronze on his head, and he was armed with a coat of chainmail. The coat weighed five thousand shekels of bronze.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> He wore a helmet made of bronze to protect his head, and he wore a coat made of metal plates to protect his body. The metal coat weighed about fifty-five kilograms.

## 1 Samuel 17:6

### a javelin of bronze

A “javelin” is a small spear that is meant to be thrown.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bronze
- bronze (2)

#### Translation Words - UST

- bronze
- bronze (2)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He had bronze armor on his legs and a javelin of bronze between his shoulders.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> He wore bronze guards on his legs. He had a small bronze spear fastened on his back.

## 1 Samuel 17:7

### staff of his spear

“the handle of his spear”

### loop of cord

“rope rolled up into a circle”

### His spear’s head

“The point of his spear”

### six hundred shekels of iron

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: “about 7 kilograms” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The staff of his spear was large, with a loop of cord for throwing it like the cord on a weaver’s beam. His spear’s head weighed six hundred shekels of iron. His shield bearer went before him.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> He also had a big spear. It had a cord on it to enable him to throw it better. Its iron head weighed about seven kilograms. A soldier carrying Goliath’s huge shield walked in front of him.

## 1 Samuel 17:8

### Why have you come out to draw up for battle?

"Why have you come to fight in battle against us?" Goliath uses this question to mock the Israelites. Alternate translation: "You are fools if you think you can fight in battle against us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Am not I a Philistine, and are you not servants of Saul?

Goliath uses this question to mock the Israelites. When he says that he is a Philistine, he is implying that he is strong. Alternate translation: "I am a great Philistine, and you are merely servants of Saul." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> He stood and shouted to the ranks of Israel, "Why have you come out to draw up for battle? Am not I a Philistine, and are you not servants of Saul? Choose a man for yourselves and let him come down to me.

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Goliath stood there and shouted to the Israelite army, "I can see you are lined up for battle, but you will not fight me. You can see that I am a Philistine soldier who is ready to fight, but you are just the slaves of Saul. Choose one man who can fight for all of you and send him down here to me!

## 1 Samuel 17:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> If he is able to fight with me and kill me, then will we be your servants. But if I defeat him and kill him, then you will be our servants and serve us.”

### UST

<sup>9</sup> If he fights with me and kills me, then my fellow Philistines will all be your slaves. But if I defeat him and kill him, then you Israelites will all be our slaves.

## 1 Samuel 17:10

### I challenge the ranks of Israel

"I challenge the army of Israel"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

#### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

#### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Again the Philistine said, "I challenge the ranks of Israel today. Give me a man so we may fight together."

#### UST

<sup>10</sup> None of you Israelite men can defeat me! Send me a man who will fight with me!"

## 1 Samuel 17:11

### all Israel

This refers to the Israelite soldiers who were there.

### they were discouraged and greatly afraid

The words “discouraged” and “greatly afraid” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of their fear. (See: [Doublet](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

**11** When Saul and all Israel heard what the Philistine said, they were discouraged and greatly afraid.

### UST

**11** When Saul and all the Israelite soldiers heard that, they were very terrified.

## 1 Samuel 17:12

### He had eight sons

"He" refers to Jesse.

### Jesse was an old man...very old among men

The two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Ephrath, Ephrathah](#)
- [Jesse](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Ephrath, Ephrathah](#)
- [Jesse](#)

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Now David was the son of the Ephrathite of Bethlehem in Judah, whose name was Jesse. He had eight sons. Jesse was an old man in the days of Saul, very old among men.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Now David son of Jesse was from the clan of Ephrath. He lived in Bethlehem, in the region of the tribe of Judah. Jesse had eight sons. When Saul was king, Jesse had already become a very old man.

## 1 Samuel 17:13

### second to him Abinadab, and the third Shammah

“Abinadab the second born, and Shammah the third born.” This phrase shows birth order.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Jesse
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Jesse
- walk, walked
- walk, walked

#### ULT

**13** The three oldest sons of Jesse had followed Saul to the battle. The names of his three sons who went to the battle were Eliab the firstborn, second to him Abinadab, and the third Shammah.

#### UST

**13** Jesse's three oldest sons, Eliab and Abinadab and Shammah, had gone with Saul to fight the Philistines.

## 1 Samuel 17:14

### The three oldest

The implied information is that these are the sons of Jesse. Alternate translation: "The three oldest sons of Jesse" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked

### ULT

**14** David was the youngest. The three oldest followed Saul.

### UST

**14** David was Jesse's youngest son. While his three oldest brothers were with Saul,

## 1 Samuel 17:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- walk, walked
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- walk, walked
- return

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Now David went back and forth between Saul's army and his father's sheep at Bethlehem, in order to feed them.

### UST

<sup>15</sup> David went back and forth. Sometimes he went to Saul's camp, and sometimes he stayed in Bethlehem to take care of his father's sheep.

## 1 Samuel 17:16

### For forty days

“For 40 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

### to present himself for battle

“to show that he was ready to fight”

#### ULT

**16** For forty days the Philistine strong man came near morning and evening to present himself for battle.

#### UST

**16** For forty days Goliath came out from the Philistine camp and stood there mocking the Israelite army. He kept telling the Israelites to choose one man to fight with him. He did this twice each day, in the morning and in the evening.

## 1 Samuel 17:17

### ephah

An ephah is a unit of measurement equal to about 22 liters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- son
- Jesse
- bread

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- brother
- son
- Jesse
- bread

### ULT

**17** Then Jesse said to his son David, "Take to your brothers an ephah of this roasted grain and these ten loaves, and carry them quickly to the camp for your brothers.

### UST

**17** One day, Jesse said to David, "Here is a sack of roasted grain and ten loaves of bread. Take these quickly to your older brothers.

## 1 Samuel 17:18

### the captain of their thousand

“the captain of your brothers’ thousand.” Possible meanings are 1) the word “thousand” represents the exact amount of soldiers that this captain led. Alternate translation: “the captain of your brothers’ unit of 1,000 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “thousand” does not represent exact number, but is the name of a large military division. Alternate translation: “the captain of your brothers’ military division” (See: [Numbers](#))

### See how your brothers are doing

“Check and find out how your brothers are doing”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [chief](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [brother](#)
- [chief](#)

#### ULT

**18** Also bring these ten cheeses to the captain of their thousand. See how your brothers are doing and bring back some proof that they are doing well.

#### UST

**18** And here are ten large chunks of cheese. Take them to their commander. And see how things are going with your older brothers. Then if they are safe, bring back something to show they are all right.

## 1 Samuel 17:19

### all the men of Israel

“all the soldiers of Israel”

### the Valley of Elah

This is the name of a place. See how you translated it in [1 Samuel 17:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

**19** Your brothers are with Saul and all the men of Israel in the Valley of Elah, fighting the Philistines.”

### UST

**19** Your brothers are with Saul and all the other Israelite soldiers, camped alongside Elah Valley, preparing to fight the Philistines.”

## 1 Samuel 17:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- David
- Jesse
- alarm, alarmed
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- David
- Jesse
- alarm, alarmed
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> David got up early in the morning and left the flock in the care of a shepherd. He took the supplies and left, as Jesse commanded him. He came to the camp as the army was going out to the battlefield shouting the war cry.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> So David arranged for another shepherd to take care of the sheep. Early the next morning he took the food and went to the Israelite camp, as Jesse told him to do. He arrived there just as the Israelite soldiers were forming their ranks and going out to the battlefield. As they went, they were shouting a war cry.

## 1 Samuel 17:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

#### ULT

**21** Then Israel and the Philistines lined up for battle, army against army.

#### UST

**21** The Philistine army and the Israelite army stood on the hillsides, facing each other, ready for the battle.

## 1 Samuel 17:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- David
- hand
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- David
- hand
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> David left his belongings with the keeper of supplies, ran to the army, and greeted his brothers.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> David gave the food to the man who was taking care of the war equipment. He told him to take care of the food that he brought, and then he went and greeted his older brothers.

## 1 Samuel 17:23

### Goliath by name

“whose name was Goliath”

### came out of the ranks of the Philistines

“stepped forward from the Philistines’ battle line”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [name](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

**23** As he talked with them, the strong man, the Philistine of Gath, Goliath by name, and he came out of the ranks of the Philistines, and said the same words as before, and David heard them.

### UST

**23** While he was talking with them, he saw Goliath coming out from among the Philistine soldiers, shouting to the Israelites, challenging them to send a man to fight him. David heard what Goliath was saying.

## 1 Samuel 17:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> When all the men of Israel saw the man, they fled from him and were very afraid.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> When all the Israelite soldiers saw Goliath, they were terrified and started to run away.

## 1 Samuel 17:25

### Have you seen this man who has come up?

The soldiers were saying this to draw one another's attention to the man Goliath. Alternate translation: "Look at this man who has come up!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### The king

This refers to the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "Our king" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### his daughter

This refers to the king's daughter.

### to him...his father's house

The words "him" and "his" refer to the man who kills Goliath.

### will make his father's house free from taxation in Israel

The word "house" refers to the household or family. Alternate translation: "will no longer require his family to pay taxes" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The men of Israel said, "Have you seen this man who has come up? He has come to challenge Israel. The king will give great riches to the man who kills him, and he will give his daughter to him in marriage, and will make his father's house free from taxation in Israel."

### UST

<sup>25</sup> They were saying to each other, "Look at him coming up toward us! And listen to him as he defies us Israelites! The king says that he will give a big reward to whoever kills this man. He also says that he will give his daughter to that man for him to marry her, and that he will no longer require that man's family to pay taxes."

## 1 Samuel 17:26

### takes away the disgrace from Israel

This can be expressed with the verb “disgrace.” Alternate translation: “stops Israel from being disgraced” or “stops him from disgracing Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?

David said this to show his anger that this Philistine was defying God’s army. Alternate translation: “This uncircumcised Philistine certainly has no power that he should defy the armies of the living God!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### this uncircumcised Philistine

This phrase is an insult and indicates that Goliath does not belong to the living God.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- to minister, ministry
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- to minister, ministry
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

#### ULT

**26** David said to the men who stood by him, “What will be done for the man who kills this Philistine and takes away the disgrace from Israel? Who is this uncircumcised Philistine that he should defy the armies of the living God?”

#### UST

**26** David talked to some of the men who were standing near him. He said, “This Philistine—this uncircumcised man—should not be mocking the all-powerful God. What will be given to the person who kills this Philistine and stops him from shaming us Israelites?”

## 1 Samuel 17:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Then the people repeated what they had been saying and told him, "So it will be done for the man who kills him."

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> The men told him the same thing that the other men had said, about what the king would do for anyone who killed Goliath.

## 1 Samuel 17:28

### Eliab's anger was kindled against David

Here anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that could be kindled.

Alternate translation: "Eliab became angry with David" (See:

[Metaphor](#))

### Why did you come down here?

Eliab uses this question to show that he is angry that David came down. He was probably implying that David did not have a good reason for coming. Alternate translation: "You had no good reason to come here" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness?

Eliab uses this question to insult David by making his work seem unimportant and by accusing him of not taking care of his father's sheep. Alternate translation: "You simply had the responsibility of watching over a few sheep in the wilderness. You could not even carry out that simple responsibility!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### your pride, and the mischief in your heart

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [heart](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [brother](#)
- [heart](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Eliab his oldest brother heard when he spoke to the men. Eliab's anger was kindled against David, and he said, "Why did you come down here? With whom have you left those few sheep in the wilderness? I know your pride, and the mischief in your heart; for you have come down here so that you might see the battle."

### UST

<sup>28</sup> But when David's oldest brother Eliab heard David talking to the men, he was angry. He said to David, "Why have you come down here? Is someone taking care of those few sheep that you left in the desert? I know you are just a troublemaking boy! You just want to watch the battle!"

## 1 Samuel 17:29

### What have I done now? Was it not just a question?

David used these questions to express his frustration and to justify himself. Alternate translation: "I have done nothing wrong. I was only asking a question!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> David said, "What have I done now? Was it not just a question?"

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> David replied, "Have I done something wrong? I was merely asking a question!"

## 1 Samuel 17:30

### He turned away from him

“He” refers to David and the word “him” refers to Eliab.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- return

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> He turned away from him toward another, and spoke in the same way. The people answered the same thing as before.

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Then he walked over to another man and asked him the same question, but the man gave him the same answer. Each time he asked someone, he received the same answer.

## 1 Samuel 17:31

### When the words that David said were heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When the soldiers heard what David said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

#### ULT

**31** When the words that David said were heard, soldiers repeated them to Saul, and he sent for David.

#### UST

**31** Finally, someone told King Saul what David had asked, and Saul sent someone to bring David to him.

## 1 Samuel 17:32

### Let no man's heart fail

The heart failing represents being terrified and losing confidence.  
Alternate translation: "Do not let anyone be terrified" or "Do not let anyone lose their confidence" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### your servant will go

David spoke of himself as "your servant" to show respect to Saul.  
Alternate translation: "I, your servant, will go" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**32** Then David said to Saul, "Let no man's heart fail because of that Philistine; your servant will go and fight with this Philistine."

### UST

**32** David told King Saul, "No one should worry because of that Philistine man. I will go and fight with him!"

## 1 Samuel 17:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Saul said to David, "You are not able to go against this Philistine to fight with him; for you are only a youth, and he a man of war from his youth."

#### UST

<sup>33</sup> Saul said to David, "You are only a young man, and he has been a very powerful soldier all his life. So you are not able to go and fight with him!"

## 1 Samuel 17:34

### Your servant used to keep his father's sheep

David spoke of himself as "your servant" to show respect to Saul. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 17:32](#). Alternate translation: "I, your servant, used to keep my father's sheep" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

### used to keep his father's sheep

"used to take care of his father's sheep"

### a bear

A bear is a large animal with thick fur and long claws and that walks on four legs but can stand on two legs as a person does.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> But David said to Saul, "Your servant used to keep his father's sheep. When a lion or a bear came and took a lamb out of the flock,

### UST

<sup>34</sup> David replied, "I have been taking care of my father's sheep for many years. Whenever a lion or a bear came and carried away a lamb,

## 1 Samuel 17:35

### chased after him and attacked him

Here "him" refers to the lion or bear. Some languages would use the word "it" instead of "him."

### rescued it out of his mouth

Here "it" refers to the lamb.

### he rose up against me

Here "rose up against" is an idiom that refers to attacking. Alternate translation: "it attacked me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### caught him by his beard

The "beard" refers to the lion's mane or the hair on the bear's face.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> I chased after him and attacked him, and rescued it out of his mouth. When he rose up against me, I caught him by his beard, struck him, and killed him.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> I went after it and attacked it and rescued the lamb from the animal's mouth. Then I grabbed the animal by its jaw and struck it and killed it.

## 1 Samuel 17:36

### Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to King Saul.

### This uncircumcised Philistine

This phrase is an insult and indicates that Goliath does not belong to the living God. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 17:26](#).

### will be like one of them

David is saying that he will be able to kill the Philistine just as he was able to kill the lion and bear.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [God](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**36** Your servant has killed both a lion and a bear. This uncircumcised Philistine will be like one of them, since he has challenged the armies of the living God."

### UST

**36** I have killed both lions and bears. And I will do the same to this heathen Philistine, because he has defied the army of the all-powerful God!

## 1 Samuel 17:37

### from the paw of the lion and from the paw of the bear

Bears and lions use their paws when they attack, so the word “paw” represents the attack. Alternate translation: “from the attack of the lion and from the attack of the bear” or “from the lion and the bear” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the hand of this Philistine

The Philistine’s hand represents his power in fighting. Alternate translation: “the power of this Philistine” or “the Philistine” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- hand
- hand
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- hand
- hand
- walk, walked

### ULT

**37** David said, “Yahweh rescued me from the paw of the lion and from the paw of the bear. He will rescue me from the hand of this Philistine.” Then Saul said to David, “Go, and may Yahweh be with you.”

### UST

**37** Yahweh has rescued me from paws of lions and bears, and he will rescue me from this Philistine!” Then Saul said to David, “All right, go and fight him, and I hope that Yahweh will help you!”

## 1 Samuel 17:38

### coat of chainmail

a flexible piece of body armor covered with protective scales or small plates

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- head
- bronze

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- head
- bronze

#### ULT

**38** Saul clothed David with his armor. He put a helmet of bronze upon his head, and he clothed him with a coat of chainmail.

#### UST

**38** Then Saul gave to David his own clothes that he always wore in battles, and he gave him a bronze helmet and a coat made of metal plates.

## 1 Samuel 17:39

### his sword on his armor

"Saul's sword on the armor"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- David
- sword, swordsmen

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- David
- sword, swordsmen

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> David strapped his sword on his armor. But he was not able to walk, because he had not trained with them. Then David said to Saul, "I cannot go out to fight with these, for I have not trained with them." So David put them off.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> David put these things on. Then he fastened his sword over them and tried to walk. But he could not walk, because he was not accustomed to wearing those things. So David said to Saul, "I cannot fight wearing all these things, because I am not accustomed to wearing them!" So he took them off.

## 1 Samuel 17:40

### his staff in his hand

Here “his” refers to David.

### His sling was in his hand

A sling is a weapon for throwing stones.

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- hand
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- hand
- hand

### ULT

**40** He took his staff in his hand and chose five smooth stones out of the brook; he put them in his shepherd's pouch. His sling was in his hand as he approached the Philistine.

### UST

**40** Then he took his walking staff; then he chose five smooth stones out of a streambed. He put them in the pouch of his shoulder bag. Then he put his sling in his hand and started walking toward Goliath.

## 1 Samuel 17:41

### with his shield bearer in front of him

“and his shield bearer walked in front of him”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- walk, walked

#### ULT

<sup>41</sup> The Philistine came and approached David, with his shield bearer in front of him.

#### UST

<sup>41</sup> Goliath walked toward David, with the soldier who was carrying his shield walking in front of him. When he got near David,

## 1 Samuel 17:42

### he despised him

“he hated him”

### and ruddy

“and healthy looking”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>42</sup> When the Philistine looked around and saw David, he despised him, for he was only a boy, and ruddy, with a handsome appearance.

### UST

<sup>42</sup> he looked at David closely. He saw that David had a handsome face and healthy body, but that he was only a young man. So he sneered at David.

## 1 Samuel 17:43

### Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?

Here a dog represents a small animal that a person can easily kill. The word “sticks” refers to David’s staff and shows Goliath’s opinion that it is not a good weapon. Goliath uses this question to accuse David of insulting him. Alternate translation: “You insult me by coming at me with mere sticks as if I were just a dog!” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>43</sup> Then the Philistine said to David, “Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?” and the Philistine cursed David by his gods.

#### UST

<sup>43</sup> He said to David, “Are you coming to me with a stick because you think that I am a dog?” Then he called out to his gods to harm David.

## 1 Samuel 17:44

### I will give your flesh to the birds of the heavens and to the beasts of the field

Goliath speaks of killing David and leaving his body on the ground for the animals to eat it as if he were to give David's body to the animals. Alternate translation: "I will kill you, and the birds of the heavens and the beasts of the field will eat your body" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### birds of the heavens

"birds of the sky" or "birds"

#### beasts of the field

"wild animals"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> The Philistine said to David, "Come to me, and I will give your flesh to the birds of the heavens and to the beasts of the field."

#### UST

<sup>44</sup> He said to David, "Come here to me, and I will kill you and give your dead body to the birds and wild animals to eat!"

## 1 Samuel 17:45

### in the name of Yahweh

Here “name” represents God’s power or authority. Alternate translation: “with the power of Yahweh” or “with the authority of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### whom you have defied

“whom you have provoked” or “whom you have insulted”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### ULT

<sup>45</sup> David replied to the Philistine, “You come to me with a sword, a spear, and a javelin. But I come to you in the name of Yahweh of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied.

### UST

<sup>45</sup> David replied, “You are coming to me with a sword and a spear and a small spear. But I am coming to you in the name of Yahweh, commander of the angel armies. He is the God whom the army of Israel worships, and he is the God whom you have defied.

## 1 Samuel 17:46

### Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Goliath.

### I will give the dead bodies...to the birds...and to the wild beasts of the earth

David speaks of leading the Israelites in killing the Philistines and leaving their bodies on the ground for the animals to eat them as if he were to give their bodies to the animals. Alternate translation: "We Israelites will kill the Philistine army, and the birds of the heavens and the wild beasts of the earth will eat them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### all the earth may know

The word "earth" refers to the people on earth. Alternate translation: "all the people of the earth may know" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**46** Today Yahweh will give me victory over you, and I will kill you and remove your head from your body. Today I will give the dead bodies of the Philistine army to the birds of the heavens and to the wild beasts of the earth, so that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel,

### UST

**46** Today Yahweh will enable me to defeat you. I will strike you down and cut off your head. And we Israelites will kill many Philistine soldiers and give their bodies to the birds and wild animals to eat. And everyone in the world will hear about it and know that we Israelite people worship an all-powerful God.

## 1 Samuel 17:47

### Yahweh does not give victory with sword or spear

Swords and spears are examples of battle weapons. They represent human ways of fighting. Alternate translation: “The victory that Yahweh gives does not depend on sword and spear” or “when Yahweh gives us victory, he does not depend on how we fight” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### the battle is Yahweh’s

Winning the battle is spoken of as owning the battle. Alternate translation: “Yahweh always wins the battle” or “the victory belongs to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### he will give you into our hand

Giving the Philistines into Israel’s hand represents helping Israel to defeat the Philistines in battle. Alternate translation: “he will help us defeat you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- sword, swordsmen
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- sword, swordsmen
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>47</sup> and that all this gathering may know that Yahweh does not give victory with sword or spear. For the battle is Yahweh’s, and he will give you into our hand.”

#### UST

<sup>47</sup> And everyone here will know that Yahweh can rescue people without a sword or a spear. Yahweh always wins his battles, and he will enable us to defeat all of you Philistines.”

## 1 Samuel 17:48

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- David

#### ULT

<sup>48</sup> When the Philistine rose and approached David, then David ran quickly toward the enemy army to meet him.

#### UST

<sup>48</sup> As Goliath came closer to attack David, David ran quickly toward him.

## 1 Samuel 17:49

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- hand
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- hand
- face, facial
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

<sup>49</sup> David put his hand in his bag, took a stone from it, slung it, and hit the Philistine in the forehead. The stone sank into the Philistine's forehead, and he fell on his face to the ground.

### UST

<sup>49</sup> He put his hand into his shoulder bag and took out one stone. He put in his sling and hurled it toward Goliath. The stone hit Goliath in the forehead and cracked his skull, and he fell facedown to the ground.

## 1 Samuel 17:50

### David defeated...He hit...killed...There was no sword in David's hand

Verse 50 is a summary of David's amazing victory over Goliath. The details about how he hit and killed Goliath are in [1 Samuel 17:49](#) and 17:51. Some languages do not use summary statements like this. In those situations, translators may restructure the verses as they are in the UST.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

#### ULT

**50** David defeated the Philistine with a sling and with a stone. He hit the Philistine and killed him. There was no sword in David's hand.

#### UST

**50-51** Then David ran and stood over Goliath. He pulled Goliath's sword from its sheath and killed him with it, and then cut off his head. In that way David defeated the Philistine without having his own sword. He used only a sling and a stone! When the other Philistines saw that their great warrior was dead, they ran away.

## 1 Samuel 17:51

### Then David ran and stood over the Philistine

David did this after Goliath fell to the ground in [1 Samuel 17:49](#).

### took his sword

“took the Philistine’s sword.” Here the word “his” refers to Goliath.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [head](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [head](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### ULT

**51** Then David ran and stood over the Philistine and took his sword, drew it out of the sheath, killed him, and cut off his head with it. When the Philistines saw that their strong man was dead, they fled.

### UST

**50-51** Then David ran and stood over Goliath. He pulled Goliath’s sword from its sheath and killed him with it, and then cut off his head. In that way David defeated the Philistine without having his own sword. He used only a sling and a stone! When the other Philistines saw that their great warrior was dead, they ran away.

## 1 Samuel 17:52

### The dead Philistines lay along the way to Shaaraim

It can be stated clearly that the Israelites were killing the Philistines as they chased them. Alternate translation: "And they killed the Philistines as they chased them, and the bodies of the dead Philistines were on the ground along the way to Shaaraim" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [alarm, alarmed](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [alarm, alarmed](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

#### ULT

**52** Then the men of Israel and of Judah rose with a shout, and chased after the Philistines as far as the valley and the gates of Ekron. The dead Philistines lay along the way to Shaaraim, all the way to Gath and Ekron.

#### UST

**52** The Israelite men shouted and ran after them. They pursued them all the way to the city of Gath and to the gates of the city of Ekron. They struck them down as they went, with the result that dead Philistines were lying on the road all the way from Shaaraim to Gath and Ekron.

## 1 Samuel 17:53

### they plundered their camp

“the Israelites plundered the Philistines’ camp”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- return

#### ULT

<sup>53</sup> The people of Israel returned from chasing the Philistines, and they plundered their camp.

#### UST

<sup>53</sup> When the Israelites returned from chasing the Philistines, they plundered the Philistine camp.

## 1 Samuel 17:54

### he put his armor in his tent

“he put Goliath’s armor in his own tent”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem
- head

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- Jerusalem
- head

#### ULT

<sup>54</sup> David took the head of the Philistine and brought it to Jerusalem, but he put his armor in his tent.

#### UST

<sup>54</sup> David later took the head of Goliath to Jerusalem, but he kept Goliath’s weapons in his own tent.

## 1 Samuel 17:55

### When Saul saw David

The conversation in 17:55-56 happened before David killed Goliath. Alternate translation: “When Saul had seen David” or “Earlier when Saul saw David” (See: [Order of Events](#))

### go out against the Philistine

“go to fight against the Philistine”

### whose son is this youth

“who is this youth’s father”

### As you live

This was a way of swearing that what he was about to say was true.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**55** When Saul saw David go out against the Philistine, he said to Abner, the captain of the army, “Abner, whose son is this youth?” Abner said, “As you live, king, I do not know.”

### UST

**55** As Saul watched David going toward Goliath, he said to Abner, the commander of his army, “Abner, whose son is that young man?” Abner replied, “As sure as you are alive, I do not know.”

## 1 Samuel 17:56

### whose son the boy is

“who the boy’s father is”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

**56** The king said, “Ask those who might know, whose son the boy is.”

#### UST

**56** Then the king said, “Find out whose son he is!”

## 1 Samuel 17:57

### in his hand

Here “his” refers to David.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- hand
- head

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- hand
- head

#### ULT

<sup>57</sup> When David returned from killing the Philistine, Abner took him, and brought him before Saul with the head of the Philistine in his hand.

#### UST

<sup>57</sup> Later, as David returned from killing Goliath, Abner took him to Saul. David was carrying Goliath's head.

## 1 Samuel 17:58

### Whose son are you

"Who is your father"

### I am the son of your servant Jesse the Bethlehemite

"My father is your servant Jesse, the Bethlehemite"

### your servant Jesse

David referred to his father as "your servant" to show that his father was faithful to King Saul.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- David
- Jesse
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- David
- Jesse
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>58</sup> Saul said to him, "Whose son are you, young man?" David answered, "I am the son of your servant Jesse the Bethlehemite."

### UST

<sup>58</sup> Saul asked him, "Young man, whose son are you?" David replied, "Sir, I am the son of your servant Jesse, who lives in Bethlehem."

## 1 Samuel 18

### 1 Samuel 18 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

This is the first chapter of a section explaining why Saul wants to kill David.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 18:7.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Saul is jealous of David's popularity

Saul's son, Jonathan, loves David. David is successful in battling the Philistines, and Saul is happy until the women give David more attention than they give him. He fears that David will replace him as king. This is potentially confusing because the author has already established that David will be the next king. It is probably that Saul feared David would kill him in order to be the next king sooner, or that he did not really believe David would be the next king. (See: [love](#), [beloved](#))

##### Jonathan's love of David

Some scholars believe Jonathan loved David as a man loves his wife. There is no reason to translate this as if Jonathan were a homosexual. Instead, treat this as a brotherly type of love.

## 1 Samuel 18:1

### the soul of Jonathan was bound to the soul of David

Very close friendship is spoken of as if it were binding together the souls of two people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jonathan felt a strong affection towards David" or "Jonathan committed himself to David" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Jonathan loved him as his own soul

Here "loved" refers to the love between friends, not romantic love. The word "soul" represents the person or the person's life. Alternate translation: "Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself" or "Jonathan loved David as he loved his own life" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [heart](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [heart](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When he had finished speaking to Saul, the soul of Jonathan was bound to the soul of David, and Jonathan loved him as his own soul.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After David finished talking with Saul, he met Saul's son, Jonathan. Jonathan immediately liked David; in fact, he began to love him.

## 1 Samuel 18:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Saul took David into his service that day; he did not let him return to his father's house.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> From that day, Saul kept David with him to serve him; he did not let him return home.

## 1 Samuel 18:3

### Jonathan loved him as his own soul

Here “loved” refers to the love between friends, not romantic love. The word “soul” represents the person or the person’s life. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 18:1](#). Alternate translation: “Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself” or “Jonathan loved David as he loved his own life” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then Jonathan and David made a covenant of friendship because Jonathan loved him as his own soul.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> Because he loved David so much, Jonathan made a solemn agreement with David. They promised each other that they would always be friends.

## 1 Samuel 18:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sword, swordsmen

### Translation Words - UST

- sword, swordsmen

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Jonathan took off the robe that he was wearing and gave it to David with his armor, as well as his sword, bow, and belt.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> Jonathan took off his own outer robe and gave it to David. He also gave David his soldier's tunic, his sword, his bow and arrows, and his belt.

## 1 Samuel 18:5

### he succeeded

"he prospered"

### This was pleasing in the eyes of all the people and also in the sight of Saul's servants

The phrases "in the eyes of" and "in the sight of" mean the same thing. The opinion of the people is spoken of as something that they view as either good or bad. Alternate translation: "This was pleasing in the opinions of all the people and of Saul's servants" or "This pleased all the people and Saul's servants" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [wise](#), [wisdom](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [David](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [wise](#), [wisdom](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [David](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> David went out wherever Saul sent him, and he succeeded. Saul set him over the men of war. This was pleasing in the eyes of all the people and also in the sight of Saul's servants.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> David went wherever Saul sent him. And whatever Saul told him to do, David did it very successfully. As a result, Saul appointed David as a commander in the army. All the officers and other men in the army approved of that.

## 1 Samuel 18:6

### from all the cities of Israel

This is generalization that emphasizes the great number of women who came from many cities. Alternate translation: “from many of the cities throughout Israel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### with tambourines, with joy, and with musical instruments

“joyfully playing tambourines and other musical instruments”

### with tambourines

A “tambourine” is a small handheld drum.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [joy](#), [joyful](#), [enjoy](#), [rejoice](#), [gladness](#), [rejoicing](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [joy](#), [joyful](#), [enjoy](#), [rejoice](#), [gladness](#), [rejoicing](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> As they came home from defeating the Philistines, the women came from all the cities of Israel, singing and dancing, to meet King Saul, with tambourines, with joy, and with musical instruments.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> But when the men in the army were returning home after David had killed Goliath, Israelite women came out from many cities and towns. They greeted King Saul while they were singing and dancing very joyfully, playing tambourines and lyres.

## 1 Samuel 18:7

### David his ten thousands

The verb may be supplied from the previous line. Alternate translation: "David has killed his ten thousands" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The women sang one to another as they played. They sang: "Saul has killed his thousands, and David his ten thousands."

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> As they danced, they sang this song: "Saul has killed a thousand enemy soldiers, But David has killed ten thousand of them."

## 1 Samuel 18:8

### They have ascribed

"They have credited"

### What more can he have but the monarchy?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "The only thing left for him to have is the kingship." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Saul was very angry, and this song displeased him. He said, "They have ascribed to David ten thousands, but they have ascribed only thousands to me. What more can he have but the monarchy?"

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> When Saul heard them singing that, he did not like it. He became very angry. He said to himself, "They are saying that David killed ten thousand men, but that I have killed only one thousand. Soon they will want to make him their king!"

## 1 Samuel 18:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- iniquity
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- iniquity
- David

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Saul looked at David with suspicion from that day on.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> From that time, Saul watched David very closely because he was suspicious that David would try to become king.

## 1 Samuel 18:10

### a harmful spirit from God

Here “harmful spirit” may refer to either “a spirit that causes trouble” or “an evil spirit.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 16:15](#).

### a harmful spirit from God rushed upon Saul

The phrase “rushed upon” means the harmful spirit influenced Saul. In this case it means it caused Saul to be troubled and act crazy. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 10:6](#).

### he raved

“he acted crazy”

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- hand
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- hand
- house

### ULT

**10** The next day a harmful spirit from God rushed upon Saul and he raved within the house. So David played his instrument, as he did each day. Saul had a spear in his hand.

### UST

**10** The next day, an evil spirit sent by God suddenly took control of Saul. He began to act like a madman, inside his house. David was playing the lyre for him, as he did every day. Saul was holding a spear in his hand,

## 1 Samuel 18:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

#### ULT

**11** Saul threw the spear, for he thought, "I will pin David to the wall." But David escaped from Saul's presence twice in this way.

#### UST

**11** and he hurled it at David, thinking, "I will fasten David to the wall with the spear!" He did that two times, but David jumped aside both times.

## 1 Samuel 18:12

### Yahweh was with him

“Yahweh was with David”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- David

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- David

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Saul was afraid of David, because Yahweh was with him, but was no longer with Saul.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> Because it became evident that Yahweh had abandoned Saul but that he was helping David, Saul was afraid of David.

## 1 Samuel 18:13

### So Saul removed him from his presence

"So Saul removed David from his presence"

### a commander of a thousand

Possible meanings are 1) the word "thousand" represents the exact amount of soldiers that he would lead. Alternate translation: "a commander of 1,000 soldiers" or 2) the word translated as "thousand" does not represent exact number, but is the name of a large military division. Alternate translation: "a commander of a large military division" See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 17:18](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

### David went out and came in before the people

Here "the people" refers to the soldiers under David's command. The phrases "went out" and "came in" are idioms that refer to leading the people into battle and leading them home from battle. Alternate translation: "David led his soldiers into battle and led them home from battle" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### ULT

**13** So Saul removed him from his presence and appointed him a commander of a thousand. In this way David went out and came in before the people.

#### UST

**13** So he appointed David as a commander of a thousand soldiers and sent David away from him, hoping that David would be killed in a battle. But when David led his soldiers in their battles,

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

## 1 Samuel 18:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- wise, wisdom
- Yahweh
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- wise, wisdom
- Yahweh
- David

#### ULT

**14** David was prospering in all his ways,  
for Yahweh was with him.

#### UST

**14** he always had great success, because  
Yahweh was helping him.

## 1 Samuel 18:15

### he stood in awe of him

Here “stood in awe” is an idiom that means to fear. Alternate translation: “he feared David” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- wise, wisdom

#### Translation Words - UST

- wise, wisdom

#### ULT

**15** When Saul saw that he prospered, he stood in awe of him.

#### UST

**15** When Saul heard that David and his soldiers were very successful, he became more afraid of David.

## 1 Samuel 18:16

### all Israel and Judah loved David

Here “Israel and Judah” represent the people of all of the tribes.  
Alternate translation: “all the people in Israel and Judah loved David”  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

### went out and came in before them

The phrases “went out” and “came in” are idioms that refer to leading the people into battle and leading them home from battle. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 18:13](#). Alternate translation: “led his soldiers into battle and led them home from battle” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [David](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [David](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**16** But all Israel and Judah loved David, for he went out and came in before them.

### UST

**16** But all the people of Israel and of Judah loved David, because he led the soldiers very successfully in the battles.

## 1 Samuel 18:17

### Let not my hand be on him, but let the hand of the Philistines be on him

Harming someone is spoken of as if it were placing one's hand on that person. Here, Saul is referring to killing David. Alternate translation: "I will not be the one to kill him; I will let the Philistines kill him" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

#### ULT

**17** Then Saul said to David, "Here is my oldest daughter Merab. I will give her to you as a wife. Only be courageous for me and fight Yahweh's battles." For Saul thought, "Let not my hand be on him, but let the hand of the Philistines be on him."

#### UST

**17** One day Saul said to David, "I am ready to give you my oldest daughter, Merab, to be your wife. I will do that if you serve me bravely by fighting battles for Yahweh against the Philistines." He said that because he thought, "I will not try to get rid of David by myself. I will allow the Philistines to do that."

## 1 Samuel 18:18

### Who am I, and who are my relatives, or my father's clan in Israel...to the king?

David uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he is not worthy of being Saul's son-in-law. Alternate translation: "I am nobody and neither my relatives nor my father's family are important enough in Israel...to the king." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### son-in-law to the king

"husband of the king's daughter"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bridegroom

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- family, household
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bridegroom

### ULT

<sup>18</sup> David said to Saul, "Who am I, and who are my relatives, or my father's clan in Israel, that I should be son-in-law to the king?"

### UST

<sup>18</sup> But David said to Saul, "I am not a very important person, and my family is not very important. Also my clan is not a very important Israelite clan. So I do not deserve to become your son-in-law."

## 1 Samuel 18:19

### when Merab, Saul's daughter, should have been given to David

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when Saul should have given his daughter Merab to David" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### she was given to Adriel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Saul gave her to Adriel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> But at the time when Merab, Saul's daughter, should have been given to David, she was given to Adriel the Meholathite as a wife.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> So, when it was time for Merab to be given to David to become his wife, instead, Saul gave her to a man named Adriel, from Meholah.

## 1 Samuel 18:20

### Michal...loved David

Here “loved” means she had romantic feelings for David.

### They told Saul

Here “they” refers to people who found out about Michal’s feelings, not to David and Michal.

### Translation Words - ULT

- love, beloved
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- love, beloved
- David

### ULT

**20** But Michal, Saul’s daughter, loved David. They told Saul, and this pleased him.

### UST

**20** However, Saul’s other daughter, Michal, fell in love with David. When they told Saul about that, he was pleased.

## 1 Samuel 18:21

### that the hand of the Philistines may be against him

Harming someone is spoken of as if it were placing one's hand on that person. Here, Saul is referring to killing David. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 18:17](#). Alternate translation: "so that the Philistines may kill him" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

### You will be my son-in-law

"You will be the husband of my daughter"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**21** Then Saul thought, "I will give her to him, so that she can be a trap for him, and that the hand of the Philistines may be against him." So Saul said to David a second time, "You will be my son-in-law."

#### UST

**21** He thought, "I will give Michal to him, in order that she may trap him, and the Philistines will be able to kill him." So he said to David, "You can marry Michal," and by saying that, he indicated for the second time that David would become his son-in-law.

## 1 Samuel 18:22

### all his servants love you

"all of his servants admire you"

### Now then

"For these reasons you should"

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- love, beloved
- David
- delight
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- love, beloved
- David
- delight
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> Saul commanded his servants, "Speak with David in private, and say, 'See, the king takes pleasure in you, and all his servants love you. Now then, become the king's son-in-law.'"

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Saul told his servants, "Talk to David privately, and say to him, 'Listen, the king is pleased with you, and all of us his servants love you. So now we think that you should marry Michal and become the king's son-in-law.'"

## 1 Samuel 18:23

**Is it a small matter to you to be the king's son-in-law, since I am a poor man, and lightly esteemed?**

David asks this rhetorical question to emphasize that he is not worthy to be the king's son-in-law. Alternate translation: "It is a great matter to be the king's son-in-law, and I am too poor and unimportant for that." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> So Saul's servants spoke these words to David. Then David said, "Is it a small matter to you to be the king's son-in-law, since I am a poor man, and lightly esteemed?"

### UST

<sup>23</sup> So they said that to David. But David said, "It would be a great honor to become the king's son-in-law. But I do not think that I should do that, because I am only a poor and insignificant man."

## 1 Samuel 18:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> The servants of Saul reported to him the words which David spoke.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> Saul's servant told him what David had said.

## 1 Samuel 18:25

### The king does not desire any price for the bride except a hundred foreskins

The verb for the second phrase may be supplied from the first. Alternate translation: "The king does not desire any price for the bride; he desires only that you bring to him 100 foreskins" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Numbers](#))

#### foreskins

The foreskin is a fold of skin on a man's private part that is removed during circumcision.

### to be avenged from the king's enemies

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to get revenge on the king's enemies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines

Here "fall" means to die. The phrase "by the hand" is an idiom that tells us the means by which something will happen, in this case, David will be killed by the Philistines. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to have the Philistines kill David" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Then Saul said, "Say this to David, 'The king does not desire any price for the bride except a hundred foreskins of the Philistines, to be avenged from the king's enemies.'" Now Saul thought to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> Saul replied, "Go and say to David, 'In order for the king to allow you to marry Michal, he wants you to kill one hundred Philistines and to cut off their foreskins and bring the foreskins to him to prove that you have killed them. In that way he will get revenge on his enemies.'" But what Saul really wanted was that the Philistines would kill David while he was trying to kill them.

## 1 Samuel 18:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> When his servants told David these words, it pleased David to be the king's son-in-law.

### UST

<sup>26</sup> When the servants told that to David, he was very pleased that he could become the king's son-in-law by doing that. The king had said how many days he would allow for David to do that.

## 1 Samuel 18:27

### two hundred Philistines

This can be rendered numerically. Alternate translation: "200 Philistines" (See: [Numbers](#))

### they gave them in full number to the king

"David and his men gave all of them to the king"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### ULT

**27** Before those days had expired, David went with his men and killed two hundred Philistines. David brought their foreskins, and they gave them in full number to the king, so that he might be the king's son-in-law. So Saul gave him Michal his daughter as his wife.

#### UST

**27** But before that time ended, David and his men went and killed, not one hundred, but two hundred Philistines! He brought their foreskins to Saul, and counted them while Saul was watching, in order to prove that he had fulfilled what the king required so that he could become Saul's son-in-law. So then Saul was obligated to allow David to marry his daughter Michal.

## 1 Samuel 18:28

### Saul saw, and he knew

Here the words “saw” and “knew” share similar meanings and emphasize that Saul knew with certainty. Alternate translation: “Saul recognized” (See: [Doublet](#))

### Michal, Saul’s daughter, loved him

Here “loved” means she had romantic feelings for David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [love, beloved](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**28** When Saul saw, and he knew that Yahweh was with David, and that Michal, Saul’s daughter, loved him,

### UST

**28** But when Saul realized that Yahweh was helping David, and that his daughter loved David,

## 1 Samuel 18:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- David
- David
- adversary, enemy

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- David
- David
- adversary, enemy

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Saul was even more afraid of David. Saul was continually David's enemy.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> he became more afraid of David. So as long as Saul lived, he was David's enemy.

## 1 Samuel 18:30

### so that his name was highly regarded

Here “name” is a metonym for David. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that people greatly respected David” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [name](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [name](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**30** Then the princes of the Philistines came out for battle, and as often as they came out, David succeeded more than all the servants of Saul, so that his name was highly regarded.

#### UST

**30** The Philistine armies repeatedly came to fight the Israelites, but every time they fought, David and his soldiers were more successful than any of Saul's other army commanders. As a result, David became very famous.

## 1 Samuel 19

### 1 Samuel 19 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### God protects David

Jonathan persuades Saul not to kill David, but Saul again becomes jealous and orders his servants to bring David to him to be killed. God uses Michal to save David. David flees to Samuel and they begin prophesying. When Saul sends servants to capture David, they begin prophesying. This causes Saul to go himself and he begins to prophesy. (See: [jealous](#), [jealousy](#) and [save](#), [saved](#), [safe](#), [salvation](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

## 1 Samuel 19:1

### to all his servants

Here “his” refers to Saul.

### took great pleasure in David

Jonathan greatly enjoyed being with David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- delight
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- delight
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Saul said to Jonathan his son and to all his servants that they should kill David. But Jonathan, Saul's son, took great pleasure in David.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Then Saul urged all his servants and his son Jonathan to kill David. But Jonathan liked David very much.

## 1 Samuel 19:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- seek, search, look for
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So Jonathan told David, "Saul my father seeks to kill you. Therefore be on your guard in the morning and hide yourself in a secret place.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So he warned David, "My father Saul is seeking for a way to kill you. So be careful. Tomorrow morning go and find a place to hide in the field.

## 1 Samuel 19:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> I will go out and stand beside my father in the field where you are, and I will speak with my father about you. If I learn anything, I will tell you.”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> I will ask my father to go out there with me. While we are out there, I will talk to him about you. Then I will tell you everything that he tells me.” So David did what Jonathan told him to do.

## 1 Samuel 19:4

### Do not let the king sin against his servant

Jonathan speaks as if Saul is another person to show Saul that Jonathan respects Saul. Alternate translation: “Do not sin against your servant” (See: [Pronouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Jonathan spoke well of David to Saul his father and said to him, “Do not let the king sin against his servant David. For he has not sinned against you, and his deeds have brought you good.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> The next morning, Jonathan spoke with his father, saying many good things about David. He said, “You should never do anything to harm your servant David! He has never done anything to harm you! Everything that he has done has helped you very much.

## 1 Samuel 19:5

### he took his life in his hand

Here “life in his hand” is an idiom that refers to risking his life.

Alternate translation: “he risked his life” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Why would you sin against innocent blood by killing David for no reason?

Jonathan asks this question to rebuke Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should not sin against innocent blood and kill David without cause.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### sin against innocent blood

Here “blood” is a metonym for the life of an innocent person.

Alternate translation: “commit the sin of murder” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- innocent
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- innocent
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> For he took his life in his hand and killed the Philistine. Yahweh brought about a great victory for all Israel. You saw it and rejoiced. Why would you sin against innocent blood by killing David for no reason?”

### UST

<sup>5</sup> He was in danger of being killed when he fought against Goliath, the great soldier of the Philistine army. By enabling David to kill him, Yahweh won a great victory for all the people of Israel. You were very happy when you saw that. Why would you want to do anything now to harm David? There is no reason for you to kill him, because he has not done anything wrong!”

## 1 Samuel 19:6

### he will not be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not put him to death" or "I will not kill him" or "I will certainly keep him alive" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- voice
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- voice
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Saul listened to Jonathan. Saul swore, "As Yahweh lives, he will not be put to death."

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Saul listened to what Jonathan said. Then Saul said, "I solemnly promise that just as surely as Yahweh is alive, I will not kill David."

## 1 Samuel 19:7

### he was in his presence

David was in Saul's presence.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Jonathan called David, and Jonathan told him all these things. Jonathan brought David to Saul, and he was in his presence as before.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Afterward, Jonathan summoned David and told him what he and Saul had said. Then Jonathan brought David to Saul, and David served Saul as he had done before.

## 1 Samuel 19:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> There was war again, and David went out and fought with the Philistines and defeated them with a great slaughter. They fled before him.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> One day a war started again, and David led his soldiers to fight against the Philistine army. David's army attacked them very furiously, with the result that the Philistine army ran away.

## 1 Samuel 19:9

### A harmful spirit from Yahweh

Here “harmful spirit” may refer to either “a spirit that causes trouble” or “an evil spirit.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 16:14](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [temple](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [temple](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> A harmful spirit from Yahweh came on Saul as he sat in his house with his spear in his hand, and as David was playing his instrument.

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> But one day when Saul was sitting in his house, an evil spirit sent from Yahweh suddenly came upon Saul. David was playing his harp for Saul.

## 1 Samuel 19:10

### pin David to the wall with the spear

throw his spear so it would go through David and into the wall

#### Translation Words - ULT

- seek, search, look for

#### Translation Words - UST

- seek, search, look for

#### ULT

**10** Saul tried to pin David to the wall with the spear, but he slipped away from Saul's presence, so that Saul drove the spear into the wall. David fled and escaped that night.

#### UST

**10** Saul hurled his spear at David to try to fasten him to the wall. David dodged, and the spear did not hit him. The spear stuck in the wall, but David ran out into the darkness and escaped.

## 1 Samuel 19:11

### he might kill him

"Saul might kill David"

### Michal...told him

Michal told David

### If you do not save your life

Here "save your life" is an idiom that refers to escape. Alternate translation: "If you do not escape" (See: [Idiom](#))

### you will be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will kill you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [David](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [David](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**11** Saul sent messengers to David's house to watch him that he might kill him in the morning. Michal, David's wife, told him, "If you do not save your life tonight, tomorrow you will be killed."

### UST

**11** Then Saul sent messengers to David's house. He told them to watch the house and to kill David while he was leaving the house the following morning. But David's wife Michal saw them and warned him, saying, "To save your life, you must run away tonight, because if you do not do that, you will be killed tomorrow!"

## 1 Samuel 19:12

### General Information:

Michal helps David escape King Saul. She uses a household idol to make David's bed look like he is sleeping in it.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

#### ULT

**12** So Michal let David down through the window. He went and fled, and escaped.

#### UST

**12** So she enabled David to climb out through a window, and he ran away and escaped.

## 1 Samuel 19:13

**she put a pillow of goats' hair at its head, and covered it with the clothes**

Possible meanings are 1) the head of the idol was lying on the goat's hair pillow and Michal dressed the idol in David's clothes or 2) Michal used David's clothes as a blanket to completely cover the idol and made the "pillow" of goat's hair look like David's hair sticking out from under the blanket of clothes.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

### ULT

**13** Michal took a household idol and laid it in the bed. Then she put a pillow of goats' hair at its head, and covered it with the clothes.

### UST

**13** Then Michal took an idol that was in the house and put it in the bed. She covered it with some of David's clothes, and put some goat's hair on the head of the idol.

## 1 Samuel 19:14

### General Information:

Saul acts out his desire to kill David.

### take David

“take David back to Saul”

### she said

Here “she” refers to Michal.

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- messenger

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- messenger

### ULT

**14** When Saul sent messengers to take David, she said, “He is sick.”

### UST

**14** When the messengers came to the house the next morning, she told them that David was sick and could not get out of bed.

## 1 Samuel 19:15

### Bring him up to me in the bed

The reason why the men thought David was in bed can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "If he really is too sick to come to me, bring me the bed with him in it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

#### ULT

**15** Then Saul sent the messengers to see David; he said, "Bring him up to me in the bed, so that I may kill him."

#### UST

**15** When they reported that to Saul, he told them to go back to David's house. He said to them, "Bring him to me lying on his bed, in order that I can kill him!"

## 1 Samuel 19:16

### pillow of goats' hair

See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 19:13](#).

### behold

The word “behold” here shows that the messengers were surprised by what they saw.

#### ULT

**16** When the messengers came in, behold, the household idol was in the bed along with the pillow of goats' hair at its head.

#### UST

**16** But when those men entered David's house, they saw that there was only an idol in the bed, with goat's hair on its head.

## 1 Samuel 19:17

### Why have you deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped?

Possible meanings are 1) Saul really wants to know why Michal did what she did or 2) Saul uses this question to rebuke Michal. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Let me go. Why should I kill you?

Although David did not actually say this, Michal tells Saul that David threatened her with this question. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will kill you if you do not help me to escape." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [adversary](#), [enemy](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [adversary](#), [enemy](#)

#### ULT

**17** Saul said to Michal, "Why have you deceived me and let my enemy go, so that he has escaped?" Michal answered Saul, "He said to me, 'Let me go. Why should I kill you?'"

#### UST

**17** When they reported that to Saul, Saul summoned Michal and said to her, "Why did you trick me like that? You allowed my enemy to escape!" Michal replied to Saul, "David told me that if I did not help him to escape, he would kill me!"

## 1 Samuel 19:18

### General Information:

David flees to Samuel.

### Now

This word is used here to show that the writer has started to tell a new part of the story.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ramah](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Ramah](#)

### ULT

**18** Now David fled and escaped, and went to Samuel in Ramah and told him all that Saul had done to him. Then he and Samuel went and stayed in Naioth.

### UST

**18** After David had escaped from Saul, he went to Samuel, who was at his home in Ramah. He told Samuel everything that Saul had done to try to kill him. Then David and Samuel went to Naioth, which was nearby, and they stayed there.

## 1 Samuel 19:19

### It was told to Saul

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Someone told Saul” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### See

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

### ULT

**19** It was told to Saul, saying, “See, David is at Naioth in Ramah.”

### UST

**19** Someone told Saul that David was in Naioth,

## 1 Samuel 19:20

### standing as head over them

Here “head” refers to a position of authority. Alternate translation: “acting as their leader” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- appoint, appointed
- David
- messenger
- messenger

#### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- appoint, appointed
- David
- messenger
- messenger

#### ULT

**20** Then Saul sent messengers to capture David. When they saw the company of the prophets prophesying, and Samuel standing as head over them, the Spirit of God came on the messengers of Saul, and they also prophesied.

#### UST

**20** so Saul sent some messengers to capture him. When those messengers arrived in Ramah, they met some men who were shouting messages from Yahweh, and Samuel was there as their leader. When Saul's messengers met them, the Spirit of God came upon Saul's men, and they also shouted in the same way.

## 1 Samuel 19:21

### When Saul was told this

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When someone told Saul this" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (2)
- messenger
- messenger (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess (2)
- messenger
- messenger (2)

### ULT

**21** When Saul was told this, he sent other messengers, and they also prophesied. So Saul sent messengers again the third time, and they also prophesied.

### UST

**21** When Saul heard about that, he sent more messengers, but they also started to shout out messages from Yahweh.

## 1 Samuel 19:22

### Ramah...Seku...Naioth

These are place names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Ramah](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Ramah](#)

#### ULT

**22** Then he also went to Ramah and came to the deep well that is in Seku. He asked, "Where are Samuel and David?" Someone said, "See, they are at Naioth in Ramah."

#### UST

**22** Finally, Saul also went to Ramah. When he arrived at the well at a place named Seku, he asked people there, "Where are Samuel and David?" The people replied, "They are at Naioth near the city of Ramah."

## 1 Samuel 19:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- spirit, spiritual
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Saul went to Naioth in Ramah. Then the Spirit of God came upon him, and as he went he prophesied until he came to Naioth in Ramah.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> While Saul was walking toward Naioth, the Spirit of God also came upon him. While he walked on, he shouted messages from Yahweh until he came to Naioth.

## 1 Samuel 19:24

### This is why they ask, "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

This became a proverb among the Israelites. Apparently people said this to express surprise when a person unexpectedly did something that he had not done before. The implied meaning of the question can be stated explicitly. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 10:12](#). Alternate translation: "That is the reason that when people see someone doing something that is very unexpected, they say, 'Is Saul also a prophet?'" (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### they ask

Here "they" refers to people in general. The question became a proverb among the people.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

#### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

#### ULT

**24** He stripped off his clothes and also prophesied before Samuel. He lay naked all that day and all that night. This is why they ask, "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

#### UST

**24** There he took off his outer clothes, and he spoke messages from God in front of Samuel. He lay on the ground doing that all day and all night. That is the reason that when people see someone doing something that is very unexpected, they say, "Is Saul also a prophet?"

## 1 Samuel 20

### 1 Samuel 20 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Jonathan warns David

David tells Jonathan that Saul is still trying to kill him. Jonathan promises to find out if this is true. When David misses dinner two consecutive days, Saul asks about him. Jonathan says that David went home for an annual sacrifice. Saul gets angry at Jonathan, telling him he will never be king unless they kill David. Saul throws his spear at Jonathan. Jonathan warns David to run away, but first they both promise to always be friends. It was usually a king's son who became king after his death in the ancient Near East. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Metaphor

David uses a powerful metaphor and an oath to impress Jonathan with the danger he is in: "But as truly as Yahweh lives, and as you live, there is but a step between me and death." (See: [Metaphor](#))

## 1 Samuel 20:1

### What have I done? What is my iniquity? What is my sin before your father, that he seeks to take my life?

These three questions mean basically the same thing. David uses them to emphasize that he has done nothing wrong to Saul. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have done nothing wrong. I have not committed any iniquity. I have not sinned against your father. He has no reason to take my life." (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### that he seeks to take my life?

Here "take my life" is an idiom for "kill me." (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- iniquity
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seek, search, look for

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- iniquity
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- seek, search, look for

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then David fled from Naioth in Ramah and came and said to Jonathan, "What have I done? What is my iniquity? What is my sin before your father, that he seeks to take my life?"

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> David ran away from Naioth. He went to Jonathan and asked him, "What have I done to displease your father? What did I do that was wrong? Why is he trying to kill me?"

## 1 Samuel 20:2

### Far from it

Here “far from it” is an idiom that refers to that it is not true. Alternate translation: “This is certainly not true” (See: [Idiom](#))

### nothing either great or small

The words “great or small” include everything in between. Alternate translation: “nothing at all” (See: [Merism](#))

### Why should my father hide this thing from me?

Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that Saul would have told him if he planned to kill David. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “My father has no reason to hide this thing from me!” or “If this thing were true, my father would certainly let me know!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### It is not so

“It is not true”

### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- exile, exiled

### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- exile, exiled

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Jonathan said to David, “Far from it; you will not die. My father does nothing either great or small without telling it to me. Why should my father hide this thing from me? It is not so.”

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Jonathan replied, “My father is certainly not trying to kill you! He always tells me before he does anything that he is planning. He tells me about important things and unimportant things that he plans to do. Why would he refuse to tell me if he were planning to kill you? So what you are saying cannot be true.”

## 1 Samuel 20:3

### I have found favor in your eyes

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "I have pleased you" or "you consider me favorably" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### he will be grieved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this will grieve him" or "he will be very sad" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### there is but a step between me and death

Here "step between me and death" is an idiom that refers to being very close to death. Alternate translation: "I am very close to death" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Yet David vowed again and said, "Your father knows well that I have found favor in your eyes. He has said, 'Do not let Jonathan know this, or he will be grieved.' But as truly as Yahweh lives, and as you live, there is but a step between me and death."

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Then David solemnly declared this to Jonathan: "Your father knows very well that you and I are very good friends, so he says to himself, 'I will not tell Jonathan what I am going to do. If I tell Jonathan, he will be upset, and then he will tell David.' But just as surely as Yahweh is alive and you are alive, I am only one step away from being killed."

## 1 Samuel 20:4

### General Information:

David proposes a test against King Saul to Jonathan.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- David

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then Jonathan said to David,  
"Whatever you say, I will do for you."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Jonathan said to David, "I will do  
whatever you tell me to do."

## 1 Samuel 20:5

### Tomorrow is the new moon

On the first of every month the people would celebrate and offer sacrifices to God.

### until the third day at evening

“until the evening of the day after tomorrow”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> David said to Jonathan, “Tomorrow is the new moon, and I ought to sit down to eat with the king. But let me go, so that I may hide myself in the field until the third day at evening.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> David replied, “Tomorrow we will celebrate the festival of the new moon. I always eat with the king at that festival. But tomorrow I will hide in the field, and I will stay there for one night. I will stay there until the evening of the day after tomorrow.

## 1 Samuel 20:6

### Connecting Statement:

David's continues to describe the test he proposes.

### asked leave of me

"asked me if I would allow him to leave"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> If your father misses me at all, then say, 'David earnestly asked leave of me that he might run to Bethlehem his city; because it is the yearly sacrifice there for all the clan.'

### UST

<sup>6</sup> If your father asks why I am not there at the festival, say to him, 'David requested me to allow him to go to his home in Bethlehem, where his family will offer the sacrifice that they offer every year.'

## 1 Samuel 20:7

### he says...he is...he has decided

The word “he” refers to Saul.

### your servant will have peace

David speaks of himself as if he were another person to show that he respects Jonathan. Alternate translation: “I, your servant, will have peace” (See: [Pronouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- consume, devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- consume, devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> If he says, ‘It is well,’ your servant will have peace. But if he is very angry, then know that he has decided on evil.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> If your father says ‘Very well’, then I know I will be safe. But if he becomes extremely angry, you will know that he is determined to harm me.

## 1 Samuel 20:8

### Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Jonathan.

### with your servant...have brought your servant

David speak of himself in the third person as a form of humility.  
Alternate translation: "with me, your servant...have brought me, your servant" or "with me...have brought me" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### you have brought your servant into a covenant of Yahweh with you

What it was that the two men agreed on can be made explicit.  
Alternate translation: "Yahweh heard you when you made a solemn agreement with me that you and I will always be good friends" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### for why then should you bring me to your father?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "then there would be no reason for you to bring me to your father" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Therefore deal kindly with your servant. For you have brought your servant into a covenant of Yahweh with you. But if there is sin in me, kill me yourself; for why then should you bring me to your father?"

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Please be kind to me. Yahweh heard you when you made a solemn agreement with me that you and I will always be good friends. But if I deserve to be punished, you should kill me yourself, rather than allow your father to punish me."

## 1 Samuel 20:9

### Far be it from you!

This is an idiom that means it will never happen to you. Alternate translation: "This will never happen to you!" (See: [Idiom](#))

### would I not tell you?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I would certainly tell you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- consume, devour
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- consume, devour
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Jonathan said, "Far be it from you! If I learned my father decided harm to come upon you, would I not tell you?"

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Jonathan replied, "I will never do that! If I ever find out that my father is determined to harm you, I will certainly tell you."

## 1 Samuel 20:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then David said to Jonathan, “Who will tell me if by chance your father should answer you roughly?”

### UST

<sup>10</sup> David asked him, “How will I find out if your father answers you harshly?”

## 1 Samuel 20:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)

### ULT

**11** Jonathan said to David, "Come, let us go out into the field." So they both went out into the field.

### UST

**11** Jonathan replied, "Come with me. We will go out into the field." So they went together out into the field.

## 1 Samuel 20:12

**see**

“look” or “listen” or “pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

**if there is good will**

“if my father wants to do good things for you”

**will I not then send to you and make it known to you?**

Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that he will tell David if Saul intends to harm him. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “then I will certainly send to you and make it known to you” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

### ULT

**12** Jonathan said to David, “May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be witness. When I have questioned my father around this time tomorrow, or the third day, see, if there is good will toward David, will I not then send to you and make it known to you?”

### UST

**12** There Jonathan said to David, “I promise this while Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, is listening: At this time the day after tomorrow, I will find out what my father is thinking about you. If he is saying good things about you, I will certainly send a message to you to tell that to you.”

## 1 Samuel 20:13

### may Yahweh do to Jonathan and more also

This is an idiom. Jonathan uses this oath for emphasis and speaks of himself as if he were another person. Alternate translation: “may Yahweh do to me whatever harm my father intends to do to you, and even more than that” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Pronouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

#### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

#### ULT

**13** If it pleases my father to do you harm, may Yahweh do to Jonathan and more also if I do not make it known to you and send you away, so that you may go in peace. May Yahweh be with you, as he has been with my father.

#### UST

**13** But if he is planning to hurt you, I hope that Yahweh will punish me very severely if I do not tell you in advance and help you flee, so that you might go away in safety. I hope that Yahweh will be with you and help you like he has helped my father.

## 1 Samuel 20:14

### General Information:

Jonathan asks David not to completely kill all his offspring so that a remnant will remain.

### will you not show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die?

Jonathan asks this question to confirm that David will do this. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “please show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful.” Possible meanings for “of Yahweh” are 1) “be faithful to me as Yahweh is faithful” or 2) “be faithful to me as Yahweh requires” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Yahweh

### ULT

**14** If I am still alive, will you not show me the covenant faithfulness of Yahweh, that I may not die?

### UST

**14** But while I am still alive, please act kindly toward me because of the oath that we both swore in Yahweh's sight; do not kill me when you become king.

## 1 Samuel 20:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Yahweh
- David
- adversary, enemy
- cut off
- face, facial
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- Yahweh
- David
- adversary, enemy
- cut off
- face, facial
- house

### ULT

**15** Do not cut off your covenant faithfulness from my house forever—not even when Yahweh cuts off every one of the enemies of David from the face of the earth.”

### UST

**15** But if I die, never stop acting kindly toward my family for the sake of our oath, even after Yahweh has gotten rid of all your enemies all over the earth.”

## 1 Samuel 20:16

### house of David

The word “house” is a metonym for the people who live in the house.  
Alternate translation: “David’s family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### May Yahweh require an accounting from the hand of the enemies of David

The hand is a synecdoche for the person. Possible meanings are 1) “May Yahweh use David’s enemies to punish David if David breaks this promise” or 2) “May Yahweh destroy the enemies of David.”  
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David
- David
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- cut off
- seek, search, look for
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David
- David
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- cut off
- seek, search, look for
- house

### ULT

**16** So Jonathan made a covenant with the house of David and said, “May Yahweh require an accounting from the hand of the enemies of David.”

### UST

**16** So Jonathan made a solemn agreement with David and his descendants. And he said, “I hope that Yahweh will get rid of all your enemies.”

## 1 Samuel 20:17

### he loved him as he loved his own soul

Here “his own soul” refers to himself. Alternate translation: “Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- love, beloved
- David

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- love, beloved
- David

#### ULT

**17** Jonathan made David vow again because of the love that he had for him, because he loved him as he loved his own soul.

#### UST

**17** And Jonathan requested David to repeat his solemn promise to be his close friend, because Jonathan loved David as much as he loved himself.

## 1 Samuel 20:18

### You will be missed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My father will miss you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

#### ULT

**18** Then Jonathan said to him, "Tomorrow is the new moon. You will be missed because your seat will be empty."

#### UST

**18** Then Jonathan said, "Tomorrow we will celebrate the festival of the new moon. When you are not sitting at your place when we eat, my father will miss you."

## 1 Samuel 20:19

### when the business was in hand

Here “business was in hand” is an idiom that refers to when everything happened. Alternate translation: “when everything happened” (See: [Idiom](#))

### the stone Ezel

“Ezel” was the name of the stone. Alternate translation: “the stone that people call Ezel” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

**19** When you have stayed three days, go down quickly and come to the place where you hid yourself when the business was in hand, and stay by the stone Ezel.

#### UST

**19** The day after tomorrow, in the evening go to the place where you hid before. Wait by the pile of stones.

## 1 Samuel 20:20

### Connecting Statement:

Jonathan continues to speak to David.

### to the side of it

Here the word "it" refers to the stone by which David was to hide.

#### ULT

<sup>20</sup> I will shoot three arrows to the side of it, as though I were shooting at a target.

#### UST

<sup>20</sup> I will come out and shoot three arrows as though I were trying to shoot at a target. The arrows will hit the ground close to the pile of stones.

## 1 Samuel 20:21

### my young man...the young boy

These refer to the same person.

### Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

### then come

"then you, David, come"

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**21** Then I will send my young man and say to him, 'Go find the arrows.' If I say to the young boy, 'Look, the arrows are on this side of you; get them,' then come; for there will be safety for you and not harm, as Yahweh lives.

### UST

**21** Then I will send a boy to bring the arrows back to me. If you hear me say to him, 'They are closer to me,' then just as surely as Yahweh is alive, you will know that everything is fine, and that you will not be killed.

## 1 Samuel 20:22

### Connecting Statement:

Jonathan continues to speak to David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> "But if I say to the young man, 'Look, the arrows are beyond you,' then go your way, for Yahweh has sent you away.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> But if I tell him, 'The arrows are farther away,' you will know that you must leave immediately, because Yahweh wants you to run away.

## 1 Samuel 20:23

### see, Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) “we know that Yahweh” or 2) “pay attention because this is important: Yahweh.”

### Yahweh is between you and me

Possible meanings are 1) “Yahweh is a witness between you and me” or “Yahweh will be watching how we treat each other” or 2) “May Yahweh be a witness between you and me” or “May Yahweh watch how we treat each other”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> As for the agreement of which you and I have spoken, see, Yahweh is between you and me forever.”

### UST

<sup>23</sup> I hope that Yahweh will watch you and me and enable us to never forget what we have promised each other.”

## 1 Samuel 20:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- bread
- king, kingdom, kingship
- new moon

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- bread
- king, kingdom, kingship
- new moon

### ULT

<sup>24</sup> So David hid himself in the field.

When the new moon came, the king sat down to eat food.

### UST

<sup>24</sup> So David went and hid in the field.

When the festival of the new moon started, the king sat down to eat.

## 1 Samuel 20:25

### Jonathan stood up

Some ancient copies have "Jonathan sat across from him." (See: [Original Manuscripts](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> The king sat on his seat, as usual, on the seat by the wall. Jonathan stood up, and Abner sat by Saul's side. But David's place was empty.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> He sat where he usually sat, close to the wall. Jonathan sat across from him, and Abner the army commander sat next to Saul. But no one was sitting in the place where David usually sat.

## 1 Samuel 20:26

### He is not clean; surely he is not clean

According to the law of Moses, a person who is ceremonially unclean is not to participate in the feast until the priest declares that he is clean. Saul repeats this phrase as if he is trying to convince himself.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- clean, wash

#### Translation Words - UST

- clean, wash
- clean, wash

#### ULT

**26** Yet Saul did not say anything that day, because he thought, "Something has happened to him. He is not clean; surely he is not clean."

#### UST

**26** On that day, Saul did not say anything about David, because he was thinking, "Something must have happened that caused David to become unacceptable to worship God."

## 1 Samuel 20:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- appoint, appointed
- David
- Jesse
- bread
- new moon

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- appoint, appointed
- David
- Jesse
- bread
- new moon

### ULT

<sup>27</sup> But on the second day, the day after the new moon, David's place was empty. Saul said to Jonathan his son, "Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal either yesterday or today?"

### UST

<sup>27</sup> But the next day, when David was not sitting at the place where he usually sat, Saul asked Jonathan, "Why has that son of Jesse not been here to eat with us yesterday and today?"

## 1 Samuel 20:28

### asked permission from me to go

“asked me to allow him to go”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> Jonathan answered Saul, “David earnestly asked permission from me to go to Bethlehem.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Jonathan replied, “David earnestly requested me that I permit him to go to Bethlehem.

## 1 Samuel 20:29

### if I have found favor in your eyes

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 20:3](#). Alternate translation: “I have pleased you” or “you consider me favorably” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### the king's table

Jonathan speaks of Saul as if he is another person to show that he respects Saul. Alternate translation: “your table” (See: [Pronouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### ULT

**29** He said, ‘Please let me go. For our family has a sacrifice in the city, and my brother has ordered me to be there. Now, if I have found favor in your eyes, please let me go and see my brothers.’ For this reason he has not come to the king’s table.”

#### UST

**29** He said, ‘Please allow me to go, because our family is going to offer a sacrifice. My older brother insisted that I be there. So please allow me to go to be with my older brothers.’ I allowed David to go, and that is the reason that he is not here eating with you.”

## 1 Samuel 20:30

### Saul's anger burned against Jonathan

Here "anger burned" is a metonym that refers to becoming very angry. Alternate translation: "Saul became very angry with Jonathan" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### You son of a perverse, rebellious woman!

This is an idiom. Saul uses this phrase as a harsh rebuke to Jonathan and his concern for David. Alternate translation: "You stupid son of a prostitute" or "You stupid traitor" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Do I not know that you have chosen the son of Jesse... mother's nakedness?

Saul uses this question to emphasize that he knows that Jonathan and David are friends. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I know that you have chosen the son of Jesse...mother's nakedness." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### to the shame of your mother's nakedness

Here "mother's nakedness" is an idiom that refers to the mother who gave birth to you. Alternate translation: "to the shame of your mother who gave birth to you" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [wrong](#), [wronged](#), [wrongdoer](#), [mistreat](#), [hurt](#), [hurtful](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [wrong](#), [wronged](#), [wrongdoer](#), [mistreat](#), [hurt](#), [hurtful](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**30** Then Saul's anger burned against Jonathan, and he said to him, "You son of a perverse, rebellious woman! Do I not know that you have chosen the son of Jesse to your own shame, and to the shame of your mother's nakedness?"

#### UST

**30** Saul was furious! He said to Jonathan, "I know that you are being loyal to that son of Jesse. But you will cause shame to come to yourself and to your mother."

## 1 Samuel 20:31

### neither you nor your kingdom will be established

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will not become king and will not establish your kingdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Jesse

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Jesse

#### ULT

**31** For as long as the son of Jesse lives on the earth, neither you nor your kingdom will be established. Now then, send and bring him to me, for he must surely die.”

#### UST

**31** As long as Jesse’s son is living, you will never become the king, and you will never rule over this kingdom! So now, summon David, and bring him to me. He must be executed!”

## 1 Samuel 20:32

### For what reason should he be put to death? What has he done?

Jonathan is trying to get Saul to think carefully about what he is doing. This can be translated as a statement, and the words “should he be put to death” can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “You have no good reason to put him to death. He has done nothing wrong.” or “You have no good reason to kill him. He has done nothing wrong.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

#### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

#### ULT

<sup>32</sup> Jonathan answered Saul his father, “For what reason should he be put to death? What has he done?”

#### UST

<sup>32</sup> Jonathan asked his father, “Why should David be executed? What wrong has he done?”

## 1 Samuel 20:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>33</sup> Then Saul threw his spear at him to kill him. So Jonathan knew that his father was determined to put David to death.

### UST

<sup>33</sup> Then Saul threw his spear at Jonathan in order to kill him, but the spear did not hit him. So Jonathan knew that his father really wanted to kill David.

## 1 Samuel 20:34

### the second day of the month

This “second” is an ordinal number which refers to two. Alternate translation: “the second day of the new moon festival” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

### he was grieved over David

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he was grieving over David” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### had dishonored him

Here “him” refers to David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [bread](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)
- [devour](#)
- [new moon](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [bread](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)
- [devour](#)
- [new moon](#)

### ULT

<sup>34</sup> Jonathan got up from the table in fierce anger and ate no food the second day of the month, for he was grieved over David, because his father had dishonored him.

### UST

<sup>34</sup> Jonathan was very angry, and he left the room. On that second day of the festival he refused to eat anything. He was disgusted about what his father had done, and he was worried about David.

## 1 Samuel 20:35

### a young man was with him

Here “him” refers to Jonathan.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- David
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- David
- feast, feasting
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>35</sup> In the morning, Jonathan went out into the field to the appointment with David, and a young man was with him.

#### UST

<sup>35</sup> The following morning Jonathan went out to the field to give a message to David, as he had agreed that he would do. He took a young boy with him.

## 1 Samuel 20:36

### he shot an arrow beyond him

"Jonathan shot an arrow beyond the young man"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- pray, prayer
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> He said to his young man, "Run and find the arrows that I shoot." As the young man ran, he shot an arrow beyond him.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> Jonathan said to the boy, "Run and find the arrows that I shoot." The boy started running, and Jonathan shot an arrow ahead of the boy.

## 1 Samuel 20:37

### Is not the arrow beyond you?

Jonathan uses this question to emphasize that the arrow is farther ahead of the young man. The uses of litotes also emphasizes this. The rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should know that the arrow is beyond you." or "The arrow is far beyond you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Litotes](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#) (2)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#) (2)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

#### ULT

**37** When the young man came to the place where the arrow that Jonathan shot had landed, Jonathan called after the young man, and said, "Is not the arrow beyond you?"

#### UST

**37** The boy ran to the place where the arrow hit the ground, but Jonathan called out, "The arrow is further away!"

## 1 Samuel 20:38

### called after the young man, "Hurry

"called out to the young man, who was running away from him, 'Hurry'"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- appoint, appointed
- glean, gleanings
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- appoint, appointed
- glean, gleanings
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

#### ULT

**38** Then Jonathan called after the young man, "Hurry, be quick, do not stay!" So Jonathan's young man gathered up the arrows and came to his master.

#### UST

**38** Then he shouted to the boy, "Go quickly; do not wait! Do not stop!" The boy picked up the arrow and brought it back to Jonathan.

## 1 Samuel 20:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>39</sup> But the young man did not know anything. Only Jonathan and David knew the matter.

#### UST

<sup>39</sup> But the boy did not understand the meaning of what Jonathan had said; only Jonathan and David knew.

## 1 Samuel 20:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> Jonathan gave his weapons to his young man and said to him, "Go, take them to the city."

### UST

<sup>40</sup> Then Jonathan gave his bow and arrows to the boy and told him, "Go back to the town."

## 1 Samuel 20:41

### the mound

It seems that David had hidden behind a pile of earth or stones.

### lay facedown on the ground, and bowed himself three times.

David bowed before Jonathan, who was still the King's son, worthy of such respect. Also, this was the last time David met with Jonathan.

### Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- David
- Negev
- earth, earthen, earthly
- proud, pride, prideful
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- David
- Negev
- earth, earthen, earthly
- proud, pride, prideful
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

**41** As soon as the young man was gone, David stood up from behind the mound, lay facedown on the ground, and bowed himself three times. They kissed one another and wept together, with David weeping the more. <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

**41** When the boy left, David came out from behind the pile of stones, where he had been hiding. He went to Jonathan and bowed in front of Jonathan three times, with his face touching the ground. Then David and Jonathan kissed each other on the cheek, and they cried together. But David cried more than Jonathan.

## 1 Samuel 20:42

### May Yahweh be between you and me

Possible meanings are 1) "Yahweh is a witness between you and me" or "Yahweh will be watching how we treat each other" or 2) "May Yahweh be a witness between you and me" or "May Yahweh watch how we treat each other." See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 20:23](#).

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Jonathan said to David, "Go in peace, because we have both sworn in the name of Yahweh and said, 'May Yahweh be between you and me, and between my descendants and your descendants, forever.'" Then David stood up and left, and Jonathan returned to the city.

20:41 <sup>[1]</sup> The Hebrew text reads, *David came out from beside the south*. Modern versions interpret this passage in different ways because the Hebrew text is difficult to understand.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> Jonathan said to David, "May things go well for you as you go. Yahweh has heard what we solemnly promised to always do for each other, and what we said that our descendants must do for each other." Then David left, and Jonathan went back to the town.

## 1 Samuel 21

### 1 Samuel 21 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 21:11.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David and the chief priest

David visits the chief priest and lies to him about being on a special mission for the king. He asks for food, weapons, and prayer. The chief priest gives him some sacred bread and Goliath's sword and prays for him.

##### David and the king of Gath

David flees to Gath. The advisers to the king tell him that David is almost the king of Israel. David becomes afraid of the king and pretends to be insane.

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical questions

The king of Gath's advisers use two rhetorical questions to warn him about how dangerous David could be: "Is not this David the king of the land? Did they not sing to one another about him in dances, 'Saul has killed his thousands, and David his ten thousands?'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 1 Samuel 21:1

### Nob

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ahimelech

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### trembling

shaking in fear

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Then David came to Nob to see Ahimelech the priest. Ahimelech came to meet David trembling and said to him, "Why are you alone and have no one with you?"

### UST

<sup>1</sup> David fled from there and went to the city of Nob to see Ahimelech the priest. Ahimelech trembled when he saw David because he was afraid that something bad had happened. He said to David, "Why are you alone? Why have no men come with you?"

## 1 Samuel 21:2

### on a mission

“to do work for him”

### I have directed the young men to a certain place

“I have told the young men to go to another place, and I will meet them there later”

### Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- pray, prayer
- priest, priesthood
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- pray, prayer
- priest, priesthood
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> David said to Ahimelech the priest, “The king has sent me on a mission and has said to me, ‘Let no one know anything about the business I am sending you, and what I have commanded you.’ I have directed the young men to a certain place.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> David deceived Ahimelech by replying, “The king sent me. But he does not want anyone to know anything about what he sent me to do. I have told my men where they should meet me.

## 1 Samuel 21:3

### Now then

David is starting a new part of the conversation.

### what do you have on hand?

Here “on hand” is a metonym meaning “available.” Alternate translation: “What food do you have that you can give me?” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Give me five loaves of bread

This is a polite request.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [bread](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [bread](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now then what do you have on hand? Give me five loaves of bread, or whatever is here.”

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Now I want to know, do you have any food here for me to eat? Could you give me five loaves of bread, or whatever other food that you can find?”

## 1 Samuel 21:4

### ordinary bread

bread that the priests have not used in worship

### if the young men have kept themselves from women

This can be translated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "Your men may eat it if they have not slept with women recently" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [bread](#)
- [bread](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [bread](#)
- [bread](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> The priest answered David and said, "There is no ordinary bread on hand, but there is holy bread—if the young men have kept themselves from women."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The priest answered David, "There is no ordinary bread here, but I have some of the sacred bread that was placed before Yahweh. Your men may eat it if they have not slept with women recently."

## 1 Samuel 21:5

### women have been kept from us

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "we have kept ourselves from women" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### three days

"3 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

### when I set out

"when I begin a journey"

### The things belonging to the men have been set apart

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The men have set what belongs to them apart" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### How much more today will what they have be set apart

This is a statement, not a question. It can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "It is especially true today that they will set apart what they have" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> David answered the priest, "Surely women have been kept from us for the past three days, as usual when I set out. The things belonging to the men have been set apart even on ordinary missions. How much more today will what they have be set apart!"

### UST

<sup>5</sup> David replied, "They have not been near women for many days. I do not allow my men to defile themselves by sleeping with women while they are preparing to fight in battles. They must continue to keep themselves acceptable to God when they are on ordinary trips, and today they have certainly kept themselves acceptable to God because now we are doing something very special."

## 1 Samuel 21:6

### the bread that was set apart

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the bread that the priests had set apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### which was removed from before Yahweh, in order to put

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “which the priests had removed from before Yahweh so that they could put” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- bread
- bread
- bread

#### Translation Words - UST

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- bread
- bread
- bread

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So the priest gave him the bread that was set apart. For there was no bread there except the bread of the presence, which was removed from before Yahweh, in order to put hot bread in its place on the day it was taken away.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Now the only bread that the priest had was the bread on display before God, the bread that had been placed in Yahweh's presence in the sacred tent. So the priest gave David some of that bread. On that day the priest had taken those loaves from the table and replaced them with fresh loaves.

## 1 Samuel 21:7

### detained before Yahweh

Possible meanings are that 1) Doeg had some religious work regarding Yahweh to do there. Alternate translation: “for some work before Yahweh” or 2) Yahweh detained Doeg there. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh had detained him there” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Doeg...herdsmen

You may need to say clearly that Doeg saw what David did. Alternate translation: “Doeg...herdsmen, and he saw what Ahimelech did” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Doeg the Edomite

This is the name of a man from the land of Edom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### herdsmen

the keepers and protectors of a herd, especially of cattle or sheep

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Now one of the servants of Saul was there that day, detained before Yahweh. His name was Doeg the Edomite, the chief of Saul's herdsmen.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> It happened that Doeg, from the Edom people group, was there on that day to make himself acceptable to Yahweh, and he saw what Ahimelech did. He was one of Saul's officials and the leader of Saul's shepherds.

## 1 Samuel 21:8

### Now is there not here on hand any spear or sword?

Here “on hand” is a metonym meaning “available.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:3](#). Alternate translation: “Do you have a spear or sword that you can give me?” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### weapons

a general name for such things as swords, knives, bows and arrows, and spears

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> David said to Ahimelech, “Now is there not here on hand any spear or sword? For I brought neither my sword nor my weapons with me, because the king’s business was urgent.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> David asked Ahimelech, “Do you have a spear or a sword that I can use? The king appointed us to do this task and told us to leave immediately, so I did not have time to bring any weapons.”

## 1 Samuel 21:9

### Valley of Elah

This is the name of a place in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The priest said, "The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom you killed in the Valley of Elah, is here wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod. If you want to take that, take it, for there is no other weapon here." David said, "There is no other sword like that one; give it to me."

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Ahimelech replied, "I have only the sword that belonged to Goliath the giant from the Philisti people group whom you killed in Elah Valley. It is wrapped in a cloth, and is behind the sacred apron in the sacred tent. If you want it, take it, because I have no other weapon here." David replied, "Truly, there is no other sword that is as good as that one! Give it to me."

## 1 Samuel 21:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> David arose and fled that day from Saul and went to Achish, the king of Gath.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So Ahimelech gave it to him, and David left there. He and his men and went to the city of Gath in the region of Philistia, to stay with King Achish.

## 1 Samuel 21:11

### Is not this David, the king of the land?

They were probably exaggerating when they said that David was king of the land. They used this question to imply that David was a powerful enemy and Achish should not let him stay there. Alternate translation: "You know that this is David, who is as dangerous as the king of the land" (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Did they not sing to one another about him in dances, 'Saul...thousands?'

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know that when the people of the land were dancing, they sang to each other about him, 'Saul...thousands.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

**11** Achish's servants said to him, "Is not this David, the king of the land? Did they not sing to one another about him in dances, 'Saul has killed his thousands, and David his ten thousands?'"

#### UST

**11** But the officers of King Achish did not approve of David's coming. They said to King Achish, "This man David is just as powerful as the king of his land. Our enemies, the Israelite people, honored him by dancing and singing, 'Saul has killed thousands of his enemies, but David has killed tens of thousands of them!'"

## 1 Samuel 21:12

### David took these words to heart

Here “took...to heart” is a metonym to think seriously about what was said. Alternate translation: “David thought seriously about what the servants said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- appoint, appointed
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- appoint, appointed
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> David took these words to heart and was very afraid of Achish, the king of Gath.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> David heard what those men were saying, so he was afraid of what King Achish might do to him.

## 1 Samuel 21:13

### in their hands

Here “hands” are a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: “in their presence” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

#### Translation Words - UST

- hand
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

#### ULT

**13** He changed his behavior before them and pretended to be insane in their hands; he made marks on the doors of the gate and let his saliva run down his beard.

#### UST

**13** So he pretended that he was insane. He started scratching on the gates of the city and allowing his saliva to run down his beard.

## 1 Samuel 21:14

### Why have you brought him to me?

Possible meanings are 1) Achish demands that his servants explain why they have brought David to him or 2) Achish is scolding them with a rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "You should have known not to bring him to me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### ULT

**14** Then Achish said to his servants, "Look, you see the man is mad. Why have you brought him to me?"

#### UST

**14** Then King Achish said to his men, "Look at this man! He is acting like an insane man! Why have you brought him to me?"

## 1 Samuel 21:15

### Do I lack madmen, so that you have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke. Alternate translation: "There are enough madmen here who waste my time. You should not have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Will this fellow really come into my house?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do not allow this fellow to enter my house." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Do I lack madmen, so that you have brought this fellow to behave like one in my presence? Will this fellow really come into my house?"

#### UST

<sup>15</sup> Have you brought him because I do not already have enough insane men here in my house?"

## 1 Samuel 22

### 1 Samuel 22 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

There are two stories in this chapter: David gathering a group of followers and Saul having all the priests and their families killed. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David assembles a force of unhappy people

David hides in the wilderness, and people in trouble come to him. Soon he has a force of 500 men. The prophet then tells him to leave the wilderness. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

##### Saul and the chief priest's family

Doeg tells Saul that Ahimelech the priest gave David food and a sword and prayed for him. Saul accuses the priests of encouraging David to rebel. This is a serious accusation because the priests are God's representatives and are rebelling against God's king if the accusation is true. Saul has the priests and all their families killed except those who escape to David. (See: [high priest](#), [chief priests](#))

## 1 Samuel 22:1

### cave

a hollow space under the ground, generally opening into the side of a hill, large enough for people to enter

### Adullam

This is the name of a town near the city of Gath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### heard it

heard that David had gone to hide in the cave

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> So David left there and escaped to the cave of Adullam. When his brothers and all his father's house heard it, they went down there to him.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> David and his men left Gath and went east to hide in a cave on a hill near the town of Adullam. Soon his older brothers and all his other relatives came and stayed with him there.

## 1 Samuel 22:2

### Everyone who was in distress...everyone who was discontented

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “Many people who were distressed...many people who were unhappy” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### captain

military officer who leads soldiers

### four hundred

“400” (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- chief

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- chief

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Everyone who was in distress, everyone who was in debt, and everyone who was discontented—they all gathered to him. David became captain over them. There were about four hundred men with him.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> Then other men came there. Some were men who had caused trouble, some were men who owed money, and some were men who were unhappy for any reason. They continued to come until there were four hundred men there, and David was their leader.

# 1 Samuel 22:3

## Then David went from there

"Then David went from the cave at Adullam"

## Mizpah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## go out with you

David wanted his parents to live with the king of Moab so that King Saul would not be able to harm them. Translators can express his basic meaning by using the ideas of "come to stay with you," "stay with you," or "live here with you," as in the UST.

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

## ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then David went from there to Mizpah in Moab. He said to the king of Moab, "Please let my father and my mother go out with you until I know what God will do for me." <sup>[1]</sup>

## UST

<sup>3</sup> Later they left there and went east to the city of Mizpah in the land of Moab. There David asked the king of Moab, "Please allow my father and mother to live here with you until I know what God is going to do for me."

## 1 Samuel 22:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Moab, Moabite
- David
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- Moab, Moabite
- David
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> He left them with the king of Moab. His father and mother stayed with him the whole time that David was in his stronghold.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The king gave him permission, so David's parents stayed with the king of Moab all the time that David and the men who were with him were hiding in that area.

## 1 Samuel 22:5

### go into the land of Judah

“go to your home land of Judah”

### Hereth

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Judea
- David
- David
- Gad
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Judea
- David
- David
- Gad
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Then the prophet Gad said to David, “Do not stay in your stronghold. Leave and go into the land of Judah.” So David left there and went into the forest of Hereth.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> One day the prophet Gad told David, “Leave your hideout here and return to Judah.” So David and his men went to the Hereth Forest in Judah.

## 1 Samuel 22:6

### David had been discovered, along with the men who were with him

Saul was most interested in David, so the writer mentions the other men separately. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone had discovered where David and all the men who were with him were hiding” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### the tamarisk tree

This is a type of tree. Alternate translation: “a large shade tree” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### in Ramah

Ramah is the name of a place in Gibeah. The name means “high place.” Possible meanings are 1) it refers here to the place called Ramah, or 2) it refers to any high place. Alternate translation: “on a hill”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Saul heard that David had been discovered, along with the men who were with him. Now Saul was sitting in Gibeah under the tamarisk tree in Ramah, with his spear in his hand, and all his servants were standing around him.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> One day, someone told Saul that David and his men had arrived in Judah. On that day, Saul was sitting underneath the tamarisk tree on a hill near the town of Gibeah. He was holding his spear and was surrounded by his army officers.

## 1 Samuel 22:7

### Will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards?

Saul uses a question to emphasize that David, who is from the tribe of Judah, does not desire to do this for the people of the tribe of Benjamin. Alternate translation: "The son of Jesse will not give you fields or vineyards." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Will the son of Jesse give

The time when he will give can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "When the son of Jesse becomes king, will he give" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### the son of Jesse

"David"

### Will he make you all captains of thousands and captains of hundreds

Saul uses a question to emphasize that David, who is from the tribe of Judah, does not desire to do this for the people of the tribe of Benjamin. Alternate translation: "He will not make you captains of thousands and captains of hundreds" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Will he make you all captains

You may need to make explicit when he will make them captains. Alternate translation: "When he becomes king, will he make you all captains" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### captains of thousands and captains of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these captains led. Alternate translation: "captains of 1,000 soldiers and captains of 100 soldiers" or 2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "captains of large military divisions and captains of smaller military divisions" See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 17:18](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Jesse
- vineyard
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- son

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Saul said to his servants who stood around him, "Listen now, people of Benjamin! Will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields and vineyards? Will he make you all captains of thousands and captains of hundreds,

### UST

<sup>7</sup> He shouted to them, "You men of the tribe of Benjamin, listen to me! Do you think that the son of Jesse will give all of you fields and vineyards if he becomes your king? Will he appoint all of you to become generals and captains in his army?

- son
- Jesse
- vineyard
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

## 1 Samuel 22:8

### Connecting Statement:

This continues what Saul said to his servants.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Jesse
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- son
- Jesse
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> in exchange for all of you plotting against me? None of you informs me when my son makes a covenant with the son of Jesse. None of you is sorry for me. None of you informs me that my son has incited my servant David against me. Today he hides and waits for me so he may attack me."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> Is that why you have all conspired against me, as he is doing today? Not one of you informed me that my own son had sworn friendship with him! Not one of you has had any pity on me or told me that my son has encouraged the son of Jesse to revolt against me, to hide out from me!"

## 1 Samuel 22:9

### Doeg the Edomite

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Nob...Ahimelech

This is a place name and the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Ahitub

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Then Doeg the Edomite, who stood by the servants of Saul, answered, "I saw the son of Jesse come to Nob, to Ahimelech son of Ahitub.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Doeg, a man from the Edom people group, was standing there with Saul's officers. He said to Saul, "When I was at Nob, I saw that son of Jesse talking to Ahimelech the priest.

## 1 Samuel 22:10

**He prayed to Yahweh that he might help him, and he gave him**

Ahitub prayed to Yahweh that Yahweh might help David, and Ahitub gave David

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- sword, swordsmen

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- sword, swordsmen

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> He prayed to Yahweh that he might help him, and he gave him provisions and the sword of Goliath the Philistine."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Ahimelech asked Yahweh what David should do. Then Ahimelech gave to David some food and the sword of Goliath, that Philistine giant."

## 1 Samuel 22:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

### ULT

**11** Then the king sent someone to summon the priest Ahimelech son of Ahitub and all his father's house, the priests who were in Nob. All of them came to the king.

### UST

**11** Then Saul summoned Ahimelech and all Ahimelech's relatives who were priests at Nob. So they all came to the king.

## 1 Samuel 22:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Saul said, "Listen now, son of Ahitub."  
He answered, "Here I am, my master."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Saul said to Ahimelech, "You son of Ahitub, listen to me!" Ahimelech answered, "Yes, sir!"

## 1 Samuel 22:13

### in that you have given

“by giving”

### rise up

“rebel” or “fight”

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Jesse
- bread
- confirm, confirmation, legal
- sword, swordsmen

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Jesse
- bread
- confirm, confirmation, legal
- sword, swordsmen

### ULT

**13** Saul said to him, “Why have you plotted against me, you and the son of Jesse, in that you have given him bread, and a sword, and have prayed to God that he might help him, so that he might rise up against me, to hide in secret, as he does today?”

### UST

**13** Saul said, “Why are you and Jesse’s son conspiring to get rid of me? You gave him some bread and a sword. You requested God to tell David what he should do. David has rebelled against me, and right now he is hiding somewhere, waiting to attack me.”

## 1 Samuel 22:14

### Who among all your servants is so faithful as David... house?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "None of your servants is as faithful as David...house." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### bodyguard

a person or group of people who protect someone

### is honored in your house

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom your family honors" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- temple
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- temple
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> Then Ahimelech answered the king and said, "Who among all your servants is so faithful as David, who is the king's son-in-law and is over your bodyguard, and is honored in your house?"

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Ahimelech replied, "I do not understand why you are saying that, because David, your son-in-law, the captain of your bodyguards, is very loyal to you. No one is more loyal to you than David! Everyone in your household respects him very much."

## 1 Samuel 22:15

### Is today the first time I have prayed to God to help him?

Ahimelech asks himself this question before Saul can ask it, then immediately answers it. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not the first time I have prayed to God to help David." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Far be it from me!

This idiom means "Absolutely not!" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Do not let the king impute anything to his servant or to all the house of my father. For your servant knows nothing

Ahimelech speaks of himself in the third person as the "servant." Ahimelech also refers to Saul in the third person as "the king." Ahimelech speaks this way to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: "Please, King Saul, do not consider me, your servant, or anyone in the house of my father to be guilty. For I know nothing" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### impute

to consider someone guilty

### to all the house of my father

Here "house" represents "family." Alternate translation: "to all my father's family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**15** Is today the first time I have prayed to God to help him? Far be it from me! Do not let the king impute anything to his servant or to all the house of my father. For your servant knows nothing of this whole matter."

### UST

**15** Furthermore, this was certainly not the first time that I requested God to say what he wanted David to do. And it is not right for you to accuse me or any of my relatives of trying to get rid of you, because I do not know anything about anyone wanting to do that."

## 1 Samuel 22:16

### your father's house

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house.  
Alternate translation: "your father's family" or "your father's descendants" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

#### Translation Words - UST

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

#### ULT

**16** The king replied, "You will surely die, Ahimelech, you and all your father's house."

#### UST

**16** The king then shouted, "Ahimelech, you and your all your relatives are going to be executed right now!"

## 1 Samuel 22:17

### the guard that stood around him

“the soldiers standing nearby to protect him”

### Turn and kill

Here “Turn” means to turn around or turn away from the king.  
Alternate translation: “Go and kill” or “Kill” (See: [Idiom](#))

### their hand also is with David

The word “hand” is a metonym for the work done with the hand.  
Alternate translation: “they also help David” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### would not put out their hand to kill

The word “hand” is a metonym for the work done with the hand.  
Alternate translation: “did not do anything to kill” or “refused to kill”  
(See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- David
- hand
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- David
- hand
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**17** The king said to the guard that stood around him, “Turn and kill the priests of Yahweh. Because their hand also is with David, and because they knew that he fled, but did not reveal it to me.” But the servants of the king would not put out their hand to kill the priests of Yahweh.

### UST

**17** Then he commanded his bodyguards, “Kill these priests of Yahweh, because they are allies of David, and they are conspiring with David against me! They knew that David was trying to run away from me, but they did not tell me!” But Saul’s bodyguards refused to kill Yahweh’s priests.

## 1 Samuel 22:18

### Turn and kill the priests...turned and attacked the priests

Here "Turn" means to turn around or turn away from the king. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 22:17](#). Alternate translation: "Go and kill the priests...went and attacked" or "Kill the priest...attacked the priests" (See: [Idiom](#))

### Doeg the Edomite turned and attacked...he killed

Possible meanings are 1) Doeg killed all the priests himself or 2) the word "Doeg" is a synecdoche for Doeg and the men who went with him. Alternate translation: "Doeg the Edomite and his men turned and attacked...they killed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Doeg the Edomite

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### eighty-five persons

"85 men" or "85 priests" (See: [Numbers](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

**18** Then the king said to Doeg, "Turn and kill the priests." So Doeg the Edomite turned and attacked the priests; he killed eighty-five persons who wore a linen ephod that day.

#### UST

**18** Then the king said to Doeg, "You kill them!" So Doeg, the man from the Edom people group, went out and struck them down with his sword. On that day he killed eighty-five men who were able to wear the sacred aprons because they were all God's priests.

## 1 Samuel 22:19

### He also put to the sword...he put to the sword

Possible meanings are 1) Doeg killed all the priests himself or 2) the word "Doeg" is a synecdoche for Doeg and the men who went with him. Alternate translation: "They also put to the sword...they put to the sword" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### put to the sword

"killed with the sword"

### Nob

Nob is the name of a city. Here the name "Nob" represents the people of that city. Alternate translation: "the people in the city of Nob" or "the people of Nob" (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

### ULT

**19** He also put to the sword Nob, the city of the priests; both men and women, children and infants, and oxen and donkeys and sheep he put to the sword.

### UST

**19** He also went and killed many people in Nob, the city where the priests lived. He killed men, women, children, babies, cattle, donkeys, and sheep there.

## 1 Samuel 22:20

### Abiathar

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- David

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- David

#### ULT

**20** But one of the sons of Ahimelech son of Ahitub, named Abiathar, escaped and fled after David.

#### UST

**20** But Abiathar, Ahimelech's son, escaped. He ran away and joined David and the men who were with him.

## 1 Samuel 22:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**21** Abiathar told David that Saul had killed Yahweh's priests.

### UST

**21** He told David that Saul had commanded Doeg to kill Yahweh's priests.

## 1 Samuel 22:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- pray, prayer
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- pray, prayer
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> David said to Abiathar, "I knew on that day, when Doeg the Edomite was there, that he would surely tell Saul. I am responsible for every death in your father's family!"

### UST

<sup>22</sup> Then David said to him, "That man from the Edom people group, Doeg, was there at Nob on the day that I was there. I knew that he would surely tell Saul what happened. So it is my fault that your father and all of his family have been killed."

## 1 Samuel 22:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- fear, afraid, dread
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- fear, afraid, dread
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for

### ULT

**23** Stay with me and do not be afraid. For the one who seeks your life seeks mine as well. You will be safe with me.”  
22:3 <sup>[1]</sup> Some ancient versions have *Please let my father and my mother stay with you*, and some modern versions also have this.

### UST

**23** You stay with me, and do not be afraid. The man who wants to kill you wants to kill me also, but you will be safe if you stay with me.”

## 1 Samuel 23

### 1 Samuel 23 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Saul chases David

Saul wants to kill David, but David trusts in God who keeps rescuing him. David rescues the town of Keilah from the Philistines who are stealing their harvest. Saul goes to Keilah to capture David, but David flees to the wilderness near Ziph. When David goes deeper into the wilderness, Saul follows but he has to leave to fight the Philistines who have invaded the land. Saul's pursuit of David shows that Saul cares more about killing his enemies than pleasing God. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Synecdoche

Jonathan strengthens David with a synecdoche: "For the hand of Saul my father will not find you." This helps to strengthen David's faith. (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [faith](#))

## 1 Samuel 23:1

### fighting against Keilah

“Keilah” is the name of a town. Here “Keilah” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “fighting against the people of Keilah” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### threshing

separating the grain or seeds, generally from a cereal plant or wheat by some mechanical means

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [thresh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [thresh](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> They told David, “Look, the Philistines are fighting against Keilah and are robbing the threshing floors.”

### UST

<sup>1</sup> One day someone told David, “You need to know that the Philistine army is attacking the town of Keilah and that they are stealing grain from where men are threshing it.”

## 1 Samuel 23:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- walk, walked

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- walk, walked

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> So David prayed to Yahweh for help and asked him, "Should I go and attack these Philistines?" Yahweh said to David, "Go and attack the Philistines and save Keilah."

### UST

<sup>2</sup> David asked Yahweh, "Should my men and I go to fight against those men from the Philistia people group?" Yahweh answered, "Yes, go. Attack them, and rescue the people of Keilah."

## 1 Samuel 23:3

### How much more then if we go to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "We will be even more fearful if we go to Keilah to fight the armies of the Philistines." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Judah
- Philistines
- David
- walk, walked

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Judah
- Philistines
- David
- walk, walked

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> David's men said to him, "See, we are afraid here in Judah. How much more then if we go to Keilah against the armies of the Philistines?"

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> But David's men said to him, "We are afraid that Saul will attack us here in Judah. We will be more afraid if we go to Keilah where the Philistine army is!"

## 1 Samuel 23:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Philistines
- David
- hand

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then David prayed to Yahweh for help yet again. Yahweh answered him, "Arise, go down to Keilah. For I will give you victory over the Philistines."

### UST

<sup>4</sup> So David asked Yahweh again if they should go to Keilah. Yahweh answered, "Yes, go down to Keilah. I will help you to defeat the Philistines."

## 1 Samuel 23:5

### went...fought...led...struck...saved

The writer pays the most attention to David, so these words are all singular, though David's men helped him do all these things. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> David and his men went to Keilah and fought with the Philistines. He led away their cattle and struck them with a great slaughter. So David saved the inhabitants of Keilah.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> So David and his men went to Keilah. They fought against the Philistines and captured many of their cattle. David and his men killed many of the Philistine men and rescued the people of Keilah.

## 1 Samuel 23:6

### Ahimelech

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> When Abiathar son of Ahimelech had fled to David at Keilah, he came down with an ephod in his hand.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Abiathar son of Ahimelech, fled to be with David at Keilah, and he brought a sacred apron with him to use to determine what God wanted him to do.

## 1 Samuel 23:7

### Saul was told

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation:  
 "Someone told Saul" or "They told Saul" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Saul was told that David had gone to Keilah. Saul said, "God has given him into my hand. For he is shut in because he has entered a city that has gates and bars."

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> Soon Saul found out that David was at Keilah. So he said, "That is good! God is enabling me to capture him! He has trapped himself in that town, because it has high walls with gates around it."

## 1 Samuel 23:8

### summoned

officially called. The reader should understand that Saul probably told his officials to gather the soldiers. He did not call with a loud voice to get them to come.

### all his forces

“all his soldiers”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Saul summoned all his forces for battle, to go down to Keilah, to besiege David and his men.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So Saul summoned his army, and they prepared to go down to Keilah to attack David and his men.

## 1 Samuel 23:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- priest, priesthood
- David
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- priest, priesthood
- David
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> David knew that Saul was plotting harm against him. He said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring the ephod here."

### UST

<sup>9</sup> But David found out that Saul was planning for his army to attack him. So he said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring here the sacred apron."

## 1 Samuel 23:10

### David said

“David asked” or “David prayed”

### your servant has indeed heard

David speaks as if he were someone else to show his respect for Yahweh. Alternate translation: “I have indeed heard” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### destroy the city

make the city so no one could live in it and kill all the people who live there

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Then David said, “Yahweh, the God of Israel, your servant has indeed heard that Saul seeks to come to Keilah, to destroy the city for my sake.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> So when Abiathar brought it, David prayed, “Yahweh, God of us Israelites, I have heard that Saul is planning to come here with his army and destroy Keilah because I am here.

## 1 Samuel 23:11

### as your servant has heard...tell your servant

David speaks as if he were someone else to show his respect for Yahweh. Alternate translation: "as I have heard...tell me" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### surrender me into his hand

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "give me over to Saul" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**11** Will the men of Keilah surrender me into his hand? Will Saul come down, as your servant has heard? Yahweh, the God of Israel, I beg you, please tell your servant." Yahweh said, "He will come down."

#### UST

**11** Will Saul come down here to Keilah, as people reported to me? Will the leaders of Keilah enable Saul to capture me? Yahweh, God of us Israelites, please tell me!" Yahweh answered, "Yes, Saul will come down."

## 1 Samuel 23:12

### David said

or "David asked" or "David prayed"

### surrender me and my men into the hand of Saul

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "give me and my men over to Saul" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Then David said, "Will the men of Keilah surrender me and my men into the hand of Saul?" Yahweh said, "They will surrender you."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> Then David asked, "Will the leaders of Keilah enable Saul's army to capture me and my men if we stay here?" By means of the stones in the sacred vest, Yahweh replied, "Yes, they will."

## 1 Samuel 23:13

### six hundred

“600” (See: [Numbers](#))

### It was told Saul

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “Someone told Saul” or “They told Saul” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### had escaped

“had run away from”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

**13** Then David and his men, who were about six hundred, got up and went away from Keilah, and they went from place to place. It was told Saul that David had escaped from Keilah, and he stopped the pursuit.

### UST

**13** So David and his six hundred men left Keilah. They continued to move from one place to another, wherever they thought that Saul would not find them. And when Saul found out that David had escaped from Keilah, he did not go there.

## 1 Samuel 23:14

### wilderness of Ziph

This is the name of a deserted area near the city of Ziph. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### did not give him into his hand

The word “hand” is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: “did not allow Saul to have power over David” or “did not allow Saul to do as he desired with David” or “did not allow Saul to capture David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### ULT

**14** David stayed in the strongholds in the wilderness, in the hill country in the wilderness of Ziph. Saul looked for him every day, but God did not give him into his hand.

### UST

**14** David and his man stayed in hiding places in the desert and in the hills of the wilderness of Ziph. Every day Saul sent men to search for David, but Yahweh did not allow them to capture David.

## 1 Samuel 23:15

### seek his life

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “try to kill him” (See: [Idiom](#))

### Horesh

This is the name of city near Ziph. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**15** David saw that Saul had come out to seek his life; now David was in the wilderness of Ziph at Horesh.

### UST

**15** While David and his men were at a place named Horesh in the wilderness of Ziph, he found out that Saul was coming there to kill him.

## 1 Samuel 23:16

### strengthened his hand in God

This is an idiom. AT “encouraged him to trust in God” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**16** Then Jonathan, Saul's son, got up and went to David at Horesh, and strengthened his hand in God.

#### UST

**16** But Saul's son Jonathan went to David at Horesh and encouraged him to continue to trust in God.

## 1 Samuel 23:17

### For the hand of Saul my father will not find you

Here “hand” is a metonym for Saul and his power. Alternate translation: “For Saul my father will not find you” or “For Saul my father will never be able to have power over you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**17** He said to him, “Do not be afraid. For the hand of Saul my father will not find you. You will be king over Israel, and I will be next to you. Saul my father also knows this.”

#### UST

**17** Jonathan told him, “Do not be afraid, because my father will not be able to harm you. Some day you will be the king of Israel, and I will be the second most important man in Israel. My father Saul also knows that.”

## 1 Samuel 23:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Yahweh
- David
- cut off
- walk, walked
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- Yahweh
- David
- cut off
- walk, walked
- house

### ULT

**18** They made a covenant before Yahweh. David remained at Horesh, and Jonathan went home.

### UST

**18** Then the two of them repeated their solemn promise that Yahweh had heard them make previously, that they would always be loyal to each other. Then Jonathan went home, but David stayed at Horesh.

## 1 Samuel 23:19

### Ziphites

This is the name of the people group from Ziph. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Is not David hiding among us in...Jeshimon?

This rhetorical question can be translated as an exclamation.  
Alternate translation: "David is hiding among us in...Jeshimon!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### the hill of Hakilah

This is the name of a hill in the wilderness of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as "the Judean Wilderness" or "the wasteland." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

#### ULT

**19** Then Ziphites came to Saul at Gibeah and said, "Is not David hiding among us in the strongholds at Horesh, on the hill of Hakilah, which is south of Jeshimon?"

#### UST

**19** Some people from Ziph went to Saul when he was at Gibeah, and they told him, "David and his men are hiding in our land! They are hiding in places at Horesh on the hill of Hakilah, south of a place named Jeshimon."

## 1 Samuel 23:20

### surrender him into the king's hand

The word “hand” is a metonym for power. The Ziphites speak to Saul as if he were another man to show him that they respect him.

Alternate translation: “give David to you so you can do whatever you desire with him” (See: [Pronouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

**20** Now come down, king! According to your desire, come down! Our part will be to surrender him into the king's hand.”

#### UST

**20** So, O king, come down there any time that you want to. It is our duty to capture him and put him in your hands.”

## 1 Samuel 23:21

### May you be blessed by Yahweh

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I hope that Yahweh blesses you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### you have had compassion on me

The abstract noun "compassion" can be translated with the adjective "kind." Saul says this because they had told him about David and they were willing to help Saul capture David. Alternate translation: "you have been kind to me" or "you have kindly told this to me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

**21** Saul said, "May you be blessed by Yahweh. For you have had compassion on me.

#### UST

**21** Saul replied, "I hope that Yahweh will bless you for telling that to me.

## 1 Samuel 23:22

### Learn and find out

These two words mean almost the same thing and can be translated as one phrase. Alternate translation: “Know for sure” (See: [Doublet](#))

### who has seen him

“who saw him”

### It is told to me

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “People tell me” or “I have heard” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**22** Go, make even more sure. Learn and find out where his hiding place is and who has seen him there. It is told to me that he is very crafty.

### UST

**22** Go back and find out more about him. Find out exactly where he is staying, and find out who has seen him there. People tell me that he is very clever, so we need to be clever also to be able to capture him.

## 1 Samuel 23:23

### among all the thousands of Judah

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “even if I have to arrest every man in Judah” or “among all the clans of Judah” (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [return](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [return](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**23** So look, and learn all of the places where he hides himself. Come back to me with sure information, and then I will return with you. If he is in the land, I will search him out among all the thousands of Judah.”

#### UST

**23** Find out all the places where he and his men hide. Then come back and tell me everything that you have found out. Then I will take my army and go there with you. If David is in any of the clans of Judah, we will search for him and find him!”

## 1 Samuel 23:24

### Then they rose up

They stopped what they had been doing. The reader should not believe that they were sitting or lying.

### Then they

“Then the Ziphites”

### Ziph

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:14](#).

### Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as “the Judean Wilderness” or “the wasteland.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### the wilderness of Maon

This is the name of the deserted area around the city of Maon in southern Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [desert, wilderness](#)

#### ULT

<sup>24</sup> Then they rose up and went to Ziph ahead of Saul. Now David and his men were in the wilderness of Maon, in the Arabah to the south of Jeshimon.

#### UST

<sup>24</sup> So those people went back to Ziph before Saul went there. At that time David and his men were in the desert of Maon, south of Jeshimon.

## 1 Samuel 23:25

### David was told of it

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told David that they were coming" or "David learned that they were coming" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### rocky hill

a hill covered with many rocks or boulders

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Saul and his men went to seek him. But David was told of it, so he went down to a rocky hill and lived in the wilderness of Maon. When Saul heard it, he chased David in the wilderness of Maon.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Saul and his soldiers went to search for David, but David heard about that. So he and his men went further south to a rocky hill in the wilderness of Maon. When Saul heard about that, he and his men followed David and his men to the wilderness of Maon.

## 1 Samuel 23:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- David

### ULT

<sup>26</sup> Saul went on one side of the mountain, and David and his men were going on the other side of the mountain. David hurried to get away from Saul. As Saul and his men were surrounding David and his men to take them,

### UST

<sup>26</sup> Saul and his soldiers were walking along one side of the hill, and David and his men were on the other side. David and his men were hurrying to escape from Saul's soldiers, because Saul and his soldiers were coming much closer.

## 1 Samuel 23:27

### Hurry and come

The words “hurry” and “come” can be combined into one idea.  
Alternate translation: “Come quickly” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> a messenger came to Saul and said,  
“Hurry and come, for the Philistines  
have made a raid against the land.”

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> But then a messenger came to Saul  
and said to him, “Come quickly! The  
Philistine army is attacking the people  
in our land!”

## 1 Samuel 23:28

### pursuing David

“chasing David, trying to catch him”

### Rock of Escape

a memorial or marker of David’s escape from Saul

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Philistines
- David
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Philistines
- David
- return

### ULT

**28** So Saul returned from pursuing David and went against the Philistines. Therefore that place was called the Rock of Escape.

### UST

**28** So Saul stopped pursuing David, and he and his soldiers went to fight against the Philistine army. That is the reason that people call that place the Rock of Escape.

## 1 Samuel 23:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> David went up from there and lived in the strongholds of Engedi.

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> David and his men also left that place and went to places to hide safely at Engedi.

## 1 Samuel 24

### 1 Samuel 24 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

Even though Saul tries again and again to kill David, David does not avenge himself on Saul because God had chosen Saul as king. This is meant to contrast with Saul's treatment of David, the future king. Saul represents the king the people wanted, a selfish man. David is the king God wanted, a godly man. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#) and [chosen](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#) and [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

## 1 Samuel 24:1

### he was told

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone told him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### wilderness of Engedi

Engedi is a place in Israel west of the Dead Sea where there is water with dry land all around it.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> When Saul returned from chasing the Philistines, he was told, "David is in the wilderness of Engedi."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> After Saul and his soldiers returned home after fighting against the Philistine army, someone reported to Saul that David and his men had gone into the wilderness near EnGedi.

## 1 Samuel 24:2

### three thousand

3,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

### chosen men

men whom he had chosen because of their superior military abilities

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then Saul took three thousand chosen men from all Israel and went to seek David and his men on the Rocks of the Wild Goats.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> When Saul heard that, he chose three thousand men from various areas in Israel, and they went to search for David and his men at the Rocks of Wild Goats.

## 1 Samuel 24:3

### sheep pens

“sheep corrals” or “sheep enclosures”

### cover his feet

This is a euphemism for “relieve himself” or “defecate” or “empty his intestines.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### cave

generally a natural hole under the ground, often with an opening in the side of a hill or cliff

### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> He came to sheep pens on the way, where there was a cave. Saul went inside to cover his feet. Now David and his men were sitting far back in the cave.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> At a place where the road was alongside some sheep pens, Saul left the road and entered a cave to relieve himself. He did not know that David and his men were hiding further inside that same cave!

## 1 Samuel 24:4

### David arose and quietly crept

The word “arose” is an idiom for taking action. Alternate translation: “David took action; he quietly crept” (See: [Idiom](#))

### crept

approached slowly, carefully or quietly

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- David
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- cut off

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- David
- David
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- cut off

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> David’s men said to him, “This is the day of which Yahweh spoke when he said to you, ‘I will give your enemy into your hand, for you to do with him as you wish.’” Then David arose and quietly crept forward and cut off the corner of Saul’s robe.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> David’s men saw Saul and whispered to David, “Today is the day that Yahweh spoke about when he said, ‘I will enable you to defeat your enemy.’ You can do to him whatever you want to!” So David crept toward the entrance of the cave and cut off with his knife a small piece of Saul’s robe.

## 1 Samuel 24:5

### David's heart afflicted him

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "David was sad because he had done something wrong" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [David](#)
- [cut off](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Afterward David's heart afflicted him because he had cut a corner off Saul's robe.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> And then he returned to his men. But David felt guilty for having cut off a piece of Saul's robe.

## 1 Samuel 24:6

### Yahweh's anointed

"the one whom Yahweh has chosen to lead his people" or "the one Yahweh has made king"

### to put out my hand against him

The hand is a metonym for the ability to cause harm. Alternate translation: "to harm him in any way" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> He said to his men, "May Yahweh forbid that I should do this thing to my master, Yahweh's anointed, to put out my hand against him, seeing he is Yahweh's anointed."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> He said to his men, "I should not have done that to the king! I hope that Yahweh will never allow me to attack the one whom God has appointed, because Yahweh is the one who chose him to be the king."

## 1 Samuel 24:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- confirm, confirmation, legal

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- confirm, confirmation, legal

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So David rebuked his men with these words, and did not permit them to attack Saul. Saul stood up, left the cave, and went on his way.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> By saying that, David restrained his men and did not allow them to kill Saul.

## 1 Samuel 24:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- prostrate, worship
- David
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- prostrate, worship
- David
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- declare, proclaim, announce
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Afterward, David also stood up, left the cave, and called out after Saul: "My master the king." When Saul looked behind him, David bowed with his face to the ground and showed him respect.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> After Saul left the cave and started to walk on the road again, David came out of the cave and shouted to Saul, "King Saul!" Saul turned around and looked, and David bowed down with his face touching the ground.

## 1 Samuel 24:9

### Why do you listen to the men who say, 'See, David is seeking your harm?'

This is a rhetorical question. It can be translated as a statement.  
Alternate translation: "You should not listen to the men who say, 'See, David is seeking to harm you.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- David
- seek, search, look for

#### Translation Words - UST

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- David
- seek, search, look for

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> David said to Saul, "Why do you listen to the men who say, 'See, David is seeking your harm?'"

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Then he said to Saul, "Why do you pay attention to people when they say 'David wants to harm you?'"

## 1 Samuel 24:10

### your eyes have seen

Here “your eyes” represent King Saul. Alternate translation: “you have seen with your own eyes” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### put you into my hand

The word “hand” is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: “put you where I could kill you or allow you to live” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

#### ULT

**10** Today your eyes have seen how Yahweh put you into my hand when we were in the cave. Some told me to kill you, but I spared you. I said, ‘I will not put out my hand against my master; for he is Yahweh’s anointed.’

#### UST

**10** Today you can see with your own eyes that what they say is not true. Yahweh put you in a place where I and my men could have killed you when you were in this cave. Some of my men told me that I should do that, but I did not allow them to do that. I said to them, ‘I will not harm my master, because he is the king whom Yahweh appointed.’

## 1 Samuel 24:11

### my father

Saul was not David's real father. David calls him "father" to show that he respects Saul.

### there is no evil or treason in my hand

David speaks as if evil and treason were physical objects he could hold in his hand. Here "hand" represents a person acting or doing something. Alternate translation: "I have done no evil deed against you, nor have I rebelled against you" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

**11** See, my father, see the corner of your robe in my hand. For the fact that I cut off the corner of your robe and did not kill you, you may know and see that there is no evil or treason in my hand, and I have not sinned against you, even though you hunt my life to take it.

#### UST

**11** Your majesty, look at this piece of your robe that is in my hand! I cut it from your robe, but I did not kill you. So now you should be able to understand that I am not planning to do anything evil to you. I have not done anything wrong to you, but you are searching for me to kill me.

## 1 Samuel 24:12

### my hand shall not be against you

The hand is a metonym for the ability to cause harm. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Samuel 24:6](#). Alternate translation: "I will not harm you in any way" (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

**12** May Yahweh judge between you and me, and may Yahweh avenge me against you, but my hand shall not be against you.

#### UST

**12** I desire that Yahweh may punish you for the wrong things that you have done to me. But I will never try to harm you.

## 1 Samuel 24:13

### ancients

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: “people who lived long ago” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**13** As the proverb of the ancients says, ‘Out of the wicked comes wickedness.’ But my hand will not be against you.

#### UST

**13** There is a proverb that has the words, ‘Evil things are done by evil people.’ But I am not evil, so I will not do evil things to you.

## 1 Samuel 24:14

### After whom has the king of Israel come out? After whom do you pursue?

These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. When David asks the questions, he knows that he will answer the questions himself. Alternate translation: "Let me tell you who the king of Israel has come out after. Let me tell you who it is that you are pursuing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### After a dead dog

The words "dead dog" are a metaphor for a powerless person. This sentence can be made complete. Alternate translation: "You are pursuing a person who is as powerless as a dead dog" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

### After a flea

The word "flea" is a metaphor for a person whom others do not consider important. Alternate translation: "You are pursuing a person who is as unimportant as a flea" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

**14** After whom has the king of Israel come out? After whom do you pursue? After a dead dog! After a flea!

#### UST

**14** You are the king of Israel. So why are you pursuing me? What is it you are chasing? I am nothing more than a dead dog or a flea.

## 1 Samuel 24:15

### see to it, and plead my cause

Possible meanings are 1) “do what is right, and plead my cause” or 2) “see that my cause is right and fight for me.”

### from your hand

The word “hand” is a metonym for power. Alternate translation: “so that you have no power over me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment
- hand
- rebuke

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment
- hand
- rebuke

### ULT

**15** May Yahweh be judge and give judgment between you and me, and see to it, and plead my cause and permit me to escape from your hand.”

### UST

**15** I hope that Yahweh will decide who is right in this matter, you or I? And when he decides in my favor, I hope he will defend me and save me from your power.”

## 1 Samuel 24:16

### my son David

Saul speaks as if David were his son to show David that he loves him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### lifted up his voice and wept

The writer writes as if a voice were something a person could lift up with his hands. Alternate translation: “wept loudly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- David

### ULT

**16** When David had finished speaking these words to Saul, Saul said, “Is this your voice, my son David?” Saul lifted up his voice and wept.

### UST

**16** When David finished saying that to Saul, Saul called out to him and asked, “My son David, is that your voice that I am hearing?” Then he cried loudly.

## 1 Samuel 24:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David

### ULT

**17** He said to David, "You are more righteous than I am. For you have repaid me good, where I have repaid you evil.

### UST

**17** He said, "You are a better man than I am. You have done something very good to me when I tried to do something very bad to you.

## 1 Samuel 24:18

### you have done good to me

Saul acknowledges that David did show that he supported King Saul and was loyal to him by not killing him.

### for you did not kill me when Yahweh had put me at your mercy

Saul acknowledges that David chose to show mercy and demonstrated his loyalty to King Saul as Yahweh's anointed.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### ULT

**18** You have declared today how you have done good to me, for you did not kill me when Yahweh had put me at your mercy.

#### UST

**18** When Yahweh put me in a place in that cave where you could have easily killed me, you did not do that.

## 1 Samuel 24:19

### For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely?

A rhetorical question with the answer included in the question.  
Alternate translation: "For if a man finds his enemy, he will not let him go safely." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely?

Where Saul had believed David was his enemy, he learns that even though David will be king, David will not take over the throne from Saul by force, but will wait for Yahweh's appointed time.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- adversary, enemy

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- adversary, enemy

#### ULT

**19** For if a man finds his enemy, will he let him go safely? May Yahweh reward you with good for what you have done to me today.

#### UST

**19** No one lets his enemy go free after he finds him. But you have done this. I hope that Yahweh will reward you for your acting kindly toward me today.

## 1 Samuel 24:20

### the kingdom of Israel will be established in your hand

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) David will cause the kingdom of Israel to prosper through his power as king. Alternate translation: “the kingdom of Israel will prosper as you rule the Israelite people” or 2) Yahweh will cause David to have complete control over the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “you will have complete rule over the kingdom of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### in your hand

The word “hand” is a metonym that represents power or control. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

**20** Now, I know that you will surely be king and that the kingdom of Israel will be established in your hand.

### UST

**20** I know that some day you will surely become the king, and that your kingdom will prosper as you rule the Israelite people.

## 1 Samuel 24:21

### you will not cut off my descendants after me

“you will not kill my sons and their families.” It was common for a new king who was not from the previous family line to kill off all the children of the former king to prevent any of them from challenging him for the throne.

### you will not destroy my name out of my father’s house

It is important for each family in Israel to have descendants from generation to generation carrying on the family name and land inheritance. Alternate translation: “you will not destroy my family and descendants” or “you will allow my family to live” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- name
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- cut off
- seed, semen
- house
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- name
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- cut off
- seed, semen
- house
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### ULT

**21** Swear to me by Yahweh that you will not cut off my descendants after me, and that you will not destroy my name out of my father’s house.”

### UST

**21** Now while Yahweh is listening, solemnly me that you will not kill my family and get rid of all my descendants.”

## 1 Samuel 24:22

### David and his men

“David and his army”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- house
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- house
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> So David made an oath to Saul. Then Saul went home, but David and his men went up to the stronghold.

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> David solemnly promised Saul that he would not harm Saul's family. Then Saul went back home, and David and his men went back up into the place where they had been hiding.

## **1 Samuel 25**

### **1 Samuel 25 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **Revenge**

When David decides to kill all of the men in Nabal's household, Abigail convinces David not to avenge himself but to leave revenge to God. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#))

## 1 Samuel 25:1

### All Israel gathered together and mourned for him

This is likely a generalization. A large number of the people of Israel were probably there, but some were probably unable to attend. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

### gathered together

“met together”

### buried him in his house at Ramah

Possible meanings are that they buried Samuel 1) in his home town of Ramah or 2) on his family's land in Ramah but not physically in the house or 3) in his house in Ramah.

### David rose and went down

“David and his men moved on and they went down”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple](#)
- [David](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [temple](#)
- [David](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now Samuel died. All Israel gathered together and mourned for him, and they buried him in his house at Ramah. Then David rose and went down to the wilderness of Paran.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Soon after that, Samuel died, and all the Israelite people gathered and mourned for him. They buried his body outside his home in Ramah. Then David and his men moved to the wilderness of Paran.

## 1 Samuel 25:2

**There was a man in Maon, whose possessions were in Carmel. The man was very wealthy.**

Some translators may need to put the ideas in these verses in a different order. Alternate translation: "There was a very wealthy man in Maon whose possessions were in Carmel."

### Maon

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Carmel

This is the name of a town. This is different from Mount Carmel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### three thousand

3,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

### one thousand

1,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

### shearing his sheep

"shaving the wool off his sheep"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> There was a man in Maon, whose possessions were in Carmel. The man was very wealthy. He had three thousand sheep and one thousand goats. He was shearing his sheep in Carmel.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> In the town of Maon there was a very rich man. This man kept his property and livestock in a town nearby that is called Carmel. He had much property and livestock and he owned three thousand sheep and one thousand goats. Carmel is where he sheared his sheep.

## 1 Samuel 25:3

**The man's name was Nabal, and the name of his wife was Abigail. The woman was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. But the man was harsh and evil in his dealings. He was a descendant of the house of Caleb.**

This verse give some background information about the man Nabal and his character. Some translators may need to put the ideas in this verse in a different order. Alternate translation: "Now the man was a descendant of the house of Caleb. His name was Nabal, and the name of his wife was Abigail. She was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. But the man was harsh and evil in his dealings."

### Nabal

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Abigail

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### He was a descendant of the house of Caleb

Here "house" represents family. Alternate translation: "He was a descendant of the family of Caleb" or "He was a descendant of Caleb" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- understand, understanding, thinking

### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- understand, understanding, thinking

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The man's name was Nabal, and the name of his wife was Abigail. The woman was intelligent and beautiful in appearance. But the man was harsh and evil in his dealings. He was a descendant of the house of Caleb.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> His name was Nabal; he was a descendant of Caleb. His wife Abigail was a wise and beautiful woman, but Nabal was very cruel and treated people very unkindly.

## 1 Samuel 25:4

### shearing his sheep

“shaving the wool off his sheep”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- desert, wilderness
- flock, herd

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- desert, wilderness
- flock, herd

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> David heard in the wilderness that Nabal was shearing his sheep.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> One day while David and his men were in the desert, someone told him that Nabal was cutting the wool from his sheep.

## 1 Samuel 25:5

### greet him in my name

“greet him as I would greet him if I were there”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- name
- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- name
- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> So David sent ten young men. David said to the young men, “Go up to Carmel, go to Nabal, and greet him in my name.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> So David told ten of his men, “Go to Nabal at Carmel and greet him for me.

## 1 Samuel 25:6

### Live in prosperity

"I desire that you may live in prosperity." The abstract noun "prosperity" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "I desire that you possess many good things as long as you live" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### Peace to you and peace to your house, and peace be to all that you have

"I desire that peace may come to you, your household and your possessions"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)
- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)
- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)
- [house](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)
- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)
- [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [peacemakers](#)
- [house](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> You will say to him, 'Live in prosperity. Peace to you and peace to your house, and peace be to all that you have.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Then tell him this message from me: 'I wish that things may go well for you and your family and for everything that you possess.

## 1 Samuel 25:7

### you have shearers

“your shearers are working” or “your shearers have sheep to shear.” David wants his men to speak so that Nabal understands that his sheep were well because David’s men helped guard them.

### we did them no harm, and they missed nothing

David is pointing out how he and his men offered protection to Nabal’s servants and flocks. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “we kept them and all their property from harm” (See: [Litotes](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [shame](#), [ashamed](#), [disgrace](#), [humiliate](#), [reproach](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [shame](#), [ashamed](#), [disgrace](#), [humiliate](#), [reproach](#)

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> I hear that you have shearers. Your shepherds have been with us, and we did them no harm, and they missed nothing the whole time they were in Carmel.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> I heard people say that you are cutting the wool from your sheep. Previously, when your shepherds were among us, we did not harm them. All the time that your shepherds were among us at Camel, we did not steal any sheep from them.

## 1 Samuel 25:8

### let my young men find favor in your eyes

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “may you be pleased with my young men” or “may you consider my young men favorably” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### to your servants

David was expressing respect toward Nabal by calling his men Nabal’s servants.

### your son David

David spoke as if he were Nabal’s son to show that he respected Nabal, who was an older man.

### Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Ask your young men, and they will tell you. Now let my young men find favor in your eyes, for we have come on a festive day. Please give whatever you have on hand to your servants and to your son David.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> You can ask your servants if this is true, and they will tell you that it is true. We have come here at a time when you are celebrating, so I ask you to please be kind to us and give these men whatever extra food you have, for me, David, and my men to eat.”

## 1 Samuel 25:9

### David's young men

"David's army"

**said all of this to Nabal on David's behalf**

"gave Nabal David's complete message"

### Translation Words - ULT

- name
- David
- David
- rest, rested, restless
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- name
- David
- David
- rest, rested, restless
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> When David's young men arrived, they said all of this to Nabal on David's behalf and then waited.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> When David's men arrived where Nabal was, they gave David's message to him, and they waited for him to reply. But Nabal spoke harshly to them.

## 1 Samuel 25:10

### Who is David, and who is the son of Jesse?

Nabal used questions to emphasize that he had no reason to help David. These two rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: “This David son of Jesse you speak of—I do not know him.” or “I do not know who this David is, so I will not do as he says. I do not know who Jesse is, so I do not care what happens to his son.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Parallelism](#))

### breaking away from

“running away from” or “rebellious against”

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- David
- Jesse
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- David
- Jesse
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Nabal answered David's servants, “Who is David, and who is the son of Jesse? There are many servants these days who are breaking away from their masters.

### UST

<sup>10</sup> He said to them, “Who does this man, this son of Jesse, think that he is? There are many slaves who are running away from their masters at the present time, and it seems to me that he is just one of them.

## 1 Samuel 25:11

### my bread

Here “bread” is an idiom for any kind of food. (See: [Idiom](#))

### men who come from I do not know where

“men when I do not know where they have come from” or “men whom I do not know”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bread](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

### ULT

**11** Should I take my bread and my water and my meat that I have killed for my shearers, and give it to men who come from I do not know where?”

### UST

**11** I give bread and water to the men who are cutting the wool from my sheep, and I give them meat from animals that I have slaughtered. Why should I take some of those things and give them to a group of outlaws?”

## 1 Samuel 25:12

### that was said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that Nabal had said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**12** So David's young men turned away and came back, and told him everything that was said.

### UST

**12** Then David's men returned and told him what Nabal had said.

## 1 Samuel 25:13

### said to his men

"said to his army"

### "Every man strap on his sword." So every man strapped on his sword. David also strapped on his sword

If swords are not known in your language, you can treat "strap on his sword" as a metonym meaning to prepare for war. Alternate translation: "'Every man, prepare for war.' And every man prepared for war. David also prepared for war" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### four hundred

400 (See: [Numbers](#))

### two hundred

200 (See: [Numbers](#))

### stayed by the baggage

They remained at their base camp to prevent other raiders from stealing their possessions.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

### ULT

**13** David said to his men, "Every man strap on his sword." So every man strapped on his sword. David also strapped on his sword. About four hundred men followed after David, and two hundred stayed by the baggage.

### UST

**13** When David heard this, he told his men, "We are going to kill Nabal; fasten your swords!" So he fastened on his sword, and about four hundred men fastened their swords and went with him. There were two hundred of his men who stayed with their supplies.

## 1 Samuel 25:14

### But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife

You may need to make explicit what the young man did before he spoke with Abigail. Alternate translation: "One of Nabal's servants found out what David and his men were planning to do, so he went to Nabal's wife Abigail" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- David
- desert, wilderness
- messenger
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- David
- desert, wilderness
- messenger
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**14** But one of the young men told Abigail, Nabal's wife; he said, "David sent messengers out of the wilderness to greet our master, and he insulted them.

#### UST

**14** One of Nabal's servants found out what David and his men were planning to do, so he went to Nabal's wife Abigail and said to her, "David sent some messengers from the desert to greet our master Nabal, but Nabal only yelled at them.

## 1 Samuel 25:15

### We were not harmed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Nobody harmed us" or "We were safe" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### did not miss anything as long as we went with them

"we did not lose anything when we were with them." David's men kept wild animals and other people from stealing Nabal's flocks.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)
- [shame](#), [ashamed](#), [disgrace](#), [humiliate](#), [reproach](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [good](#), [right](#), [pleasant](#), [pleasing](#), [better](#), [best](#)
- [shame](#), [ashamed](#), [disgrace](#), [humiliate](#), [reproach](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)

### ULT

**15** Yet the men were very good to us. We were not harmed and did not miss anything as long as we went with them when we were in the fields.

### UST

**15** All the time that we were in the fields close to them, those men of David were very kind to us. They did not harm us. They did not steal anything from us.

## 1 Samuel 25:16

### They were a wall

David's men were like a wall around a city that protects the people in the city from their enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [ewe](#), [ram](#), [sheep](#), [sheepfold](#), [sheepshearers](#), [sheepskins](#)

#### ULT

**16** They were a wall to us both day and night, all the while we were with them tending the sheep.

#### UST

**16** They protected us during the daytime and during the night. They were like a wall around us to protect us while we were taking care of our sheep.

## 1 Samuel 25:17

### evil is plotted against our master

The speaker is careful not to name the one plotting the evil. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone is plotting to do evil things to our master” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### our master

The speaker speaks of David as if David were another person to show that he respects David. Alternate translation: “you” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- consume, devour
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- consume, devour
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

**17** Therefore know this and consider what you will do, for evil is plotted against our master, and against his whole house. He is such a worthless fellow that one cannot reason with him.”

### UST

**17** So now you should think about it and decide what you can do. If you do not do something, terrible things will happen to our master and to all his family. Nabal is an extremely wicked man, so he will not listen to anyone who tries to tell him what to do.”

## 1 Samuel 25:18

### two hundred

200 (See: [Numbers](#))

### loaves

A loaf is like a cake. You may need to make explicit what the loaves consisted of. Alternate translation: "loaves of bread" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### already prepared

"that someone had already cooked" or "ready for someone to cook"

### measures

This is a generic term as none is given. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

### parched grain

"grain that someone had cooked"

### clusters of raisins

"cakes of raisins" or "masses of raisins"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [donkey](#), [mule](#)
- [bread](#)
- [flock](#), [herd](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [donkey](#), [mule](#)
- [bread](#)
- [flock](#), [herd](#)
- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

### ULT

**18** Then Abigail hurried and took two hundred loaves, two bottles of wine, five sheep already prepared, five measures of parched grain, one hundred clusters of raisins, and two hundred cakes of figs, and laid them on donkeys.

### UST

**18** When Abigail heard that, she very quickly gathered two hundred loaves of bread, and also got two leather bags full of wine, the meat from five sheep, a bushel of roasted grain, a hundred packs of raisins, and two hundred packs of dried figs. She put all those things on donkeys.

## 1 Samuel 25:19

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>19</sup> She said to her young men, "Go on before me, and I will come after you." But she did not tell her husband Nabal.

#### UST

<sup>19</sup> Then she told her servants, "Go ahead of me. I will follow you." But she did not tell her husband what she was going to do.

## 1 Samuel 25:20

### David and his men

“David and his army”

### by the cover of the mountain

Possible meanings are 1) into a low, narrow stream bed or 2) to where the men were hiding.

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- donkey, mule

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- donkey, mule

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> As she rode on her donkey and came down by the cover of the mountain, David and his men came down toward her, and she met them.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Abigail rode on her donkey and came down to the place in the hills where David and his men were staying. Suddenly David and his men met her.

## 1 Samuel 25:21

The writer gives background information before he continues with the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Now David had said, “Surely...for good.

The reader needs to understand that David had said these things before he said, “Every man strap on his sword” in [1 Samuel 25:13](#).

### Now David

The word “Now” shows that the writer has stopped writing about Abigail and started writing about David.

### nothing was missed of all that belonged to him

This can be stated positively and in active form. Alternate translation: “he still has everything that was his” (See: [Litotes](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [return](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [return](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

### ULT

<sup>21</sup> Now David had said, “Surely in vain have I guarded all that this man has in the wilderness, so that nothing was missed of all that belonged to him, and he has returned me evil for good.

### UST

<sup>21</sup> David had been saying to his men, “It was useless for us to protect that man and all his possessions here in this wilderness. We did not steal anything that belonged to him, but he has acted badly toward me in return for our good actions toward him.

## 1 Samuel 25:22

### May God do so to me...belong to him

The reader needs to understand that David had said these things before he said, "Every man strap on his sword" in [1 Samuel 25:13](#).

### May God do so to me, David

The Hebrew text has "May God strike the enemies of David," and some versions follow this. However, the reading of the ULT follows the main Greek tradition of the Old Testament, as some other modern versions do.

### all who belong

"all the people who belong to him" or "those in his family"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>22</sup> May God do so to me, David, and more also, if by the morning I leave so much as one male of all who belong to him."

#### UST

<sup>22</sup> I hope that God will strike me and kill me if he or even one male person belonging to him is still alive tomorrow morning!"

## 1 Samuel 25:23

The writer has finished giving background information, so he continues the story. (See: [Background Information](#))

### lay before David facedown and bowed herself to the ground

Abigail was being humble and showing that she would obey David because he was a powerful leader.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

#### ULT

<sup>23</sup> When Abigail saw David, she hurried and got down from her donkey and lay before David facedown and bowed herself to the ground.

#### UST

<sup>23</sup> When Abigail saw David, she quickly got down from her donkey and bowed before him, with her face touching the ground.

## 1 Samuel 25:24

### listen to

"hear"

### my master...your servant...words of your servant

"David...me...my words." Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two other people, to show that she respects David. (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

**24** She lay at his feet and said, "On me alone, my master, be the guilt. Please let your servant speak to you, and listen to the words of your servant.

### UST

**24** Then she prostrated herself at David's feet and said to him, "Sir, I deserve to be punished for what my husband has done. Please listen to what I say to you.

## 1 Samuel 25:25

### Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to advise David not to take revenge.

### Let not my master regard...I your servant...the young men of my master

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are other people to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "Do not regard...I...your young men" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### But I...did not see...whom you sent

You may need to make explicit what Abigail would have done. Alternate translation: "But if I...had seen...whom you sent, I would have given them food" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- name
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- heart
- name
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> Let not my master regard this worthless fellow, Nabal, for as his name is, so is he. Nabal is his name, and folly is with him. But I your servant did not see the young men of my master, whom you sent.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> Please do not pay attention to what this worthless man Nabal has said. His name means 'fool,' and he surely is a foolish man. But I, who am willing to be your servant, did not see the messengers whom you sent to him.

## 1 Samuel 25:26

### Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to advise David not to take revenge.

### my master...my master

Abigail speaks of David as if he is another person to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "David...you" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### bloodshed

murder

### avenging yourself with your own hand

The hand is a metonym for what a person does with the hand. Abigail assumes that David should allow Yahweh to take vengeance for him. Alternate translation: "taking vengeance yourself instead of letting Yahweh do it" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### let your enemies...be like Nabal

Abigail speaks as if Yahweh has already punished Nabal. Alternate translation: "I hope that Yahweh will punish your enemies...as he will punish Nabal" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Predictive Past](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

**26** Now then, my master, as Yahweh lives, and as you live, since Yahweh has restrained you from bloodshed, and from avenging yourself with your own hand, now let your enemies, and those who seek to do evil to my master, be like Nabal.

### UST

**26** Yahweh has prevented you from getting revenge on anyone and killing anyone. I hope that just as surely as Yahweh lives and as surely as you live, your enemies will be cursed like Nabal is.

## 1 Samuel 25:27

### Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to tell David not to be angry.

### let this present that your servant has brought to my master be given to the young men

Abigail uses the passive to show her respect for David. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “please give this present, which your servant has brought to my master, to the young men” or “please let my master give this present, which your servant has brought to my master, to the young men” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### this present

“these gifts.” The “present” was actually many different things.

### your servant has...my master...my master

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two other people to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: “I have...you...you” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> Now let this present that your servant has brought to my master be given to the young men who follow my master.

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> I have brought a gift for you and for the men who are with you.

## 1 Samuel 25:28

### Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to reason with David.

### the trespass of your servant...my master...my master is

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two other people, to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "my trespass...you...you are" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Yahweh will certainly make my master a sure house

Here "house" is an idiom used for "descendants." Alternate translation: "Yahweh will ensure that my master always has a descendant who serves as king" (See: [Idiom](#))

### fighting the battles of Yahweh

"fighting against Yahweh's enemies"

### evil will not be found in you

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one will ever see you do any evil thing" or "you will never do anything evil" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

### ULT

**28** Please forgive the trespass of your servant, for Yahweh will certainly make my master a sure house, because my master is fighting the battles of Yahweh; and evil will not be found in you so long as you live.

### UST

**28** Please forgive me if I have done anything wrong to you. Yahweh will surely reward you by allowing many of your descendants to become kings of Israel, because you are fighting the battles that Yahweh wants you to fight. And I know that throughout all your life you have not done anything wrong.

## 1 Samuel 25:29

### Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to reason with David.

### pursue

chase and try to catch

### the life of my master will be bound in the bundle of the living by Yahweh your God

Abigail speaks of David's life as if it were a long and thin object that a person could put with other long and thin objects and then tie together into a bundle with a rope. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh your God will bind the life of my master in the bundle of the living" or "Yahweh your God will keep you alive with those who are alive" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

### the life of my master

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two different people to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: "your life" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### he will sling away the lives of your enemies, as from the pocket of a sling

Abigail speaks of David's enemies' lives as if they were small objects like a stone that could be put in a sling and shot a long distance. Alternate translation: "he will kill your enemies as easily as a man slings a stone a long distance" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### a sling

a piece of animal skin with long cords at both ends in which a person can put a stone or other small, hard object and throw it a long distance

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- plea, plead, beg, implore

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive

### ULT

<sup>29</sup> Though men rise up to pursue you to take your life, yet the life of my master will be bound in the bundle of the living by Yahweh your God; and he will sling away the lives of your enemies, as from the pocket of a sling.

### UST

<sup>29</sup> Even when those who are trying to kill you pursue you, you are safe because Yahweh your God takes care of you. You will be protected like a bundle that is safely tied up. But your enemies will disappear like stones that are hurled from a sling.

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- plea, plead, beg, implore

## 1 Samuel 25:30

### Connecting Statement:

Abigail continues to reason with David.

### my master

Abigail speaks of David as if he is another person, to show that she respects David. Alternate translation: “you” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

<sup>30</sup> Yahweh will have done for my master everything he promised you, and has appointed you leader over Israel.

### UST

<sup>30</sup> Yahweh has promised to do good things for you, and he will do what he has promised. And he will cause you to become the ruler of the Israelite people.

## 1 Samuel 25:31

### Connecting Statement:

Abigail finishes reasoning with David.

**This will not be a staggering burden for you—that you have poured out innocent blood, or because my master attempted to rescue himself**

Abigail is stating that if David chooses not to take revenge he will have a clear conscience when Yahweh makes him king of Israel. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “You will always be glad you acted as you did—that you have not poured out innocent blood, or because my master did not attempt to rescue himself” (See: [Litotes](#))

**my master...himself...my master...your servant**

Abigail speaks of herself and David as if they are two other people, to show that she respects David. “you...yourself...you...me” (See: [Pronouns](#))

**when Yahweh will do good for my master**

That is, when Yahweh actually makes him king after Saul’s reign is over.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [heart](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [heart](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**31** This will not be a staggering burden for you—that you have poured out innocent blood, or because my master attempted to rescue himself. For when Yahweh will do good for my master, remember your servant.”

### UST

**31** When that happens, do not kill any people in his household. Then you will not think that you deserve to be punished for having punished and killed innocent people. And when Yahweh enables you to become king, please do not forget to be kind to me.”

## 1 Samuel 25:32

### General Information:

David accepts Abigail's counsel and gifts.

### May Yahweh...be blessed, he who

This can be translated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) "I praise Yahweh...who" or 2) "May all people praise Yahweh...who." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>32</sup> David said to Abigail, "May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be blessed, he who sent you to meet me today.

### UST

<sup>32</sup> David replied to Abigail, "I praise Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, because he sent you to talk with me.

## 1 Samuel 25:33

### Your wisdom is blessed and you are blessed, because

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I thank Yahweh because he has blessed you by making you wise and because" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### bloodshed

murder. The same word appears in [1 Samuel 25:26](#).

### with my own hand

The word "hand" here is a metonym for the action taken by the hand. Alternate translation: "by my own actions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

### ULT

**33** Your wisdom is blessed and you are blessed, because you have kept me today from bloodshed and from avenging myself with my own hand!

### UST

**33** I hope today God may help you because you have wisely kept me from killing people today, and from paying back evil for evil.

## 1 Samuel 25:34

### General Information:

David accepts Abigail's gifts and agrees to do as she has advised him.

**there would certainly have not been left to Nabal so much as one male baby**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "I would not have left to Nabal even one male baby" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

### ULT

**34** For in truth, as Yahweh, the God of Israel, lives, he who has kept me from hurting you, unless you had hurried to come meet me, there would certainly have not been left to Nabal so much as one male baby by morning."

### UST

**34** Just as surely as Yahweh the God whom we Israelites worship is alive, he has prevented me from harming you. If you had not come quickly to talk to me, neither Nabal nor even one of Nabal's men or boys would be still alive tomorrow morning."

## 1 Samuel 25:35

### received from her hand

This is an idiom. Abigail did not unload all gifts from the donkeys herself. Alternate translation: “accepted all the gifts that she had brought” (See: [Idiom](#))

### have listened to your voice

The word “voice” is a metonym for the message the person speaks and a synecdoche for the person who speaks. Alternate translation: “have listened to what you have told me” or “will do as you have advised me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [voice](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [voice](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**35** So David received from her hand what she had brought him; he said to her, “Go up in peace to your house; see, I have listened to your voice and have accepted you.”

### UST

**35** Then David accepted the gifts that Abigail had brought to him. He said to her, “I hope that things may go well for you. I have heard what you said, and I will do what you have requested.”

## 1 Samuel 25:36

### morning light

dawn

### Nabal's heart was merry within him

Nabal was very happy

#### Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- temple
- feast, feasting
- drunk, drunkard
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- temple
- feast, feasting
- drunk, drunkard
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>36</sup> Abigail went back to Nabal; behold, he was holding a feast in his house, like the feast of a king; and Nabal's heart was merry within him, for he was very drunk. So she told him nothing at all until the morning light.

#### UST

<sup>36</sup> When Abigail returned to Nabal, he was in his house, having a big celebration like kings have. He was very drunk and feeling very happy. So Abigail did not say anything to him that night about her meeting with David.

## 1 Samuel 25:37

### General Information:

Yahweh's judgment on Nabal

### the wine had gone out of Nabal

Nabal was no longer drunk and so was no longer feeling happy.

### his heart died within him

Nabal was unable to move because was so afraid that he was no longer physically healthy, probably because he had suffered a stroke.

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- wine, wineskin, new wine

### Translation Words - UST

- heart
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- wine, wineskin, new wine

### ULT

<sup>37</sup> It came about in the morning, when the wine had gone out of Nabal, that his wife told him these things; his heart died within him, and he became like a stone.

### UST

<sup>37</sup> The next morning, when he was no longer drunk, she told him everything that had happened when she talked with David. Immediately, he had a stroke and could move no longer.

## 1 Samuel 25:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

<sup>38</sup> It came about ten days later that Yahweh attacked Nabal so that he died.

### UST

<sup>38</sup> About ten days later Yahweh struck him again, and he died.

## 1 Samuel 25:39

### General Information:

David offers to protect Abigail by marrying her.

### May Yahweh be blessed

This can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:32](#). Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "I praise Yahweh" or 2) Alternate translation: "May all people praise Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### has taken up the cause of my insult from the hand of Nabal

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "has defended me after Nabal insulted me" (See: [Idiom](#))

### has taken up the cause of my insult

The abstract nouns "cause" and "insult" can be translated as verbs. Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "has shown that what I was doing was right by punishing Nabal for insulting me" or 2) Alternate translation: "has acted, when Nabal insulted me, as if Nabal had insulted him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### has kept back his servant from evil

David speaks as if he were another person to show his respect for Yahweh. Alternate translation: "has kept me back from doing evil deeds" (See: [Pronouns](#))

### has turned Nabal's evil action back on his own head

The abstract noun "action" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "has done to Nabal what Nabal planned to do to me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### on his own head

The head is a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: "on him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### sent and spoke to Abigail, to take her to himself as wife

You may make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "sent men to speak to Abigail and tell her that David wanted to take her to be his wife" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>39</sup> When David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, "May Yahweh be blessed, who has taken up the cause of my insult from the hand of Nabal and has kept back his servant from evil. He has turned Nabal's evil action back on his own head." Then David sent and spoke to Abigail, to take her to himself as wife.

### UST

<sup>39</sup> After David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, "I praise Yahweh! Nabal insulted me, but Yahweh has shown that I have been right. He has prevented me from doing anything wrong. And he has punished Nabal for the wrong that he did." Then David sent messengers to Abigail, to ask her if she would become his wife.

- David
- hand
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- head
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Translation Words - UST

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- David
- hand
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- head
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

## 1 Samuel 25:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>40</sup> When David's servants had come to Abigail at Carmel, they spoke to her and said, "David has sent us to you to take you to him as his wife."

### UST

<sup>40</sup> His servants went to Carmel and said to Abigail, "David sent us to take you to become his wife."

## 1 Samuel 25:41

### She arose, bowed herself

Abigail responded by bowing. The reader should understand that she was probably already standing when the men were talking to her in [1 Samuel 25:40](#), and so the word “arose” is a metonym for deciding to bow down. (See: [Metonymy](#))

### See, your female servant is a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my master

Abigail speaks as if she were another person to show that she is humble. She shows that she desires to be David’s new wife by offering to wash the feet of David’s servants. Alternate translation: “See, I will serve you, the servants of my master David, by washing your feet” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prostrate, worship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prostrate, worship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**41** She arose, bowed herself with her face to the ground, and said, “See, your female servant is a servant to wash the feet of the servants of my master.”

### UST

**41** Abigail bowed down with her face touching the ground. Then she told the messengers to tell David, “I am happy to become your wife. I will be your servant. And I am willing to wash the feet of your servants.”

## 1 Samuel 25:42

### hurried and arose, and rode

You may need to make explicit what Abigail did after she arose and before she rode. Alternate translation: “quickly did what she needed to do to prepare for the journey, and then she rode” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### five servant girls of hers who followed her

Abigail was riding a donkey, but the servant girls were walking.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>42</sup> Abigail hurried and arose, and rode on a donkey with five servant girls of hers who followed her; and she followed David's messengers and became his wife.

#### UST

<sup>42</sup> Abigail quickly got on her donkey and went with David's messengers. Five of her female servants went with her. When she arrived where David was, she became his wife.

## 1 Samuel 25:43

### Now David had also taken Ahinoam

This event took place before David married Abigail. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Ahinoam

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>43</sup> Now David had also taken Ahinoam of Jezreel as a wife; both of them became his wives.

### UST

<sup>43</sup> David had previously married Ahinoam, a woman from Jezreel near Carmel. So both Abigail and Ahinoam were now David's wives.

## 1 Samuel 25:44

### Saul had given Michal

This event took place before David married Abigail. (See: [Background Information](#))

### Michal

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Paltiel...Laish

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Gallim

This is a town north of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)

#### ULT

<sup>44</sup> Also, Saul had given Michal his daughter, David's wife, to Paltiel son of Laish, who was of Gallim.

#### UST

<sup>44</sup> King Saul's daughter Michal was also David's wife, but Saul had given her to Laish's son Paltiel, who was in the town of Gallim.

## 1 Samuel 26

### 1 Samuel 26 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Vengeance

David has another opportunity to kill Saul but he refuses to kill the one God had chosen as king. This contrasts with Saul, who tried to find David and kill him. Saul came to admit that David was more righteous than he was because he did not kill his enemy. (See: [chosen](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#) and [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical question

David put his reason for not killing Saul in a rhetorical question: "Do not destroy him; for who can extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 1 Samuel 26:1

### Is not David hiding...Jeshimon?

This rhetorical question can be translated as an exclamation.  
Alternate translation: "David is hiding...Jeshimon!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### before Jeshimon

"from which we can see Jeshimon"

### Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as "the Judean Wilderness" or "the wasteland." See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> The Ziphites came to Saul at Gibeah and said, "Is not David hiding in the hill of Hakilah, which is before Jeshimon?"

### UST

<sup>1</sup> One day some of the people of Ziph town went to Saul while he was at Gibeah, and they said to him, "David is hiding in a cave on the hill of Hakilah, east of the town of Jeshimon."

## 1 Samuel 26:2

### Then Saul arose and went

The word “arose” is an idiom for taking action. Alternate translation: “Then Saul took action and he went” (See: [Idiom](#))

### three thousand

3,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

### chosen men

men whom he had chosen because of their superior military abilities

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> Then Saul arose and went down to the wilderness of Ziph, having three thousand chosen men of Israel with him, to seek David in the wilderness of Ziph.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So Saul chose three thousand of the best Israelite soldiers and went with them to the wilderness of Ziph to search for David.

## 1 Samuel 26:3

### before Jeshimon

“from which they could see Jeshimon”

### Jeshimon

This is the name of a desert area near the Dead Sea. It can also be translated as “the Judean Wilderness” or “the wasteland.” See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 23:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [face, facial](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Saul camped on the hill of Hakilah, which is before Jeshimon, by the road. But David was staying in the wilderness, and he saw that Saul was coming after him into the wilderness.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Saul and his men set up their tents close to the road on the hill of Hakilah, east of the town of Jeshimon, but David and his men stayed in the wilderness. When David heard that Saul was searching for him,

## 1 Samuel 26:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> So David sent out spies and learned that Saul had indeed come.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> he sent some spies to find out if it was true that Saul had come to Hakilah.

## 1 Samuel 26:5

### David arose and went

"David took action and he went"

### Abner...Ner

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- David (2)
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- David (2)
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> David arose and went to the place where Saul had camped; he saw the place where Saul lay, and Abner son of Ner, the general of his army; Saul lay in the camp, and the people were camped around him, all asleep.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Then that evening David went to the place where Saul had set up his tent. From a distance he saw where Saul and his army commander, Abner, were sleeping. Saul was sleeping with all his army sleeping around him.

## 1 Samuel 26:6

### Ahimelech...Abishai

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Zeruiah

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### go down...to

David and his men were probably on higher ground than Saul.

### I! I will go down

"I want to be the one who goes down"

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- Hittite
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- son
- Hittite
- David

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then David said to Ahimelech the Hittite, and to Abishai son of Zeruiah, the brother of Joab, "Who will go down with me to Saul in the camp?" Abishai said, "I! I will go down with you."

### UST

<sup>6</sup> David went back to where his men were and talked to Ahimelech, who was from the Heth people group, and Joab's brother Abishai, whose mother was David's older sister Zeruiah. He asked them, "Who will go with me down into the camp where Saul is?" Abishai replied, "I will go with you."

## 1 Samuel 26:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- people, people group,
- people, people group,

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So David and Abishai went to the army by night. Saul was there sleeping inside the camp with his spear stuck in the ground beside his head. Abner and his soldiers lay around him.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> So that night David and Abishai crept into Saul's camp. They saw that Saul was asleep. His spear was stuck in the ground near his head. Saul was asleep in the middle of the camp. Abner and the other soldiers were sleeping around Saul.

## 1 Samuel 26:8

### God has put your enemy into your hand

Abishai speaks as if the enemy were a small object that God had put into David's hand. The word "hand" is a metonym for the power the hand can wield. Alternate translation: "God has given you complete control over your enemy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### pin him to the ground with the spear

This is a metonym that refers to "kill with a spear" (See: [Metonymy](#))

### I will not strike him a second time

"I will kill him the first time I strike him" or "I will not need to strike him a second time"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Then Abishai said to David, "Today God has put your enemy into your hand. Now please let me pin him to the ground with the spear with just one blow. I will not strike him a second time."

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> Abishai whispered to David, "Today Yahweh has enabled us to kill your enemy! Allow me to fasten Saul to the ground by thrusting my spear into him. It will be necessary for me to strike him only once. I will not need to strike him twice."

## 1 Samuel 26:9

### who can extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "No one can strike Yahweh's anointed one and be without guilt." or "Anyone who strikes Yahweh's anointed one will be guilty of murder." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Litotes](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> David said to Abishai, "Do not destroy him; for who can extend his hand against Yahweh's anointed one and be guiltless?"

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> But David whispered to Abishai, "No, do not kill Saul. Yahweh has appointed him to be king, so Yahweh will surely punish anyone who kills him."

## 1 Samuel 26:10

### As Yahweh lives

“as certainly as Yahweh lives” or “as surely as Yahweh lives”

### his day will come to die

“he will die a natural death”

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- David
- die, dead, deadly, death,

### ULT

**10** David said, “As Yahweh lives, Yahweh will kill him, or his day will come to die, or he will go into battle and perish.

### UST

**10** Just as surely as Yahweh is alive, he himself will punish Saul. Perhaps Yahweh will strike him when it is Saul’s time to die, or perhaps Saul will be killed in a battle.

## 1 Samuel 26:11

### extend my hand against

The hand is a metonym for the harm a hand can do. Alternate translation: “do anything to harm” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### let us go

David includes Abishai, so the word “us” here is inclusive. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**11** May Yahweh forbid that I should extend my hand against his anointed one; but now, I beg you, take the spear that is at his head and the jar of water, and let us go.”

### UST

**11** But I hope that Yahweh will prevent me from harming the king whom he has appointed. Let us take Saul's spear and water jug that are near his head. Then let us get out of here!”

## 1 Samuel 26:12

### a deep sleep from Yahweh had fallen on them

Yahweh had caused them to sleep deeply.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> So David took the spear and the jar of water from Saul's head, and they got away. No one saw them or knew about it, nor did anyone wake up, for they were all asleep, because a deep sleep from Yahweh had fallen on them.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> So David took the spear and the jug, and he and Abishai left. No one saw them or knew what they were doing, and no one woke up, because Yahweh had caused them to be sound asleep.

## 1 Samuel 26:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- head

### ULT

<sup>13</sup> Then David went over to the other side and stood on the top of the mountain far off; a great distance was between them.

### UST

<sup>13</sup> David and Abishai went across the valley and climbed to the top of the hill, a long way from Saul's camp.

## 1 Samuel 26:14

### Do you not answer, Abner?

David uses a question to shame Abner into answering. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Answer me, Abner!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### David shouted

"David spoke as loudly as he could" so Saul and his men could hear him

### Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- son
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

**14** David shouted out to the people and to Abner son of Ner; he said, "Do you not answer, Abner?" Then Abner answered and said, "Who are you who is shouting to the king?"

### UST

**14** Then David shouted to Abner, "Abner, can you hear me?" Abner replied "Who are you, waking up the king by calling out to him?"

## 1 Samuel 26:15

### Are not you a courageous man?

David uses a question to rebuke Abner for not guarding Saul.  
Alternate translation: "You are a very brave man." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Who is like you in Israel?

David uses a question to rebuke Abner for not guarding Saul.  
Alternate translation: "You are the greatest soldier in Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why then have you not kept watch over your master the king?

Possible meanings are 1) this is a real question and David wants Abner to answer him or 2) this is a rhetorical question and David is rebuking Abner. Alternate translation: "Therefore you should have kept watch over your master the king!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### ULT

**15** David said to Abner, "Are not you a courageous man? Who is like you in Israel? Why then have you not kept watch over your master the king? For someone came in to kill the king your master.

### UST

**15** David replied, "I am sure that you are the greatest man in Israel! So why did you not guard your master, the king? Someone came into your camp in order to kill your master, the king.

## 1 Samuel 26:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- king, kingdom, kingship
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### ULT

**16** This thing you have done is not good. As Yahweh lives, you deserve to die because you have not kept watch over your master, Yahweh's anointed one. Now see where the king's spear is and the jar of water that was near his head!"

### UST

**16** You have done a very poor job of guarding Saul. So just as surely as Yahweh is alive, you and your men should be executed! You have not guarded your master whom Yahweh appointed to be the king. Where are the king's spear and the water jug that were close to his head?"

## 1 Samuel 26:17

### my son

Saul was not David's true father. Saul speaks as if he were David's father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- David
- David (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- David
- David
- David (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

**17** Saul recognized David's voice and said, "Is that your voice, my son David?" David said, "It is my voice, my master, king."

### UST

**17** Saul woke up and recognized that it was David's voice. He called out, saying, "My son David, is that your voice?" David replied, "Yes, your majesty it is my voice."

## 1 Samuel 26:18

### Why does my master pursue his servant?

Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My master has no reason to pursue his servant." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Why does my master pursue his servant?

Here David speaks of Saul in third person calling him "my master," and he speaks of himself in third person calling himself "his servant." David speaks this way to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: "Why are you, my master, pursuing me, your servant?" or "Why are you pursuing me?" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

### What have I done?

Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You know that I have done nothing to harm you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### What evil is in my hand?

This speaks of evil as if it were an object that is held in the hand. Here "hand" represents a person acting or doing something. Possible meanings are 1) David really does want Saul to answer the question. Alternate translation: "What have I done wrong?" or 2) this rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have done nothing wrong!" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- hand
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**18** He said, "Why does my master pursue his servant? What have I done? What evil is in my hand?"

#### UST

**18** Then David added, "Sir, why are you pursuing me? I have done nothing wrong!"

## 1 Samuel 26:19

### **you, let my master the king listen to the words of his servant**

David speaks as if he and the king were other people to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: “you my king, listen to my words” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### **stirred you up against me**

“caused you to be angry with me”

### **let him accept an offering**

You may need to make explicit the reason he will give an offering. Alternate translation: “I will give him an offering so he will no longer cause you to be angry with me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

### **may they be cursed in the sight of Yahweh**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “may Yahweh decide to punish them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### **for they have today driven me out, that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh; they have said to me, ‘Go worship other gods.’**

“for they have today driven me out. It is as if they want me to stop clinging to the inheritance of Yahweh. It is as if they have said to me, ‘Go worship other gods.’”

### **that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh**

“so that I will no longer trust that Yahweh will give me what he has promised me”

### **Translation Words - ULT**

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- curse, cursed, cursing
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### **ULT**

**19** Now therefore, I beg you, let my master the king listen to the words of his servant. If it is Yahweh who has stirred you up against me, let him accept an offering; but if it is human beings, may they be cursed in the sight of Yahweh, for they have today driven me out, that I should not cling to the inheritance of Yahweh; they have said to me, ‘Go worship other gods.’

### **UST**

**19** Your majesty, listen to me! If Yahweh has caused you to be angry with me, I want him to accept a sacrifice from me. But if it is people who have caused you to be angry with me, I hope that Yahweh will curse them. They have forced me to leave the land that Yahweh gave to me. They have told me, ‘Go somewhere else and worship other gods!’

## Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- curse, cursed, cursing
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

## 1 Samuel 26:20

### the king of Israel has

David speaks as if the king was another person to show respect to Saul. Alternate translation: “you have” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### do not let my blood fall to the earth

This is a polite way of saying “do not kill me.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

### the one flea

David uses the word “flea” as a metaphor for a person, himself, who cannot do any great harm. Alternate translation: “this single flea” or “me, and I cannot harm you any more than one flea can” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### as when one hunts a partridge in the mountains

Saul is chasing David as if he were hunting a valuable wild bird. (See: [Simile](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

#### ULT

**20** Now therefore, do not let my blood fall to the earth away from Yahweh's presence; for the king of Israel has come out to look for the one flea as when one hunts a partridge in the mountains.”

#### UST

**20** Now do not force me to die away from the land and presence of Yahweh. You, the king, are looking for me, but I am as good as a flea or a wild bird that someone hunts in the hills.”

### Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- blood
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

## 1 Samuel 26:21

### Return

Possible meanings are 1) "Return to serve me in my palace" or "Return to your home."

### my son

Saul was not David's true father. Saul speaks as if he were David's father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### my life was precious in your eyes today

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "today you have considered my life to be very valuable" or "today you showed me that you really do respect me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### played the fool

"been very foolish"

### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [David](#)
- [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [distress](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [David](#)
- [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [distress](#)

### ULT

**21** Then Saul said, "I have sinned. Return, David, my son; for I will harm you no more, because my life was precious in your eyes today. See, I have played the fool and have made a very bad mistake."

### UST

**21** Then Saul said, "David, my son, I have sinned by trying to kill you. So come back home. Today you have considered my life to be very valuable and so you have not killed me. So I will not try to harm you. I have made a big mistake and have acted foolishly."

## 1 Samuel 26:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- king, kingdom, kingship

### ULT

<sup>22</sup> David answered and said, “See, your spear is here, king! Let one of the young men come over and get it and bring it to you.

### UST

<sup>22</sup> David replied, “I will leave your spear here. Send one of your young men here to get it.

## 1 Samuel 26:23

### Yahweh put you into my hand today

The word “hand” is a metonym for the person’s power. “Yahweh gave me an opportunity to attack you today” or “Yahweh placed me where I could easily have killed you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### pay each man

“give what is proper to each man”

### his anointed

David speaks as if Saul were another person to show that he respects Saul because Saul is king. Alternate translation: “the one he has chosen to be king” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

### ULT

**23** May Yahweh pay each man for his righteousness and his faithfulness; because Yahweh put you into my hand today, but I would not strike his anointed.

### UST

**23** Yahweh rewards us for the things that we do that are right and for being loyal to him. Even when Yahweh placed me where I could easily have killed you, I refused to do that, because you are the one whom Yahweh has appointed to be the king.

## 1 Samuel 26:24

### your life was precious in my eyes today

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 26:21](#). Alternate translation: “I have considered your life to be very valuable” or “I showed you today that I really do respect you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

### so may my life be much valued in the eyes of Yahweh

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “so may Yahweh consider my life very valuable as well” or “so may Yahweh value my life as much as I have valued your life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- proud, pride, prideful
- proud, pride, prideful

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- proud, pride, prideful
- proud, pride, prideful

#### ULT

**24** See, as your life was precious in my eyes today, so may my life be much valued in the eyes of Yahweh, and may he rescue me out of all trouble.”

#### UST

**24** Just as I considered your life to be valuable and spared your life today, I hope that Yahweh will consider my life to be valuable and spare my life and save me from all my troubles.”

## 1 Samuel 26:25

### May you be blessed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "May Yahweh bless you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

### my son

Saul was not David's true father. Saul speaks as if he were David's father to show David that he wants David to trust and respect him as David would trust and respect his own father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

**25** Then Saul said to David, "May you be blessed, David my son! You will certainly do great things and you will succeed in them." So David went his way, and Saul returned to his place.

### UST

**25** Then Saul said to David, "My son David, I pray that Yahweh may bless you. May you do great things very successfully." Then David returned to his men, and Saul went back home.

## **1 Samuel 27**

### **1 Samuel 27 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This begins a section about David living with the Philistines.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **David's move**

David is afraid Saul will someday catch him and kill him, so he moves to the Philistine city of Gath. This is a type of exile David creates for himself out of fear. It is caused by his lack of trust in God. This is the same reason his descendants would come to be exiled. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

# 1 Samuel 27:1

## David said in his heart

Here “his heart” is a metonym that means to himself. Alternate translation: “David thought to himself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## escape out of his hand

The word “hand” is a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: “escape from him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

## Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [heart](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

## ULT

<sup>1</sup> David said in his heart, “I will now perish one day by Saul’s hand; there is nothing better for me than to escape into the land of the Philistines; Saul will give up looking for me any more within all the borders of Israel; in this way I will escape out of his hand.”

## UST

<sup>1</sup> But David thought, “Some day Saul will capture me if I stay around here. So the best thing that I can do is to escape and go to the region of Philistia. If I do that, Saul will stop searching for me here in Israel, and I will be safe.”

## 1 Samuel 27:2

### David arose and passed over

“David took action; he passed over”

### passed over

“passed over the border between Israel and Philistia”

### six hundred men

600 (See: [Numbers](#))

### Achish

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 21:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Maok

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> David arose and passed over, he and the six hundred men who were with him, to Achish son of Maok, the king of Gath.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> So David and his six hundred men left Israel and went to see Maok's son Achish, who was king of the city of Gath in the region of Philistia.

## 1 Samuel 27:3

### Ahinoam

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 14:50](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Abigail

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Nabal

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 25:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> David lived with Achish at Gath, he and his men, each man with his own household, and David with his two wives, Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman, and Abigail the Carmelite woman, Nabal's wife.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> David and his men and their families started to live there in Gath, the city where King Achish lived. David's two wives were with him—Ahinoam from Jezreel, and Nabal's widow Abigail, from Carmel.

## 1 Samuel 27:4

### Saul was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Saul" or "Saul heard" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Saul was told that David had fled to Gath, so he looked for him no longer.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> When Saul heard that David had run away and was living in Gath, he stopped searching for David.

## 1 Samuel 27:5

### If I have found favor in your eyes

Here the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 20:3](#). Alternate translation: "If I have pleased you" or "If you consider me favorably" (See: [Metaphor](#))

### let them give me a place

Since Achish was the one who would "give," this is a metonym for "please give me a place." (See: [Metonymy](#))

### one of the cities in the country

"one of the outlying towns" or "one of the towns outside the city"

### Why should your servant live in the royal city with you?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I do not need to live in the city with you." or "I am not important enough to live here with you in the royal city." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### your servant

David speaks as if he were another person to show that he respected Achish. (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> David said to Achish, "If I have found favor in your eyes, let them give me a place in one of the cities in the country, that I may live there. Why should your servant live in the royal city with you?"

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> One day David said to Achish, "If you are pleased with us, give us a place in one of the small villages where we can stay. There is no need for us to stay in the city where you are the king."

## 1 Samuel 27:6

### Ziklag

This is the name of a city in the southwest part of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So that day Achish gave him Ziklag; that is why Ziklag belongs to the kings of Judah to this very day.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> Achish liked what David suggested. So that day Achish gave to David the town of Ziklag. As a result, Ziklag has belonged to the kings of Judah since that time.

## 1 Samuel 27:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- David

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> The number of days that David lived in the land of the Philistines was a full year and four months.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> David and his men lived in the region of Philistia for sixteen months.

## 1 Samuel 27:8

### making raids on

attacking and taking property many times (See: [Idiom](#))

### Girzites

A people group who apparently lived somewhere between Philistia and Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### as you go to Shur

Here “you” is being used as an indefinite pronoun that refers to anyone. Alternate translation: “on the way most people travel to Shur” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Shur

region on the northeast border of Egypt (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> David and his men attacked various places, making raids on the Geshurites, the Girzites, and the Amalekites; for those nations were the inhabitants of the land, as you go to Shur, as far as the land of Egypt. They had been living there in the land from ancient times. <sup>[1]</sup>

### UST

<sup>8</sup> During that time, David and his men raided the people who lived in the areas where the Geshur, Girzi, and Amalek people groups lived. Those people had lived there from long before. That area extended south to Shur and to the border of Egypt.

## 1 Samuel 27:9

### Achish

the king of Gath (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- David
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- David
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- earth, earthen, earthly
- return

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> David attacked the land and saved neither man nor woman alive; he took away the sheep, the oxen, the donkeys, the camels, and the clothing; he would return and come again to Achish.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> Whenever David's men attacked them, they killed all the men and women, and they took all the people's sheep and cattle and donkeys and camels, and even their clothes. Then they would bring those things back home, and David would go to talk to Achish.

## 1 Samuel 27:10

### Achish

the king of Gath (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jerahmeelites

a clan from the tribe of Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Kenites

a people group who lived in the land of Midian (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Achish would say, "Against whom have you made a raid today?" David would answer, "Against the south of Judah," or "Against the south of the Jerahmeelites," or "Against the south of the Kenites."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Each time Achish would ask David, "Where did you go raiding today?" Sometimes David would say that they had gone to the southern part of Judah, and sometimes he would say that they had gone to where the Jerahmeelites lived in the south, or that he had fought against the Kenites who lived in the south.

## 1 Samuel 27:11

### Gath

one of five Philistine city-states. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- judge, judgment
- Philistines
- David
- David

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- judge, judgment
- Philistines
- David
- David

#### ULT

**11** David would keep neither man nor woman alive to bring them to Gath, saying, "So that they cannot say about us, 'David did such and such.'" This was what he did all the while he was living in the country of the Philistines.

#### UST

**11** David's men never brought back to Gath any man or woman who was still alive. David thought, "If we do not kill everyone, some of them who are still alive they will go and tell Achish the truth about what we really did." David did that all the time that he and his men lived in the region of Philistia.

## 1 Samuel 27:12

### Achish

the king of Gath (See: [Pronouns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> Achish believed David, saying, “He has made his people Israel utterly abhor him; he will therefore be my servant forever.”

27:8 <sup>[1]</sup> Instead of *the Girzites* which is found in some ancient Hebrew manuscripts, some modern versions have *the Gizrites* which is found in the margin of some Hebrew manuscripts.

### UST

<sup>12</sup> So Achish believed what David told him; he thought, “Because of what David has done, his own people, the Israelites, must now hate him very much. So he will have to stay here and serve me forever.”

## 1 Samuel 28

### 1 Samuel 28 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Talking to the dead

Talking to the dead was against the law of Moses. God or the Holy Spirit left Saul because of his sin and would not help him. (See: [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Spirit](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

#### Important figures of speech in this chapter

##### Rhetorical question

Samuel uses a rhetorical question to say it was useless to ask his advice since there was no way Saul could be successful with God against him: "What then do you ask me, since Yahweh has left you, and he has become your enemy?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

## 1 Samuel 28:1

### host

large assembly of armies

### Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- David
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- David
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about in those days that the Philistines gathered their armies together for battle to fight with Israel. Achish said to David, "Know for certain that you will go out with me in the host, you and your men."

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Some time later, the people of Philistia gathered their army to attack the Israelites again. King Achish told David, "I am expecting that you and your men will join with my men to attack the Israelites."

## 1 Samuel 28:2

### So you will know...So I will

The word “so” shows that the speaker agrees with what the other person has just said. Alternate translation: “Yes, I will go with you so that you will know...Very well, I will” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

### you will know what your servant can do

David probably wanted Achish to think that David would kill many Israelites, but “what your servant can do” could also mean that David was planning to kill Philistines instead. Try to translate so that the reader can see both of these possible meanings.

### your servant

David speaks as if he is another person so that Achish will think David respects him. Alternate translation: “I” (See: [Pronouns](#))

### make you

The word “you” refers to David and so is singular. (See: [Pronouns](#))

### bodyguard

a person who protects another person

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> David said to Achish, “So you will know what your servant can do.” Achish said to David, “So I will make you my bodyguard all your days.”

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> David replied, “We will go with you, and then you will see for yourself what we can do!” Achish said, “Very well, I will appoint you to be my permanent bodyguard.”

## 1 Samuel 28:3

### Now Samuel...with spirits

The writer provides background information to prepare the reader for the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

### banned from the land

officially removed from the country or region, or prevented from entering Alternate translation: “expel from Israel”

### those who talked with the dead or with spirits

The words “those who talked with the dead” translate as one word in the original language, and the words “those who...talked with spirits” also translate as one word in the original language. If your language has one word for those who talk with the dead and one word for those who talk with spirits, or if your language has only one word for those who talk with the dead and with spirits, you should use those words here.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Now Samuel had died, and all Israel had lamented him and buried him in Ramah, in his own city. Also, Saul had banned from the land those who talked with the dead or with spirits.

### UST

<sup>3</sup> Now while Samuel was still alive, Saul did some things that pleased Yahweh. One of the good things that Saul did was to expel from Israel all the people who were fortune tellers or who talked to the spirits of dead people. But Samuel had died, and all the Israelite people had mourned for him. Then they had buried him in Ramah, his hometown.

## 1 Samuel 28:4

### Then the Philistines gathered

after David and Achish spoke ([1 Samuel 28:2](#))

### gathered all Israel together

“gathered all his armies in Israel together”

### Shunem...Gilboa

these are names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then the Philistines gathered themselves together and came and camped at Shunem; and Saul gathered all Israel together, and they camped at Gilboa.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> The army of Philistia gathered and set up their tents at the city of Shunem, in the north of Israel. Saul gathered the Israelite army and set up their tents at Gilboa in the eastern part of the same valley.

## 1 Samuel 28:5

### he was afraid, and his heart trembled very much

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of his fear. Here Saul is referred to by his “heart.” Alternate translation: “he was terrified” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Parallelism](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- heart
- Philistines

#### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- heart
- Philistines

#### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When Saul saw the army of the Philistines, he was afraid, and his heart trembled very much.

#### UST

<sup>5</sup> When Saul saw the army of Philistia, he became so afraid that his heart pounded.

## 1 Samuel 28:6

### Urim

The high priest carried the sacred lots called Urim and Thummin in his breastplate, in a marked pouch, next to his heart.

### Translation Words - ULT

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

### Translation Words - UST

- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Saul prayed to Yahweh for help, but Yahweh did not answer him—neither by dreams, nor by Urim, nor by prophets.

### UST

<sup>6</sup> He prayed to Yahweh, but Yahweh did not answer him. Yahweh did not tell Saul what he should do by giving him a dream, or by having the priest throw the marked stones in his sacred pouch, or by giving a message about Saul to any prophet.

## 1 Samuel 28:7

### who talks with the dead

These words translate as one word in the original language. If your language has one word for a person who talks to the dead, you should use it here. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 28:3](#).

### Endor

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> Then Saul said to his servants, "Find me a woman who talks with the dead, so that I may go to her and seek her advice." His servants said to him, "See, there is a woman in Endor who claims to talk with the dead."

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then Saul said to his servants, "Find for me a woman who talks to the spirits of dead people, in order that I can ask her what will happen." His servants replied, "There is a woman in the town of Endor who does that."

## 1 Samuel 28:8

### Saul disguised himself...and went...to the woman by night

Saul disguised himself because the way from Gilboa ([1 Samuel 28:4](#)) to Endor ([1 Samuel 28:7](#)) was through land that the Philistines were living in. He traveled all day and reached the woman after the sun had gone down.

### disguised

changed his usual appearance no one would know who he was

### Divine for me...with a spirit

"Talk to the dead for me"

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> Saul disguised himself, put on other clothing, and went, he and two men with him; they went to the woman by night. He said, "Divine for me, I beg you, with a spirit, and bring me up whomever I name to you."

### UST

<sup>8</sup> So Saul took off the clothes that showed that he was the king, and he put on ordinary clothes to disguise himself. Then he and two of his men went during the night to talk to that woman. Saul said to her, "I want you to talk to a spirit of someone who has died. Cause to appear the person whose name I will give to you."

## 1 Samuel 28:9

### those who talk with the dead or with spirits

The words “those who talk with the dead” translate as one word in the original language, and the words “those who...talk with spirits” also translate as one word in the original language. If your language has one word for those who talk with the dead and one word for those who talk with spirits, or if your language has only one word for those who talk with the dead and with spirits, you should use those words here. See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 28:3](#).

### my life

The word “life” represents the person. Alternate translation: “me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [heart](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> The woman said to him, “See, you know what Saul has done, how he has banned from the land those who talk with the dead or with spirits. So why are you setting a trap for my life, to make me die?”

### UST

<sup>9</sup> But the woman replied, “You surely know what Saul has done. He expelled from this land all the people who talk to spirits of dead people and all fortune tellers. I think that you are trying to trap me, in order that I will be executed for doing something that is not permitted.”

## 1 Samuel 28:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- iniquity
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### ULT

<sup>10</sup> Saul swore to her by Yahweh and said, "As Yahweh lives, no punishment will happen to you for this thing."

### UST

<sup>10</sup> Saul replied, solemnly asking Yahweh to listen to what he was saying, "Just as surely as Yahweh is alive, you will not be punished for doing this."

## 1 Samuel 28:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### ULT

**11** Then the woman said, "Whom should I bring up to you?" Saul said, "Bring up Samuel for me."

### UST

**11** Then the woman said, "Whom do you want me to cause to appear?" Saul replied, "Cause Samuel to appear."

## 1 Samuel 28:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- voice
- cry, cry out, outcry

### Translation Words - UST

- voice
- cry, cry out, outcry

### ULT

<sup>12</sup> When the woman saw Samuel, she cried with a loud voice and spoke to Saul, saying, "Why have you deceived me? For you are Saul."

### UST

<sup>12</sup> So the woman did that. But when she saw Samuel, she screamed. She said, "You have tricked me! You are Saul! You will execute me for doing this!"

## 1 Samuel 28:13

### a god

Other possible meanings are 1) "one like God" or 2) "a judge" (1 Samuel 7:15).

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**13** The king said to her, "Do not be afraid. What do you see?" The woman said to Saul, "I see a god coming up out of the earth."

### UST

**13** Saul said to her, "Do not be afraid. What do you see?" The woman said, "I see a god coming up out of the ground."

## 1 Samuel 28:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prostrate, worship
- elder, older, old
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- prostrate, worship
- elder, older, old
- earth, earthen, earthly
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

<sup>14</sup> He said to her, "What does he look like?" She said, "An old man is coming up; he is clothed with a robe." Saul perceived that it was Samuel, and he bowed with his face to the ground and showed respect.

### UST

<sup>14</sup> Saul said, "What does he look like?" The woman replied, "An old man wearing a robe is appearing." Then Saul knew that it was Samuel. So he bowed down with his face touching the ground.

## 1 Samuel 28:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- hand
- tremble, stagger
- declare, proclaim, announce

### Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- hand
- tremble, stagger
- declare, proclaim, announce

### ULT

<sup>15</sup> Samuel said to Saul, “Why have you disturbed me and brought me up?” Saul answered, “I am very distressed, for the Philistines are waging war against me, and God has left me and does not answer me any more, neither by prophets, nor by dreams. Therefore I have called you, that you may make known to me what I will do.”

### UST

<sup>15</sup> Samuel said to Saul, “Why have you bothered me by causing me to appear?” Saul said, “I am very worried. The army of Philistia is about to attack my army, and God has abandoned me. He does not answer my questions anymore. He does not give me dreams to tell me what to do or give messages to prophets to tell me what to do. That is the reason that I came to see you. So you tell me what I should do!”

## 1 Samuel 28:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

#### ULT

<sup>16</sup> Samuel said, "What then do you ask me, since Yahweh has left you, and he has become your enemy?"

#### UST

<sup>16</sup> Samuel said, "Yahweh has abandoned you and has become your enemy. So why do you ask me what you should do?"

## 1 Samuel 28:17

### torn the kingdom out of your hand

Samuel speaks as if the kingdom were a physical object that could be held in the hand and grabbed out by another person. Alternate translation: “made you so you are no longer king” or “made another person king in your place” (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- hand

#### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- hand

#### ULT

**17** Yahweh has done to you what he said he would. Yahweh has torn the kingdom out of your hand and he has given it to someone else—to David.

#### UST

**17** He has done what he told me previously that he would do to you. He has torn the kingdom away from you, and he is giving it to someone who is another Israelite—David.

## 1 Samuel 28:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- voice

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- voice

### ULT

**18** Because you did not obey the voice of Yahweh and did not carry out his fierce wrath on Amalek, he has therefore done this today to you.

### UST

**18** You did not obey Yahweh. Yahweh was very angry with the Amalek people group. You did not kill all of their animals, with the result that you did not show that he was very angry with them. That is the reason that he is refusing to answer you today.

## 1 Samuel 28:19

### Yahweh will give Israel along with you into the hand of the Philistines

Samuel speaks as if the people of Israel were a small object that Yahweh would give to the Philistines, whom he speaks of as if they were one person. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will allow the Philistines to do whatever they want to do to you and the people of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### will be with me

This is a polite way to say that Saul will die. Alternate translation: "will be dead" (See: [Euphemism](#))

### Yahweh will also give the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines

Samuel speaks as if the army of Israel were a small object that Yahweh would give to the Philistines, whom he speaks of as if they were one person. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will allow the Philistines to do whatever they want to do to the army of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- Philistines
- hand
- hand (2)

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Philistines
- Philistines
- hand
- hand (2)

#### ULT

**19** Yahweh will give Israel along with you into the hand of the Philistines, and tomorrow you and your sons will be with me. Yahweh will also give the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines."

#### UST

**19** Yahweh will enable the Philistine army to defeat you and all the other Israelite soldiers. And tomorrow you and your sons will be with me in the place where spirits of dead people are. Yahweh will cause the whole Israelite army to be defeated by the Philistine army." After Samuel said that, he disappeared.

## 1 Samuel 28:20

**he had eaten no food all that day, neither that whole night**

Saul had not eaten during the night before he traveled from Gilboa (1 Samuel 28:4) to Endor (1 Samuel 28:7), nor during the day as he journeyed, nor during the night on which he visited the woman.

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- bread
- devour
- strength, strengthen, strong
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- fear, afraid, dread
- bread
- devour
- strength, strengthen, strong
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> Then Saul immediately fell his full length on the ground and was very afraid because of the words of Samuel. There was no strength in him, for he had eaten no food all that day, neither that whole night.

### UST

<sup>20</sup> Saul immediately fell flat on the ground. He was so afraid because of what Samuel had said that he lost all his strength. He was also very weak because he had not eaten anything all that day and night.

## 1 Samuel 28:21

### I have put my life in my hand and have listened

This is an idiom. "I could die because I listened" or "Someone could kill me because I listened" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [voice](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [voice](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

#### ULT

**21** The woman came to Saul and saw that he was very troubled, She said to him, "See, your woman servant has listened to your voice; I have put my life in my hand and have listened to the words that you said to me.

#### UST

**21** The woman saw that he was very worried. She said to him, "Listen to me! I have done what you requested me to do. I could be executed for doing that.

## 1 Samuel 28:22

### the voice of your woman servant

The woman speaks as if she is another person to show that she respects Saul. She refers to herself by her "voice" to emphasize what she says. Alternate translation: "my voice" or "me speak to you" (See: [Pronouns](#) or [Synecdoche](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- bread
- voice
- devour
- strength, strengthen, strong
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- bread
- voice
- devour
- strength, strengthen, strong
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

#### ULT

**22** Now therefore, I beg you, listen also to the voice of your woman servant, and let me set a little food in front of you. Eat so that you may gain strength for when you go on your way."

#### UST

**22** So now please pay attention to what I say. Allow me to give you some food, in order that you will eat it and get enough strength to go back to your army."

## 1 Samuel 28:23

### Saul refused

"Saul would not do what they asked"

### compelled him

"forced him"

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**23** But Saul refused and said, "I will not eat." But his servants, together with the woman, compelled him, and he listened to their voice. So he rose from the ground and sat on the bed.

### UST

**23** But Saul refused. He said, "No, I will not eat anything." Then Saul's servants also urged him to eat something, and finally he listened to them. He got up from the ground and sat on the bed.

## 1 Samuel 28:24

### fatted calf

a calf that has been grown and fed to be available for a special feast

### she...kneaded it

She mixed flour and oil, working and rolling the mixture thoroughly with her hands to produce dough for baking.

### Translation Words - ULT

- unleavened bread
- temple

### Translation Words - UST

- unleavened bread
- temple

### ULT

**24** The woman had a fatted calf in the house; she hurried and killed it; she took flour, kneaded it, and baked unleavened bread with it.

### UST

**24** The woman had a fat calf close to her house. She quickly slaughtered it and cooked it. She took some flour and mixed it with olive oil, and baked it without putting in any yeast.

## 1 Samuel 28:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

<sup>25</sup> She brought it before Saul and his servants, and they ate. Then they got up and left that night.

### UST

<sup>25</sup> She placed the food in front of Saul and his servants, and they ate some of it. Then that same night they got up and left.

## **1 Samuel 29**

### **1 Samuel 29 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 29:5.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties**

It is unclear whether David wanted to go into battle with the Philistines. He would have been fighting against Saul, but he also would have been fighting against Israel's soldiers. It is probably best to see that David is conflicted over this issue, but some scholars believe that David planned on turning against the Philistines in the battle.

## 1 Samuel 29:1

### spring

a small stream of water flowing naturally from the Earth

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the Philistines gathered together all their army at Aphek; the Israelites camped by the spring that is in Jezreel.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> The Philistine army gathered at the Valley of Aphek. The Israelites set up their tents at the city of Jezreel, which was in the same valley.

## 1 Samuel 29:2

### passed on by hundreds and by thousands

“divided their men into groups; some groups had one hundred soldiers and some groups had one thousand soldiers”

### hundreds...thousands

100s...1,000s (See: [Numbers](#))

### David and his men passed on in the rear guard with Achish

The groups of hundreds and thousands passed on first, then Achish and his helpers, and then David, his men, and the other Philistine soldiers, who were guarding Achish.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The princes of the Philistines passed on by hundreds and by thousands; David and his men passed on in the rear guard with Achish.

### UST

<sup>2</sup> The kings of Philistia divided their men into groups; some groups had one hundred soldiers and some groups had one thousand soldiers. David and his men were marching behind, with King Achish.

## 1 Samuel 29:3

### What are these Hebrews doing here?

Possible ways to translate this rhetorical question as a statement are Alternate translation: 1) "You should not have allowed these Hebrews, our enemies, to be here with us." or 2) "Tell us who these Hebrews are." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### Is not this David...these years, and I have found...this day?

Another possible translation is "Is not this David,...these years? I have found...this day." The rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should know that this is David...these years. I have found...this day." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### I have found no fault with him

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "I know of nothing that he has done wrong" or "I am very pleased with him" (See: [Litotes](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#) (2)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [David](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#) (2)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

<sup>3</sup> Then the princes of the Philistines said, "What are these Hebrews doing here?" Achish said to the other princes of the Philistines, "Is not this David, the servant of Saul, the king of Israel, who has been with me these days, or rather these years, and I have found no fault with him since he came away to me to this day?"

### UST

<sup>3</sup> But the Philistine commanders asked, "What are these Hebrews doing here, marching with us to battle?" Achish replied, "Their leader is David. He previously worked for King Saul of Israel, but now he has been living near me for more than a year. During all the time since he left Saul, I have not seen that he has any faults."

## 1 Samuel 29:4

### He will not go down with us into battle

The person here is a synecdoche for the army he commands.  
Alternate translation: "Do not let his army join with our army against our enemies" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### For how else could he make himself acceptable to his master than by taking the heads of our own men?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Here "taking the heads" is a metonym for killing. Alternate translation: "The best way for David to make peace with his master would be by killing our soldiers!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- restore, restoration
- Philistines
- Philistines
- head
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- restore, restoration
- Philistines
- Philistines
- head
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> But the princes of the Philistines were angry with him and said, "Send the man back, that he may return to the place you assigned him. He will not go down with us into battle, for he will turn against us during the fighting. For how else could he make himself acceptable to his master than by taking the heads of our own men?"

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> But the Philistine army commanders were angry with Achish for allowing David's army to be going with them. They said to him, "Send David and his men back to the city that you gave to him! We do not want him to go with us into the battle. If he goes with us, we will have an enemy in our own midst! He would please Saul by killing our own soldiers!"

## 1 Samuel 29:5

### Is this not David of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, 'Saul...ten thousands'?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not trust David—he is the one of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, 'Saul...ten thousands!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### thousands...ten thousands

"1,000s...10,000s" (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> Is this not David of whom they sang one to another in dances, saying, 'Saul has slain his thousands, and David his ten thousands?'"

### UST

<sup>5</sup> Have you forgotten that David is the one about whom the Israelites dance and sing, saying, 'Saul has killed a thousand of our enemies, but David has killed ten thousand of them?'"

## 1 Samuel 29:6

### As Yahweh lives

This is an idiom. "As certainly as Yahweh lives" or "This is a true statement" (See: [Idiom](#))

### your going out and your coming in with me in the army is good

"I am happy to have you go out and come in with me and my army" or "It is good that you go everywhere with me and my army"

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- David
- declare, proclaim, announce
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> Then Achish called David and said to him, "As Yahweh lives, you have been good, and your going out and your coming in with me in the army is good in my view; for I have found nothing wrong with you since the day of your coming to me to this very day. Nevertheless, the princes are not favorable to you.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So Achish summoned David, and said to him, "Just as surely as Yahweh is alive, you have been loyal to me. I would like very much for you to fight along with my army. Since the day that you came to me, I have not found that you have any faults. But the other kings do not trust you.

## 1 Samuel 29:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Philistines

### Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Philistines

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> So now return and go in peace, so that you do not displease the princes of the Philistines.”

### UST

<sup>7</sup> So all of you go back home, and I hope to do anything that the other kings of Philistia will not be pleased with.”

## 1 Samuel 29:8

### my master the king

David speaks as if Achish were another person so that Achish will think David respects him. Alternate translation: "you, my master and king" (See: [Pronouns](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- David
- king, kingdom, kingship

#### ULT

<sup>8</sup> David said to Achish, "But what have I done? What have you found in your servant as long as I have been before you to this day, that I may not go and fight against the enemies of my master the king?"

#### UST

<sup>8</sup> David replied, "What wrong have I done? Since the day that I first came to you until today, have I done anything that you think is evil? Your majesty, why will you not allow me to go and fight against your enemies?"

## 1 Samuel 29:9

### nevertheless, the princes

“even though that is true, this is more important: the princes” or  
“however, the princes”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Philistines
- David
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### Translation Words - UST

- God
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- Philistines
- David
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

#### ULT

<sup>9</sup> Achish answered and said to David, “I know that you are as blameless in my sight as an angel of God; nevertheless, the princes of the Philistines have said, ‘He must not go up with us to the battle.’”

#### UST

<sup>9</sup> Achish replied, “I know I can trust you as much as I could trust an angel from God. But the commanders of my army have said, ‘We will not allow David and his men to go with us into the battle.’”

## 1 Samuel 29:10

### your master

The reader should understand that Achish is speaking of Saul.

### have light

“can see with the morning sun”

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**10** So now rise up early in the morning with the servants of your master who have come with you; as soon as you are up early in the morning and have light, go away.”

### UST

**10** So early tomorrow morning you and your men must leave. Get up as soon as it gets light and leave.”

## 1 Samuel 29:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- Philistines
- David
- earth, earthen, earthly

### Translation Words - UST

- restore, restoration
- Philistines
- David
- earth, earthen, earthly

### ULT

**11** So David rose up early, he and his men, to leave in the morning, to return into the land of the Philistines. But the Philistines went up to Jezreel.

### UST

**11** So David and his men got up early the following morning and returned to the area where the Philistine people lived. But the Philistine army went up to the city of Jezreel.

## **1 Samuel 30**

### **1 Samuel 30 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **David fights the Amalekites**

When David and his men arrive home, they find the Amalekites have raided Ziklag and taken everything. They catch and destroy them and bring back all of their goods and families. Then David sends gifts to all the cities in Judah through which they had traveled.

## 1 Samuel 30:1

### Ziklag

Ziklag is a city in the southern part of Judah. This was where David and his men kept their families.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### ULT

<sup>1</sup> It came about, when David and his men had come to Ziklag on the third day, that the Amalekites had made a raid upon the Negev and on Ziklag. They attacked Ziklag, burned it,

#### UST

<sup>1</sup> Three days later, when David and his men arrived at Ziklag, they discovered that men of the Amalek people group had raided Ziklag and some towns in the southern Judean wilderness. They had destroyed Ziklag and burned down all the buildings.

## 1 Samuel 30:2

### they

the Amalekites

### both small and great

Possible meanings are 1) “both unimportant people and important people” or 2) “both physically small and physically large.”

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> and captured the women and everyone who was in it, both small and great. They killed no one, but carried them off as they went on their way.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> They had captured the women and the children and everyone else, and had taken them away. But they had not killed anyone.

## 1 Samuel 30:3

### their wives...sons...daughters

belonging to David and his men

### it was burned, and their wives...daughters were taken captive

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “they saw that someone had burned it and taken their wives...captive” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- David
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> When David and his men came to the city, it was burned, and their wives, their sons, and their daughters were taken captive.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> When David and his men came to Ziklag, they saw that the town had been burned, and that their wives and sons and daughters had been captured and taken away.

## 1 Samuel 30:4

### the people that were with him

These were mainly his army of men.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong

#### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then David and the people that were with him raised their voices and wept until they had no more power to weep.

#### UST

<sup>4</sup> David and his men cried loudly, until they were so weak that they could not cry anymore.

## 1 Samuel 30:5

### General Information:

David finds strength in Yahweh after the raid.

### Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman

"Ahinoam from Jezreel"

### Nabal the Carmelite

"Nabal the man from Carmel"

### Ahinoam...Abigail

women's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [captive](#), [captivate](#), [captivity](#), [catch](#), [captured](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [captive](#), [captivate](#), [captivity](#), [catch](#), [captured](#)

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> David's two wives were taken captive, Ahinoam the Jezreelite woman, and Abigail the wife of Nabal the Carmelite.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> David's two wives, Ahinoam and Abigail, had also been taken away.

## 1 Samuel 30:6

### distressed

suffering

### all the people were bitter in spirit

The word “bitter” is a metaphor for the desire to rebel. The word “spirit” is a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: “all the people were ready to rebel against David” or “all the people were very unhappy” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

### David strengthened himself in Yahweh, his God

Possible meanings are 1) “David took courage because he knew Yahweh his God would help him” or 2) “Yahweh his God made David strong.”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

#### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- God
- Yahweh
- David
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> David was greatly distressed, for the people were talking about stoning him, for all the people were bitter in spirit, each man for his sons and daughters; but David strengthened himself in Yahweh, his God.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> David's men were threatening to kill him by throwing stones at him, because they were very angry because their sons and daughters had been taken away. David was very distressed, but Yahweh his God gave him strength.

## 1 Samuel 30:7

### General Information:

David seeks Yahweh's direction in dealing with the raid on his people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- priest, priesthood
- David
- David

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- priest, priesthood
- David
- David

### ULT

<sup>7</sup> David said to Abiathar son of Ahimelech, the priest, "I beg you, bring the ephod here for me." Abiathar brought the ephod to David.

### UST

<sup>7</sup> Then David did not know what to do, so he said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring to me the sacred apron and the sacred vest." So Abiathar brought them,

## 1 Samuel 30:8

### David prayed to Yahweh for direction

The abstract noun “direction” can be translated as a clause. Alternate translation: “David prayed that Yahweh would tell David what David should do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### pursue

chase and try to catch

### Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- David
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- David
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> David prayed to Yahweh for direction, saying, “If I pursue after this troop, will I overtake them?” Yahweh answered him, “Pursue, for you will certainly overtake them, and you will surely recover everything.”

### UST

<sup>8</sup> and David asked Yahweh, “Should I and my men pursue the men who took our families? Will we be able to catch up to them?” Yahweh answered by means of the stones in the sacred vest: “Yes, pursue them. You will catch up to them, and you will be able to rescue your families.”

## 1 Samuel 30:9

### six hundred men

600 men (See: [Numbers](#))

### brook

small stream

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> So David went, he and the six hundred men who were with him; they came to the brook Besor, where those who were left behind stayed.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> So David and the six hundred men who were with him left, and they came to the ravine of Besor. Some of his men stayed there with some of their supplies.

## 1 Samuel 30:10

### kept pursuing

“kept chasing them, trying to catch them”

### four hundred men

400 men (See: [Numbers](#))

### two hundred

200 men (See: [Numbers](#))

### who were so weak

They were tired from their own raids and now in pursuit of the Amalekites. They no longer had the strength to continue.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)

### ULT

**10** But David kept pursuing, he and four hundred men; for two hundred had stayed behind, who were so weak that they could not go over the brook Besor.

### UST

**10** David and four hundred men continued to pursue the men who captured their families. The other two hundred men stayed there at the ravine, because they were so exhausted that they could not cross the ravine.

## 1 Samuel 30:11

### an Egyptian in a field

He was left there to die from the Amalekite raiding party.

#### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- bread
- devour

#### Translation Words - UST

- David
- bread
- devour

#### ULT

**11** They found an Egyptian in a field and brought him to David; they gave him bread, and he ate; they gave him water to drink;

#### UST

**11** As David and the four hundred men were going, they saw a man from Egypt in a field; so they took him to David. They gave the man some water to drink and some food to eat.

## 1 Samuel 30:12

### clusters of raisins

“clusters of dried grapes”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- spirit, spiritual
- bread
- devour
- devour
- return

#### Translation Words - UST

- spirit, spiritual
- bread
- devour
- devour
- return

#### ULT

**12** and they gave him a piece of a cake of figs and two clusters of raisins. When he had eaten, he gained strength again, for he had eaten no bread nor drunk any water for three days and three nights.

#### UST

**12** They also gave him a piece of fig cake and two clusters of raisins. The man had not had anything to eat or drink for three days and nights, but after he ate and drank he felt refreshed.

## 1 Samuel 30:13

### David said to him

David questioned the Egyptian slave.

### three days ago

"three days in the past"

### three days

3 days (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- pray, prayer
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- pray, prayer
- David
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### ULT

**13** David said to him, "To whom do you belong? Where do you come from?" He said, "I am a young man of Egypt, servant to an Amalekite; my master left me because three days ago I fell sick.

### UST

**13** David asked him, "Who is your master? And where do you come from?" He replied, "I am from Egypt. I am a slave of a man from the Amalek people group. Three days ago my master left me here, because I was sick and I was not able to go with them.

## 1 Samuel 30:14

### a raid

an attack on a town to take property

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Translation Words - UST

- Judah
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### ULT

**14** We made a raid on the Negev of the Kerethites, and what belongs to Judah, and the Negev of Caleb, and we burned Ziklag."

### UST

**14** We had raided the southern Judean wilderness of the Kerethites, and some other towns in Judah, and the southern Judean wilderness of the Calebites. We also burned Ziklag."

## 1 Samuel 30:15

### raiding party

a group of armed warriors who attack people or places unexpectedly

### you will not...betray me up into the hands of my master

Here “hands” refers to control. Alternate translation: “you will not... violate the trust I have in you by allowing my master to control me again” (See: [Metonymy](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- David
- hand
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- David
- hand
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

#### ULT

**15** David said to him, “Will you bring me down to this raiding party?” The Egyptian said, “Swear to me by God that you will not kill me or betray me up into the hands of my master, and I will bring you down to this raiding party.”

#### UST

**15** David asked him, “Can you lead us to this group of raiders?” He replied, “Yes, I will do that if you ask God to listen while you promise that you will not kill me or give me back to my master. If you promise that, I will take you to them.”

## 1 Samuel 30:16

### booty

the goods they had stolen in the raid

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [devour](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [devour](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

#### ULT

**16** When the Egyptian had brought David down, the raiders were spread out over all the ground, eating and drinking and dancing because of all the booty they had taken out of the land of the Philistines and from the land of Judah.

#### UST

**16** David agreed to do that, so the man from Egypt led David and his men to where the men from the Amalek people group were. Those men were lying on the ground, eating and drinking and celebrating because they had captured many things from the regions of Philistia and Judah.

## 1 Samuel 30:17

### twilight

the time just after the sun goes down until the sky is dark

### four hundred

400 (See: [Numbers](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

### ULT

**17** David attacked them from the twilight to the evening of the next day. Not a man escaped except for four hundred young men, who rode on camels and fled.

### UST

**17** David and his men fought against them from sunset that day until the evening of the following day. Four hundred of them escaped and rode away on camels, but none of the others escaped.

## 1 Samuel 30:18

### recovered...rescued

“got back...got back.” These two words translate the same Hebrew word. Your language may also have a word for a person getting his own property back from the person who stole it that is different from the word for a person getting his wife back from those who have captured her.

### rescued his two wives

“got his two wives back” or “saved his two wives from danger”

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### ULT

**18** David recovered all that the Amalekites had taken; and David rescued his two wives.

### UST

**18** David rescued his two wives, and he and his men got back everything else that the men of the Amalek people group had taken.

## 1 Samuel 30:19

### Nothing was missing

“None of the items the Amalekites had stolen were lost”

### neither small nor great

Possible meanings are 1) “neither unimportant people nor important people” or 2) “neither physically small nor physically large.” See how you translated similar words in [1 Samuel 30:2](#).

### booty

goods that the Amalekites had stolen. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:16](#).

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [David](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [David](#)

### ULT

**19** Nothing was missing, neither small nor great, neither sons nor daughters, neither booty, nor anything that the raiders had taken for themselves. David brought back everything.

### UST

**19** Nothing was missing. They took all their people back to Ziklag—young people and old people, their wives, their sons and their daughters. They also recovered all the other things that the men of the Amalek people group had taken from Ziklag.

## 1 Samuel 30:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- David
- David
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Translation Words - UST

- David
- David
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### ULT

<sup>20</sup> David took all the flocks and the herds, which the men drove ahead of the other cattle. They said, "This is David's booty."

### UST

<sup>20</sup> They took with them the sheep and cattle that had been captured, and his men caused these animals to go in front of the rest of the cattle; they said, "These are animals that we captured in the battle; they belong to David!"

# 1 Samuel 30:21

## two hundred

200 (See: [Numbers](#))

## the brook Besor

a small stream or creek named Besor. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

## greeted them

spoke to them in a friendly way

## Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#) (2)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

## Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [David](#)
- [David](#) (2)
- [David](#)
- [David](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)

## ULT

<sup>21</sup> David came to the two hundred men who had been too weak to follow him, the ones the others had made to stay at the brook Besor. These men went ahead to meet David and the people who were with him. When David came to these people, he greeted them.

## UST

<sup>21</sup> David and his men got back to where the other two hundred men were waiting, the men who did not go with David because they were very exhausted. They had stayed at the ravine of Besor. When they saw David and his men coming, they went out to greet them. And David greeted them also.

## 1 Samuel 30:22

### the booty

the goods they had taken from the enemy in battle. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:16](#).

### we have recovered

“we have regained” or “we have gotten back”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#) (2)

#### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#) (2)

#### ULT

**22** Then all the wicked men and worthless fellows among those who had gone with David said, “Because these men did not go with us, we will not give them any of the booty that we have recovered. Except that each man may take his wife and children, lead them away, and go.”

#### UST

**22** But some of the men who had gone with David, men who were evil and troublemakers, said, “These two hundred men did not go with us. So we should not give to them any of the things that we recovered. Each of them should take only his wife and children and go back to their homes.”

## 1 Samuel 30:23

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Yahweh
- David
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Yahweh
- David
- hand

### ULT

<sup>23</sup> Then David said, "You must not act like this, my brothers, with what Yahweh has given to us. He has preserved us and given into our hand the raiders who came against us.

### UST

<sup>23</sup> David replied, "No, my fellow Israelites, that would not be right. Yahweh has protected us and enabled us to defeat the enemies who attacked our town.

## 1 Samuel 30:24

### Who will listen to you in this matter?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement: Alternate translation: "No one will listen to you in this matter." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

### as the share is for anyone who goes

The abstract noun "share" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "as what belongs to anyone who goes" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

### anyone who goes into battle

the warriors who actually fought the enemy in war

### will share and share alike

"will make sure that all receive the same amount"

### anyone who waits by the baggage

the people who supported the warriors by managing and guarding their supplies

### baggage

belongings that the soldiers left behind when they went into battle

#### ULT

**24** Who will listen to you in this matter? For as the share is for anyone who goes into battle, so also will the share be for anyone who waits by the baggage; they will share and share alike."

#### UST

**24** Who will pay attention to you if you say things like that? The men who stayed here with our supplies will get the same amount that the men who went into the battle will get. They will all receive the same amount."

## 1 Samuel 30:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites

### Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites

#### ULT

<sup>25</sup> It has been so from that day to this day, for David made it a statute and a decree for Israel.

#### UST

<sup>25</sup> David made that to be a law for the Israelite people, and that is still a law in Israel.

## 1 Samuel 30:26

### Ziklag

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### booty

goods that David had taken from the Amalekites after the battle. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 30:16](#).

### a present

“a gift”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [David](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [David](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)

### ULT

**26** When David came to Ziklag, he sent some of the booty to the elders of Judah, to his friends, saying, “See, here is a present for you from the booty from Yahweh’s enemies.”

### UST

**26** When David and all the others arrived in Ziklag, David sent to his friends who were leaders in Judah some of the things that they had captured from the Amalek people group. He said to them, “Here is a present for you. These are things that we took from Yahweh’s enemies.”

## 1 Samuel 30:27

### Connecting Statement:

The writer begins a list of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

### Bethel...Jattir

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>27</sup> He also sent some to the elders who were in Bethel, and to those who were in Ramoth of the South, and to those who were in Jattir,

#### UST

<sup>27</sup> Here is a list of the cities and towns to whose leaders David sent gifts: Bethel, Ramoth in the southern part of Judah, Jattir,

## 1 Samuel 30:28

### Connecting Statement:

The writer continues the list that began in [1 Samuel 30:27](#) of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

### Aroer...Siphmoth...Eshtemoa

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>28</sup> and to those who were in Aroer, and to those who were in Siphmoth, and to those who were in Eshtemoa.

#### UST

<sup>28</sup> Aroer, Siphmoth, Eshtemoa.

## 1 Samuel 30:29

### Connecting Statement:

The writer continues the list that began in [1 Samuel 30:27](#) of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

### Rakal

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Jerahmeelites...Kenites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>29</sup> He also sent some to the elders who were in Rakal, and to those who were in the cities of the Jerahmeelites, and to those who were in the cities of the Kenites,

#### UST

<sup>29</sup> Also Rakal, the cities where the descendants of Jehrameel and the cities where the Kenite people group live,

## 1 Samuel 30:30

### Connecting Statement:

The writer continues the list that began in [1 Samuel 30:27](#) of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

### Hormah...Bor Ashan...Athak

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### ULT

<sup>30</sup> and to those who were in Hormah,  
and to those who were in Bor Ashan,  
and to those who were in Athak,

#### UST

<sup>30</sup> Hormah, Bor Ashan, Athak,

## 1 Samuel 30:31

### Connecting Statement:

The writer finishes the list that began in [1 Samuel 30:27](#) of towns whose elders received gifts from David.

### Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [David](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

### ULT

<sup>31</sup> and to those who were in Hebron, and to all the places where David himself and his men habitually went.

### UST

<sup>31</sup> Hebron, and all the other places where David and his men had often gone.

## **1 Samuel 31**

### **1 Samuel 31 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This is the end of the section on Saul, but the book continues in 2 Samuel 1.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Saul's punishment**

Saul receives his punishment from God: death for his disobedience and resisting the will of God. (See: [will of God](#))

## 1 Samuel 31:1

### Now the Philistines fought against Israel

This battle was the result of the conflict between David and the Philistines in [1 Samuel 29:11](#). The writer has finished telling the story of David that began in [1 Samuel 30:1](#), and now he tells about the battle between the Israelites and the Philistines.

### against Israel

“Israel” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “against the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

### Mount Gilboa

This is the name of a mountain (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

### ULT

<sup>1</sup> Now the Philistines fought against Israel. The men of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down dead on Mount Gilboa.

### UST

<sup>1</sup> Later, the Philistines again fought against the Israelites. The Israelites ran away from them, and many Israelites were killed on Mount Gilboa.

## 1 Samuel 31:2

### closely pursued Saul and his sons

“chased Saul and three of his sons”

### Abinadab, and Malki-Shua

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Philistines
- Philistines

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Philistines
- Philistines

#### ULT

<sup>2</sup> The Philistines closely pursued Saul and his sons. The Philistines killed Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malki-Shua, his sons.

#### UST

<sup>2</sup> The Philistines caught up with Saul and his three sons, and they killed three of his sons, Jonathan and Abinadab and Malki-Shua.

## 1 Samuel 31:3

### The battle went heavily against Saul

This is an idiom. "Saul's army began to lose the battle" (See: [Idiom](#))

#### ULT

<sup>3</sup> The battle went heavily against Saul, and the archers overtook him. He was in severe pain because of them.

#### UST

<sup>3</sup> The fighting was very fierce around Saul. When the Philistine archers caught up with Saul, they wounded him badly with their arrows.

## 1 Samuel 31:4

### armor bearer

The armor bearer carried the large shield of his commanding officer and other weapons. He protected the commanding officer during a battle.

### these uncircumcised

The nominal adjective “uncircumcised” can be translated as an adjective. Not being circumcised is a metonym for being foreigners. Alternate translation: “these men who have not been circumcised” or “these non-Israelite men” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Metonymy](#))

### would not

The ellipsis can be filled in. Alternate translation: “would not do what Saul had told him to do” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

### took his own sword and fell on it

“killed himself with his own sword”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsman](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsman](#)
- [bow](#), [bow down](#), [knelt](#), [bend](#), [bend the knee](#)

### ULT

<sup>4</sup> Then Saul said to his armor bearer, “Draw your sword and thrust me through with it. Otherwise, these uncircumcised will come and abuse me.” But his armor bearer would not, for he was very afraid. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it.

### UST

<sup>4</sup> Saul said to the man who was carrying his weapons, “Take out your sword and kill me with it, in order that these heathen Philistines will not be able to thrust their swords into me and make fun of me while I am dying.” But the man who was carrying Saul's weapons was terrified, and refused to do that. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it. The sword pierced his body, and he died.

## 1 Samuel 31:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Translation Words - UST

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### ULT

<sup>5</sup> When his armor bearer saw that Saul was dead, he likewise fell on his sword and died with him.

### UST

<sup>5</sup> When the man carrying his weapons saw that Saul was dead, he also threw himself on his own sword and died.

## 1 Samuel 31:6

### that same day

“on that one day”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,

#### ULT

<sup>6</sup> So Saul died, his three sons, and his armor bearer—these men all died together that same day.

#### UST

<sup>6</sup> So Saul, three of his sons, and the man who carried Saul's weapons, all died on that same day.

## 1 Samuel 31:7

### lived in them

lived in the cities the men of Israel had left

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Philistines

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Jordan River, Jordan
- Philistines

#### ULT

<sup>7</sup> When the men of Israel who were on the other side of the valley, and those beyond the Jordan, saw that the men of Israel had fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they abandoned their cities and fled, and the Philistines came and lived in them.

#### UST

<sup>7</sup> When the Israelite people on the north side of the Valley of Jezreel and on the east side of the Jordan River heard that the Israelite army had run away and that Saul and his sons had died, they left their towns and ran away. Then the Philistines came and occupied their cities.

## 1 Samuel 31:8

### strip the dead

take the armor and weapons off the dead Israelites' bodies

### Mount Gilboa

a mountain range overlooking the Valley of Jezreel in northern Israel, south of Nazareth (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

<sup>8</sup> It came about on the next day, when the Philistines came to strip the dead, that they found Saul and his three sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.

### UST

<sup>8</sup> The next day, when the Philistines came to take away the weapons of the dead Israelite soldiers, they found the bodies of Saul and his three sons on Mount Gilboa.

## 1 Samuel 31:9

### the land of the Philistines throughout

“all areas of the land of the Philistines”

### to carry the news to their idols’ temples and to the people

“to speak the news inside the temples and to the people”

### their idols’ temples

the buildings where they worshiped their idols

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philistines
- people, people group,
- cut off
- head
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Philistines
- people, people group,
- cut off
- head
- house

### ULT

<sup>9</sup> They cut off his head and stripped off his armor, and sent messengers into the land of the Philistines throughout to carry the news to their idols’ temples and to the people.

### UST

<sup>9</sup> They cut off Saul’s head and took his weapons. Then they sent messengers throughout their land to proclaim the news in the temples, where they kept their idols, and to the other people, that their army had defeated the Israelites.

## 1 Samuel 31:10

### Ashtoreths

ancient false goddesses and idols, also called “Asherah” or “Astarte”

### fastened

attached, probably with a large spike or nail

### Beth Shan

the name of a city (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [house](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [house](#)

### ULT

**10** They put his armor in the temple of the Ashtoreths, and they fastened his body to the city wall of Beth Shan.

### UST

**10** They put Saul's weapons in the temple of their goddess Asherah. They also fastened the bodies of Saul and his sons to the wall that surrounded the city of Beth Shan.

## 1 Samuel 31:11

### Jabesh

This is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 11:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

### what the Philistines had done to Saul

“how the Philistines had dishonored Saul”

### Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

### Translation Words - UST

- [Philistines](#)

### ULT

**11** When the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead heard of what the Philistines had done to Saul,

### UST

**11** When the people who lived in Jabesh in the region of Gilead heard what the Philistines had done to Saul's corpse,

## 1 Samuel 31:12

### all night

“throughout the whole night”

#### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

#### Translation Words - UST

- son
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

#### ULT

<sup>12</sup> all the fighting men arose and went all night and took the body of Saul and the bodies of his sons from the wall of Beth Shan. They went to Jabesh and burned them there.

#### UST

<sup>12</sup> all their bravest soldiers walked all night to Beth Shan. They took the corpses of Saul and his sons down from the city wall, and they took them back to Jabesh and burned the corpses there.

## 1 Samuel 31:13

### a tamarisk tree

This is a type of tree. See how you translated this in [1 Samuel 22:6](#).  
Alternate translation: "a large shade tree" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

### Translation Words - ULT

- fast, fasting

### Translation Words - UST

- fast, fasting

### ULT

**13** Then they took their bones and buried them under a tamarisk tree in Jabesh, and fasted for seven days.

### UST

**13** They took the bones and buried them under a big tamarisk tree. Then they fasted for seven days.



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 12**

# Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

## Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

## Examples from the Bible

...from **\*childhood\*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

**But** godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.  
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.  
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

**Today** salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...  
 Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

**The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider** slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

**He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the** purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:11](#); [1:16](#); [1:27](#); [8:11](#); [10:25](#); [14:15](#); [15:23](#); [16:21](#); [17:26](#); [20:14](#); [23:21](#); [25:6](#); [25:39](#); [30:8](#); [30:24](#))

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)  
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

**It would be better for him if a millstone** were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

**A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:28; 2:3; 2:4; 2:9; 2:10; 2:30; 3:7; 3:14; 3:20; 4:2; 4:10; 4:11; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:21; 4:22; 7:10; 7:13; 7:14; 10:20; 10:21; 13:4; 13:8; 13:19; 14:13; 14:41; 14:42; 16:23; 17:5; 17:31; 18:1; 18:19; 18:25; 18:30; 19:6; 19:11; 19:19; 19:21; 20:3; 20:18; 20:31; 20:34; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 22:6; 22:14; 23:7; 23:13; 23:21; 23:22; 23:25; 24:1; 24:20; 25:12; 25:15; 25:17; 25:21; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:32; 25:33; 25:34; 25:39; 26:19; 26:25; 27:4; 30:3)

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

**it will be more tolerable for** Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.  
or:  
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

**Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For** they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

**Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

**it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [2:15](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [5:3](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [6:20](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [Notes](#); [9:26](#); [10:12](#); [Notes](#); [12:3](#); [12:11](#); [12:20](#); [12:23](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:22](#); [14:32](#); [14:33](#); [14:39](#); [14:41](#); [15:26](#); [15:27](#); [15:28](#); [16:4](#); [16:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:25](#); [17:52](#); [18:13](#); [19:15](#); [19:24](#); [Notes](#); [20:8](#); [21:7](#); [21:11](#); [21:15](#); [22:7](#); [22:18](#); [22:19](#); [25:14](#); [25:18](#); [25:25](#); [25:26](#); [25:42](#); [26:19](#))

# Background Information

## Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

**Example** - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

## A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

**With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

**Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.**  
 Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

**"When Abram was eighty-six years old,** Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

**John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-newevent]]

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 5:5](#); [9:1](#); [9:9](#); [9:15](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [25:43](#); [25:44](#); [28:3](#))

# Biblical Distance

## Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspace was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

## Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

## Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

**They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits** ; its width will be **one kubit and a half** ; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)** ; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**<sup>1</sup>; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**<sup>2</sup>; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**<sup>1</sup>; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**<sup>2</sup>; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits  
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 17:4](#))

## Biblical Money

### Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

### Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

**The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

"The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

"The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** <sup>1</sup>, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. <sup>2</sup>"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] five hundred days's wages  
[2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** <sup>1</sup>, and the other owed **fifty denarii**."  
(Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)  
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 9:8](#); [13:21](#))

# Biblical Volume

## Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheq	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

## Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

## When the unit of measure is stated

### Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

### Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

**For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **twenty-two liters**."

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (twenty quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters <sup>1</sup>, and 220 liters <sup>2</sup> of seed will yield only twenty-two liters <sup>3</sup>."

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

## When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

**whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

**whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:24](#); [17:17](#); [25:18](#))

# Biblical Weight

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

## Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

## Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

**The bronze from the offering weighed** seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 shekels**.  
1 "

The footnote would look like:

[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)  
[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 17:5](#); [17:7](#))

## Connecting Words and Phrases

### Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to connect parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences.

Usually, we want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting Words and Phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the underlined Connecting Words:

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Connecting Words or Phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after. Very often, the Connecting Words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

**Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word "now" connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a Connecting Word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context. Some languages do not use Connecting Words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using Connecting Words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how Connecting Words and Phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

### Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a Connecting Word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

### The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different Connecting Words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the

right Connecting Word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information simply click the colored word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause – a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause – a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause – a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship – one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition – the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary to Fact Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- Goal Relationship – a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship – a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, which is the result.
- Contrast Relationship – one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

## Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, **but** instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

The word “but” introduces something that **contrasts** with what was said before. The **contrast** here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a **sequence** of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

**Therefore** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the **reason** for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” **contrasts** what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, **for** we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. **Instead**, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the **reason** for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” **contrasts** what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).

## General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

**Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men."**  
**Immediately they left the nets and went after him.** (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus **because** he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so".

Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men." **So** immediately they left the nets and went after him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

**Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and**

teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

**I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but**

instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "but" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore

whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

**Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.  
**And** whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 28:2](#))

## Copy or Borrow Words

### Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Examples from the Bible

He saw a **fig** tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

### Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

אֶפְרַיִם - A man's name in Hebrew letters.

"Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

**Zephaniah** - This is a man's name.

"Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

**Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".

"Sefania"

"Sefanaia"

"Sefanaya"

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 14:41](#))

# Direct and Indirect Quotations

## Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

## Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

## Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

## Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

**He instructed him to tell no one, but told him,** “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

**He instructed him,** to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_quotations](http://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 16:2](#))

## Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

### Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

### Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

...**in order** not

to be unfruitful\*\*. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

**All things were made through him and** without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 14:6](#))

# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

## Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:16](#); [17:11](#); [18:28](#); [23:22](#))

# Ellipsis

## Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***  
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

## There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples from the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort...***  
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, ***we are afflicted*** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, ***we are comforted*** for your comfort,...

## Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, ***that I might receive my sight.***" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, ***I want you to heal me so*** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...***Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.*** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...***May you receive*** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...***the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor*** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and ***sinner will not stand in the assembly*** of the righteous

***...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight***

***."*** (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, ***I want you to heal me*** that I might receive my sight."

***He makes Lebanon skip like a calf*** and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 16:2](#); [16:5](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#); [18:7](#); [18:25](#); [21:4](#); [24:14](#); [25:39](#); [31:4](#))

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”  
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

**they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

"they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:19](#); [2:9](#); [2:22](#); [2:30](#); [2:31](#); [9:16](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [15:33](#); [18:17](#); [18:21](#); [18:25](#); [24:3](#); [26:20](#); [28:19](#))

# First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

## Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

[Pronouns](#)

## Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

## Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,  
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

**So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if** each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:16](#); [1:18](#); [16:7](#); [16:16](#); [17:32](#); [17:34](#); [22:15](#); [26:18](#))

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](http://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](http://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:3](#))

# Fractions

## Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULT)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

**a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

## Examples From the Bible

Now to **one half** of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill **a third** of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

## Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

## Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third

of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

**then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths**

of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

...then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

two thirds of a shekel

(1 Samuel 13:21 ULT)

**eight grams** of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UST)

three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

**six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

■ three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9, ULT)

■ **six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:15](#); [8:17](#); [9:8](#))

# Go and Come

## Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

## Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.  
Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land..."

Joseph and Mary **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue.  
Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to **come** to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **go** out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not **come** out in public.

## Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come**

to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

**Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go**

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **come** out in public for five months.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

**When you have** come

to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it...”

**Yahweh said to Noah, “Come**

, you and all your household, into the ark... (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

“Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark...”

**Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go**

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **appear** in public for five months.

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 16:21](#))

# Hendiadys

## Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called “hendiadys.” In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

...his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

## Examples from the Bible

...for I will give you **words and wisdom**... (Luke 21:15 ULT)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

...if you are willing and obedient...(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

## Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you *wise words*

**that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to** his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

. (Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you *words of wisdom*.

**that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to** his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

if you are willing

and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

if you are *willingly obedient*

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

if you are willing and obedient

(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you *obey willingly*

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

**while we look forward to receiving** the blessed hope and appearing of the glory

of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

while we look forward to receiving ***what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing*** of ***Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior.***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Doublet](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 23:27](#))

## How to Translate Names

### Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

### Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

### Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

**Saul** was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

**You went over the** Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

**Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

**She named him** Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

**...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called** Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**<sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

**But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

**It came about in Iconium that** Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#); [1 Samuel 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:5](#); [1:9](#); [1:12](#); [4:1](#); [4:21](#); [6:18](#); [6:21](#); [7:1](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [9:1](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [11:1](#); [11:4](#); [11:8](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:11](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:5](#); [13:17](#); [13:18](#); [14:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:16](#); [14:23](#); [14:31](#); [14:49](#); [14:50](#); [14:51](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [15:20](#); [15:21](#); [15:34](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [17:2](#); [17:19](#); [19:22](#); [20:19](#); [21:1](#); [21:7](#); [21:9](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [22:5](#); [22:9](#); [22:18](#); [22:19](#); [22:20](#); [23:1](#); [23:6](#); [23:14](#); [23:15](#); [23:19](#); [23:24](#); [25:2](#); [25:3](#); [25:43](#); [25:44](#); [26:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:5](#); [26:6](#); [27:2](#); [27:3](#); [27:6](#); [27:8](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [28:4](#); [28:7](#); [30:5](#); [30:21](#); [30:26](#); [30:27](#); [30:28](#); [30:29](#); [30:30](#); [31:1](#); [31:2](#); [31:8](#); [31:10](#); [31:11](#))

# Hyperbole

## Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

**Hyperbole:** This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Examples from the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

**Can anything good come out of Nazareth?** (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways  
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

**The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops** as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

**And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

**The whole**

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”  
or:  
**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

**The whole**

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:8](#); [Notes](#); [13:5](#); [14:26](#); [14:33](#); [14:40](#); [14:45](#); [18:6](#); [21:11](#); [22:2](#); [25:1](#))

# Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...,” “What if the sun stopped shining...,” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...,” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

## Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

## Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”  
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, ***if you had been here, my brother would not have died.***” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

### Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. ***If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.*** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, ***if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?***” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### Hypothetical situation in the future

***Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved;*** but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “***If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.*** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. ***I wish that you were either cold or hot!*** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

### Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_hypo](http://ufw.io/figs_hypo).

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 14:30](#); [14:39](#))

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

**Purpose:** An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."  
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

**I am not worthy that you should enter** under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

**Let these words** go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

**Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1 General Notes; 1:15; 1:26; 1:27; 2:9; 2:10; 2:30; 2:35; Notes; 3:11; 3:17; 4:9; 4:13; Notes; 5:6; 5:9; 5:12; 6:3; 6:6; 6:13; Notes; 7:3; 7:10; 8:5; Notes; 10:6; 10:9; 10:26; Notes; 12:2; 13:14; 13:15; 14:12; 14:19; 14:27; 14:29; Notes; 15:10; 15:24; 15:29; 15:32; 16:18; 16:22; 17:35; 18:13; 18:15; 18:16; 18:25; 19:5; 19:11; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:9; 20:13; 20:19; 20:30; 22:15; 22:17; 22:18; 23:15; 23:16; 23:23; 24:4; 24:5; 25:11; 25:28; 25:35; 25:39; 26:2; 27:8; 28:21; 29:6; 31:3)

# Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

## Description

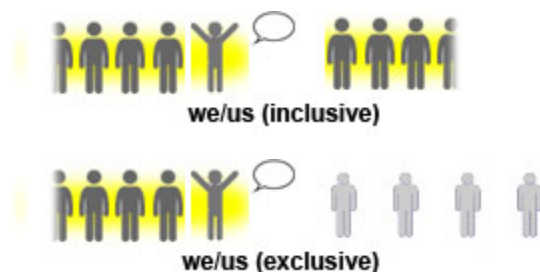
Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

## Examples from the Bible

### Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

### Exclusive

**we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-exclusive\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 26:11](#))

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

## Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples from the Bible

***How well you reject the commandment of God*** so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. ***"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."*** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?  
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?  
***Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!"*** (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

**You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

**You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

**I did not come to call** righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

**You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

**"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob.** "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

**Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

**Can you find the way back to their houses for them?**

Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? ***You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:30](#))

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,  
for from you will come a ruler  
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

**For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was** not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

**Now when it became day, there was** no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3:19](#); [13:14](#); [14:36](#); [14:45](#); [15:3](#); [15:29](#); [20:37](#); [25:7](#); [25:21](#); [25:31](#); [26:9](#); [29:3](#))

# Merism

## Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

"I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

**Alpha and Omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

## Examples from the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere".

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone".

## Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

**He will bless those who honor him, both** young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:6](#); [2:7](#); [3:12](#); [3:20](#); [5:9](#); [14:6](#); [20:2](#))

# Metaphor

## Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

### Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

### Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

**It was because of your** hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick against a pointed stick*.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock *under which I can hide from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick*.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

**I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.  
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:18](#); [Notes](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [3:6](#); [3:16](#); [3:19](#); [4:16](#); [8:3](#); [13:4](#); [14:11](#); [14:27](#); [15:11](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [16:7](#); [16:22](#); [17:28](#); [17:43](#); [17:44](#); [17:46](#); [18:1](#); [18:5](#); [18:17](#); [18:21](#); [Notes](#); [20:3](#); [20:29](#); [24:11](#); [24:14](#); [24:16](#); [25:8](#); [25:16](#); [25:29](#); [26:17](#); [26:20](#); [26:21](#); [26:24](#); [26:25](#); [27:5](#); [28:17](#); [28:19](#))

# Metonymy

## Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:18; 1:21; Notes; 2:9; 2:27; 2:28; 2:30; 2:31; Notes; 4:13; 5:6; 5:11; 5:12; 6:3; 6:5; 7:3; 7:8; 7:13; 7:14; 8:7; 8:22; 9:16; 10:18; 12:10; 12:15; 12:22; 13:14; 14:7; 14:10; 14:12; 14:26; 14:27; 14:29; 14:36; 14:37; 14:47; 14:48; 15:14; 15:19; 15:20; 15:22; 15:24; 15:29; 15:30; 16:7; 16:22; 17:25; 17:32; 17:37; 17:45; 17:46; 17:47; 18:16; 18:30; 19:5; 19:20; 20:16; 20:30; 21:3; 21:8; 21:12; 22:14; 22:15; 22:16; 22:17; 22:19; 23:1; 23:11; 23:12; 23:14; 23:17; 23:20; 24:6; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:15; 24:20; 24:21; 25:3; 25:13; 25:26; 25:33; 25:35; 25:41; 26:8; 26:11; 26:18; 26:23; 27:5; 29:4; 30:15; 31:1; 31:4)

# Nominal Adjectives

## Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

**He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

## Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

## Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

## Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

**The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of** the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

█ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

**Blessed are** the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

█ Blessed are **people who are meek**...

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 24:13](#); [31:4](#))

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

**(Go back to:** [1 Samuel 4:2; 6:19; 7:2; 9:22; 11:3; 11:8; 13:2; 13:5; 13:15; 14:2; 15:4; 17:16; 17:18; 18:13; 18:25; 18:27; 21:5; 22:2; 22:7; 22:18; 23:13; 24:2; 25:2; 25:13; 25:18; 26:2; 27:2; 29:2; 29:5; 30:9; 30:10; 30:13; 30:17; 30:21](#))

# Order of Events

## Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

## Examples from the Bible

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

## Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

<sup>20</sup> But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. <sup>21</sup> Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

<sup>20</sup> But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. <sup>21</sup> **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

**Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll *after* breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

**<sup>8</sup> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... <sup>10</sup> But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

<sup>8</sup> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... <sup>10</sup> But Joshua *had commanded* the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

**<sup>8</sup> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... <sup>10</sup> But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

<sup>8-10</sup> Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

**Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs\\_events](http://ufw.io/figs_events).

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-newevent\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 17:55](#))

# Ordinal Numbers

## Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

## Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

## Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

## Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.  
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

**A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four**

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

**The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 20:34](#))

# Original Manuscripts

## The Writing of the Original Manuscripts

The Bible was written many hundreds of years ago by God's prophets and apostles as God directed them to write it. The people of Israel spoke Hebrew, so most of the Old Testament books were written in Hebrew. When they lived as strangers in Assyria and Babylon, they learned to speak Aramaic, so some later parts of the Old Testament were written in Aramaic.

This page answers the question: *Is there more information about the Original Language text?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

About three hundred years before Christ was born, Greek became the language of wider communication. Many people in Europe and the Middle East spoke Greek as a second language. So the Old Testament was translated into Greek. When Christ was born, many people in those areas of the world still spoke Greek as a second language, and the New Testament books were all written in Greek.

Back then there were no printers, so the authors wrote these books by hand. These were the original manuscripts. The scribes who copied these manuscripts also did so by hand. These were also manuscripts. These books are extremely important, so the scribes got special training and were very careful to try to copy them accurately.

Over hundreds of years, scribes (and other people as well) made thousands of copies of the Bible books. The manuscripts that the authors originally wrote have all been lost or have fallen apart, so we do not have them. But we do have many of the copies that were written by hand long ago. Some of these copies have survived for many hundreds and even thousands of years.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

[Original Manuscripts](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)

[Textual Variants](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 20:25](#))

# Parallelism

## Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.  
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

## Examples from the Bible

### (1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

### (2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,  
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

### (3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,  
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,  
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,  
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

**Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

**For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:11](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:10](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [14:16](#); [15:3](#); [15:14](#); [15:33](#); [17:12](#); [17:28](#); [20:1](#); [25:10](#); [28:5](#))

## Personification

### Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

### Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

### Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:18](#); [10:7](#); [10:10](#); [14:20](#))

# Predictive Past

## Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;  
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]  
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

## Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

## Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;  
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying, "Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

## Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

**For to us a child** has been born

, to us a son has been given; (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

"For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**;

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am about to hand** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.” (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, “See, I **am handing** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers.”

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 25:26](#))

# Pronouns

## Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]*

## Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

### Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive "We"
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

### Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

### Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

### Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

## Other Types of pronouns

**Reflexive Pronouns** refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw** himself

in the mirror. - The word "himself" refers to John.

**Interrogative Pronouns** are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who

built the house?

**Relative Pronouns** mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house** that

John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.

- **I saw the man** who

built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

**Demonstrative Pronouns** are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen** this

here?

- **Who is** that over there?

**Indefinite pronouns** are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to** anyone

.

- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3:9](#); [3:10](#); [4:7](#); [4:8](#); [19:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [20:13](#); [20:29](#); [23:10](#); [23:11](#); [23:20](#); [25:17](#); [25:24](#); [25:25](#); [25:26](#); [25:27](#); [25:28](#); [25:29](#); [25:30](#); [25:31](#); [25:39](#); [25:41](#); [26:19](#); [26:20](#); [26:23](#); [27:5](#); [27:8](#); [27:9](#); [27:12](#); [28:2](#); [28:22](#); [29:8](#))

## Proverbs

### Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer *general advice* to a person about how to live his life.

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[r://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Hatred stirs up conflicts,  
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.  
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,  
yet it prepares its food in the summer,  
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

### Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

### Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,  
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,  
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

### Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,  
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

**Like** snow in summer

or rain in harvest,

**so a fool does not deserve honor.** (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain in the harvest season;  
And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

**Do not boast about tomorrow** (Proverbs 27:1 ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,  
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,  
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 10:12](#); [19:24](#))

## Quotes within Quotes

### Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

### Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

### Examples from the Bible

#### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

#### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

#### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, "...I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, ***"He is my brother."***' " (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

#### A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: ***'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'***" " " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

## Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

**Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things**

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

**Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.' "** (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them **that** at twilight **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be filled with bread. Then **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

**They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"** (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 16:2](#))

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

### Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

### Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

***Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

***What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?*** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

**Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

**Or** what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:8; Notes; 2:23; 2:25; 2:27; 2:29; Notes; 4:8; 6:6; 6:20; Notes; 9:20; 9:21; Notes; 10:1; 10:11; 10:12; 10:27; 12:3; 12:17; 13:11; 14:30; 14:45; Notes; 15:17; 15:19; 15:22; Notes; 16:1; 16:2; Notes; 17:8; 17:25; 17:26; 17:28; 17:29; 17:43; 18:8; 18:18; 18:23; 19:5; 19:17; 20:1; 20:2; 20:8; 20:9; 20:12; 20:14; 20:30; 20:32; 20:37; Notes; 21:11; 21:14; 21:15; 22:7; 22:14; 22:15; 23:3; 23:19; 24:9; 24:14; 24:19; 25:10; Notes; 26:1; 26:9; 26:14; 26:15; 26:18; 27:5; Notes; 29:3; 29:4; 29:5; 30:24)

# Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as”, or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

**For the word of God is living and active and sharper** than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

**If you have faith even as small** as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings  
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 26:20](#))

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

**My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

**the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:18](#); [1:28](#); [Notes](#); [2:25](#); [2:36](#); [4:10](#); [8:21](#); [10:4](#); [12:16](#); [15:8](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [20:16](#); [20:17](#); [21:13](#); [22:17](#); [22:18](#); [22:19](#); [Notes](#); [23:5](#); [24:10](#); [25:35](#); [25:39](#); [27:1](#); [28:5](#); [28:9](#); [28:22](#); [29:4](#); [30:6](#))

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[Original Manuscripts](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

<sup>53</sup> [Then every man went to his own house.... <sup>11</sup> She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] [2]

[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand.

<sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.

It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup>[1]

[1] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>

There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." <sup>16</sup>[1]

[1] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup>

There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]

[1] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)

[Original Manuscripts](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 14:18](#))

# Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

## Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

## Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

## Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

## Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

**Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves**

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

**your sins...will be white like** snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

**Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with** myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

**We have here only five loaves of** bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 10:5](#); [22:6](#); [26:20](#); [31:13](#))



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 14**

# Aaron

## Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:6](#); [12:8](#))

# adversary, enemy

## Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:1](#); [4:3](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [13:6](#); [14:24](#); [14:30](#); [14:47](#); [18:29](#); [19:17](#); [20:15](#); [20:16](#); [24:4](#); [24:19](#); [25:26](#); [25:29](#); [26:8](#); [30:26](#))

## afflict, affliction, distress

### Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

### Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:25](#); [26:21](#))

## alarm, alarmed

### Facts:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To “be alarmed” is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshaphat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression “sound an alarm” means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

### Translation Suggestions

- To “alarm someone” means to “cause someone to worry” or to “worry someone.”
- To “be alarmed” could be translated as “be worried” or “be frightened” or “be very concerned.”
- The expression “sound an alarm” could be translated by “publicly warn” or “announce that danger is coming” or “blow a trumpet to warn about danger.”

(See also: Jehoshaphat, [Moab](#))

### Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 04:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7321, H8643

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:5](#); [10:24](#); [17:20](#); [17:52](#))

# altar

## Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

## Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:28](#); [2:33](#); [7:17](#); [14:35](#))

## Ammon, Ammonite

### Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), Lot)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:02
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 02:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 11:1](#); [11:2](#))

# Amorite

## Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

## Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 7:14](#))

## ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 2:25; 2:27; 2:28; 2:30; 2:31; 9:3; 9:5; 9:20; 10:2; 10:12; 12:6; 12:7; 12:8; 14:1; 14:27; 14:28; 14:29; 14:51; 17:15; 17:25; 17:34; 18:2; 18:18; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:6; 20:8; 20:9; 20:10; 20:12; 20:13; 20:32; 20:33; 20:34; 22:1; 22:3; 22:11; 22:15; 22:16; 22:22; 23:17; 24:11; 24:21)

## anoint, anointed, anointing

### Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#) )

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#))

## appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:11](#); [6:15](#); [7:12](#); [Notes](#); [8:1](#); [8:11](#); [9:24](#); [9:27](#); [11:2](#); [11:8](#); [11:11](#); [13:15](#); [14:17](#); [15:4](#); [16:22](#); [17:3](#); [17:40](#); [18:5](#); [18:13](#); [19:5](#); [19:13](#); [19:20](#); [20:18](#); [20:25](#); [20:27](#); [20:38](#); [21:12](#); [25:18](#); [28:21](#); [28:22](#); [30:9](#); [30:25](#); [31:10](#))

## Ashdod, Azotus

### Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Joppa, Philip, [Philistines](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:1-3
- Acts 08:40
- Amos 01:8
- Joshua 15:45-47
- Zechariah 09:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H795, G108

([Go back to: 1 Samuel 5:3](#))

## assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

### Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 13:5](#); [13:11](#); [14:19](#); [15:6](#); [17:2](#); [17:47](#))

## avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

### Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

# believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

## Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

### 2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

### 4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 17 General Notes](#))

## Benjamin, Benjamite

### Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:12](#); [9:16](#); [9:21](#); [10:2](#); [10:20](#); [10:21](#); [13:2](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [14:16](#))

## bind, bond, bound

### Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 23:11](#); [23:12](#))

## bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:20](#); [9:13](#); [15:13](#); [23:21](#); [25:32](#); [25:33](#); [25:39](#); [26:25](#); [30:26](#))

## blood

### Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 25:31](#); [26:20](#))

## bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

### Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:10](#); [4:18](#); [11:7](#); [14:13](#); [17:49](#); [17:52](#); [19:24](#); [20:41](#); [24:8](#); [25:23](#); [25:24](#); [28:14](#); [28:20](#); [31:1](#); [31:4](#); [31:5](#))

## bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:36](#); [9:7](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [14:24](#); [14:28](#); [16:20](#); [17:17](#); [20:24](#); [20:27](#); [20:34](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:6](#); [22:13](#); [25:11](#); [25:18](#); [28:20](#); [28:22](#); [30:11](#); [30:12](#))

## bride, bridal

### Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term “bride” is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the “bridegroom” for the Church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [bridegroom](#), church)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 22:16
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3618, G3565

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:19](#))

# bridegroom

## Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](#))

## Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 18:18](#))

## bronze

### Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 17:5](#); [17:6](#); [17:38](#))

# brother

## Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 14:3](#); [16:13](#); [17:17](#); [17:18](#); [17:22](#); [17:28](#); [20:29](#); [22:1](#); [26:6](#); [30:23](#))

# burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

## Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

## Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:30](#); [5:11](#); [6:6](#); [9:6](#); [15:30](#))

## burnt offering, offering by fire

### Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:14](#); [6:15](#); [7:9](#); [10:8](#))

## call, call out

### Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [9:9](#); [9:24](#); [12:17](#); [23:28](#); [26:14](#))

## captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

### Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, [exile](#), prison, seize)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 30:3](#); [30:5](#))

## chariot, charioteers

### Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:11](#))

# chief

## Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), tax collector)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 13:17](#); [17:18](#); [22:2](#))

## chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

### Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 24 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

# Christ, Messiah

## Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, [David](#), Jesus, [anoint](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.’”

- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#))

## circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

### Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: Abraham, [covenant](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03

- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 01:20
- Jeremiah 09:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:03
- Acts 15:01
- Acts 11:03
- Romans 02:27
- Galatians 05:03
- Ephesians 02:11
- Philippians 03:03
- Colossians 02:11
- Colossians 02:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 14 General Notes; Notes](#))

# clan

## Definition:

The term "clan" refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses' father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term "clan" might also be translated as "family group" or "extended family" or "relatives."

(See also: [family](#), Jethro, [tribe](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 10:21](#))

## clean, wash

### Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 20:26](#))

## comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

### Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, [Holy Spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 15:11](#); [15:29](#); [15:35](#))

## command, commandment

### Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

### Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

### Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:21](#); [2:29](#); [4:1](#); [7:11](#); [8:20](#); [9:26](#); [11:3](#); [11:7](#); [12:8](#); [13:10](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:17](#); [13:23](#); [14:17](#); [15:2](#); [17:4](#); [17:18](#); [17:20](#); [17:35](#); [18:5](#); [18:6](#); [18:13](#); [18:22](#); [18:30](#); [19:8](#); [20:6](#); [20:11](#); [20:18](#); [20:29](#); [20:35](#); [21:2](#); [23:13](#); [24:8](#); [25:7](#); [25:15](#); [25:21](#); [25:30](#); [29:4](#); [30:21](#))

## confirm, confirmation, legal

### Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 22:13](#); [24:7](#))

## consecrate, consecrated, consecration

### Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), pure, sanctify)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 7:1](#); [16:5](#); [21:5](#))

## consume, devour

### Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

### Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), wrath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 15:18](#); [20:7](#); [20:9](#); [25:17](#))

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), promise)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [11:1](#); [18:3](#); [23:18](#))

## covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

### Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 15:6](#); [20:8](#); [20:14](#); [20:15](#))

## cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

### Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 11:7](#); [14:32](#); [16:2](#))

## cry, cry out, outcry

### Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:13](#); [5:10](#); [7:9](#); [8:18](#); [12:8](#); [12:10](#); [14:20](#); [15:11](#); [28:12](#))

## curse, cursed, cursing

### Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **02:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **04:04** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3 General Notes](#); [14:24](#); [14:28](#); [17:43](#); [26:19](#))

## cut off

### Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:33](#); [5:4](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [17:51](#); [18:3](#); [20:15](#); [20:16](#); [23:18](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:21](#); [28:9](#); [31:9](#))

# David

## Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 16:13; 16:19; 16:20; 16:21; 16:22; 16:23; 17:20; 17:22; 17:23; 17:26; 17:29; 17:31; 17:32; 17:33; 17:34; 17:37; 17:38; 17:39; 17:41; 17:42; 17:43; 17:44; 17:45; 17:48; 17:49; 17:50; 17:51; 17:54; 17:55; 17:57; 17:58; 18:1; 18:5; 18:6; 18:9; 18:11; 18:12; 18:14; 18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:20; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:24; 18:25; 18:26; 18:27; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 19:1; 19:5; 19:7; 19:8; 19:11; 19:12; 19:14; 19:15; 19:19; 19:20; 20:1; 20:3; 20:4; 20:5; 20:6; 20:10;](#)

20:11; 20:12; 20:15; 20:16; 20:17; 20:24; 20:25; 20:27; 20:28; 20:33; 20:34; 20:35; 20:41; 21:1; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:8;  
21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 22:1; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:17; 22:20; 22:22; 23:2; 23:3; 23:4; 23:5; 23:6; 23:7; 23:8; 23:9;  
23:10; 23:12; 23:13; 23:14; 23:15; 23:16; 23:18; 23:19; 23:25; 23:26; 23:28; 23:29; 24:1; 24:2; 24:4; 24:5; 24:7; 24:8;  
24:9; 24:16; 24:17; 24:22; 25:1; 25:4; 25:5; 25:9; 25:10; 25:12; 25:13; 25:14; 25:20; 25:22; 25:23; 25:32; 25:35; 25:39;  
25:40; 25:42; 25:43; 25:44; 26:1; 26:2; 26:4; 26:5; 26:6; 26:7; 26:8; 26:9; 26:10; 26:12; 26:13; 26:14; 26:15; 26:17; 26:21;  
26:22; 26:25; 27:1; 27:2; 27:3; 27:4; 27:5; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 28:1; 28:2; 29:3; 29:5; 29:6; 29:8; 29:9; 29:11;  
30:1; 30:3; 30:4; 30:5; 30:6; 30:7; 30:8; 30:9; 30:10; 30:11; 30:13; 30:15; 30:17; 30:18; 30:19; 30:20; 30:21; 30:22; 30:23;  
30:26; 30:31)

## declare, proclaim, announce

### Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:20](#); [3:4](#); [3:10](#); [3:16](#); [4:21](#); [6:2](#); [7:12](#); [9:26](#); [12:18](#); [16:3](#); [16:5](#); [16:8](#); [17:8](#); [19:7](#); [20:37](#); [20:38](#); [24:8](#); [26:14](#); [28:15](#); [29:6](#))

# delight

## Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

## Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:25](#); [18:22](#); [19:1](#))

## deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

### Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:3](#); [7:3](#); [7:8](#); [9:16](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [10:27](#); [11:3](#); [12:11](#); [14:23](#); [14:48](#); [17:35](#); [17:47](#); [23:2](#); [23:5](#); [25:26](#); [25:33](#); [26:24](#); [30:8](#); [30:18](#))

## desert, wilderness

### Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

### Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:8](#); [17:28](#); [23:14](#); [23:15](#); [23:24](#); [23:25](#); [24:1](#); [25:4](#); [25:14](#); [25:21](#); [26:2](#); [26:3](#))

## destroy, destruction, annihilate

### Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means, "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, [Egypt](#), firstborn, Passover)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2673, G2704, G3089, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 9:3](#); [15:3](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:15](#); [15:18](#); [15:20](#))

# devour

## Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:18](#); [9:13](#); [9:19](#); [9:24](#); [14:24](#); [14:28](#); [14:30](#); [14:32](#); [14:34](#); [20:34](#); [28:20](#); [28:22](#); [28:23](#); [28:25](#); [30:11](#); [30:12](#); [30:16](#))

# die, dead, deadly, death,

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

### 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:25](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [5:10](#); [11:12](#); [15:3](#); [15:32](#); [17:35](#); [17:50](#); [17:51](#); [19:1](#); [19:2](#); [19:5](#); [19:15](#); [20:3](#); [20:33](#); [22:17](#); [22:18](#); [22:21](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [24:18](#); [25:1](#); [25:37](#); [25:38](#); [26:10](#); [Notes](#); [28:9](#); [31:5](#); [31:6](#))

## disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, [evil](#), [sin](#), obey)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:15](#))

# donkey, mule

## Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:16](#); [12:3](#); [15:3](#); [16:20](#); [22:19](#); [25:18](#); [25:20](#); [25:23](#); [25:42](#); [27:9](#))

## drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 25:36](#))

## earth, earthen, earthly

### Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:8](#); [2:10](#); [3:19](#); [4:5](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [6:5](#); [13:3](#); [13:7](#); [13:17](#); [13:19](#); [14:15](#); [14:25](#); [14:29](#); [14:32](#); [14:45](#); [17:46](#); [17:49](#); [20:41](#); [21:11](#); [22:5](#); [23:27](#); [24:8](#); [25:23](#); [25:41](#); [26:8](#); [26:20](#); [27:1](#); [27:8](#); [27:9](#); [28:9](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [28:20](#); [29:11](#); [30:16](#))

# Egypt, Egyptian

## Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *\_Egypt\_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:27](#); [4:8](#); [8:8](#); [10:18](#); [12:6](#); [12:8](#); [15:2](#); [15:6](#); [15:7](#); [27:8](#))

## elder, older, old

### Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:31](#); [2:32](#); [4:3](#); [8:4](#); [11:3](#); [15:30](#); [16:4](#); [28:14](#); [30:26](#))

# Ephraim, Ephraimite

## Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:1](#); [9:4](#); [14:22](#))

## Ephrath, Ephrathah

### Facts:

The terms "Ephrath" and "Ephrathah" are probably derived from the name "Ephraim," who was one of the sons of Joseph and became the patriarch of one of the 12 tribes of Israel. Different

- "Ephrathah" is the name of the region where Rachel died, near the city of Bethel.
- There is a woman named "Ephrath" in the OT, who was the wife of Caleb.
- Both cities of Bethlehem and Kirjath-Jearim are also called "Ephrathah," even though both cities are in a different region than described above (near Bethel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, Caleb, [David](#), [Israel](#))

### Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H672, H673

([Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:1; 17:12](#))

## evil, wicked, unpleasant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:23](#); [6:9](#); [10:19](#); [12:17](#); [12:19](#); [12:20](#); [14:47](#); [15:19](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:23](#); [18:10](#); [19:9](#); [20:7](#); [20:9](#); [20:13](#); [23:9](#); [24:9](#); [24:11](#); [24:17](#); [25:17](#); [25:21](#); [25:26](#); [25:39](#); [26:18](#); [29:6](#); [29:7](#); [30:22](#))

# ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

## Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), lamb, [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 15:9](#); [15:14](#); [15:15](#); [15:22](#); [17:20](#); [17:28](#); [22:19](#); [24:3](#); [25:16](#); [30:20](#))

## exalt, exalted, exaltation

### Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:10](#); [9:24](#))

## exile, exiled

### Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:27](#); [3:7](#); [3:21](#); [4:21](#); [4:22](#); [9:15](#); [20:2](#); [22:8](#); [22:17](#))

## face, facial

### Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:18](#); [1:22](#); [2:11](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [13:12](#); [14:25](#); [15:7](#); [17:49](#); [20:15](#); [22:4](#); [24:2](#); [25:23](#); [25:35](#); [26:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:20](#); [30:16](#))

# faith

## Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 23 General Notes](#))

## faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

### Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:35](#); [3:20](#); [Notes](#); [22:14](#); [25:28](#))

## family, household

### Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 9:21](#); [10:21](#); [18:18](#); [20:29](#))

## fast, fasting

### Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 7:6](#); [31:13](#))

## favor, favorable, favoritism

### Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:18](#); [2:32](#); [16:17](#); [16:22](#); [20:3](#); [20:13](#); [20:29](#); [24:4](#); [25:8](#); [27:5](#))

## fear, afraid, dread

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), power, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3:15](#); [4:7](#); [4:20](#); [7:7](#); [11:7](#); [12:14](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [12:24](#); [14:26](#); [15:24](#); [17:11](#); [17:24](#); [18:12](#); [18:29](#); [21:12](#); [22:23](#); [23:3](#); [23:17](#); [28:5](#); [28:13](#); [28:20](#); [31:4](#))

## feast, feasting

### Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:22](#); [9:24](#); [13:8](#); [13:11](#); [20:35](#); [25:36](#))

# fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

## Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 30:1](#); [30:3](#); [30:14](#))

## firstfruits

### Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 15:21](#))

# flesh

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:15](#); [17:44](#))

## flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:17](#); [14:32](#); [15:21](#); [17:15](#); [25:2](#); [25:4](#); [25:18](#); [27:9](#))

## **forsake, forsaken, leave**

### **Definition:**

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

### **Translation Suggestions:**

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

### **Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:10](#))

## fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

### Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:33](#))

# Gad

## Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: census, [prophet](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 01:12
- Joshua 21:38

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 13:7](#); [22:5](#))

## gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3:15](#); [4:18](#); [9:18](#); [17:52](#); [21:13](#); [23:7](#))

# Gilgal

## Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Elijah, , Elisha, Jericho, [Jordan River](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 07:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:1-2
- Hosea 04:15
- Judges 02:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 11:15](#); [13:7](#); [15:21](#); [15:33](#))

## **gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around**

### **Definition:**

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

### **Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:18](#); [25:13](#))

## **glean, gleanings**

### **Definition:**

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, grain, [harvest](#), Ruth)

### **Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:06
- Ruth 02:02
- Ruth 02:15

### **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 20:38](#))

## glory, glorious, glorify

### Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), obey, praise)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:8](#); [4:21](#); [4:22](#); [6:5](#))

# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”  
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, [Holy Spirit](#), false god, Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:17; 2:25; 2:27; 2:30; 3:3; 3:17; 4:4; 4:7; 4:8; 4:11; 4:13; 4:17; 4:18; 4:19; 4:21; 4:22; 5:1; 5:2; 5:7; 5:8; 5:10; 5:11; 6:3; 6:5; 6:20; 7:3; 7:8; 8:8; 9:6; 9:7; 9:8; 9:9; 9:10; 9:27; 10:3; 10:5; 10:7; 10:9; 10:10; 10:18; 10:19; 10:26; 11:6; 12:9; 12:12; 12:14; 12:19; 13:13; 14:15; 14:18; 14:36; 14:37; 14:41; 14:44; 14:45; 15:15; 15:21; 15:30; 16:15; 16:16; 16:23; 17:26; 17:36; 17:43; 17:45; 17:46; 18:10; 19:20; 19:23; 20:12; 22:3; 22:13; 22:15; 23:7; 23:10; 23:11; 23:14; 23:16; 25:22; 25:29; 25:32; 25:34; 26:8; 26:19; 28:13; 28:15; 29:9; 30:6; 30:15)

## godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

### Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [nominaladj](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), honor, obey, [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:09
- Acts 03:12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:18
- Jude 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2 General Notes; Notes](#))

## gold, golden

### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, false god, [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:4](#); [6:8](#); [6:11](#); [6:15](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#))

## good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

### Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:8](#); [1:23](#); [2:24](#); [3:18](#); [8:14](#); [8:16](#); [9:2](#); [9:10](#); [11:10](#); [12:23](#); [14:36](#); [14:40](#); [15:22](#); [15:28](#); [19:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:12](#); [24:18](#); [24:19](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:15](#); [25:21](#); [25:36](#); [26:16](#); [27:1](#); [29:6](#); [29:9](#))

## grain offering

### Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering , [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:17](#); [2:29](#); [10:27](#); [26:19](#))

# hand

## Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), honor, power)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 2:13; 4:3; 4:8; 4:18; 5:4; 5:6; 5:7; 5:9; 5:11; 6:3; 6:5; 6:9; 7:3; 7:8; 7:13; 7:14; 9:8; 9:16; 10:4; 10:7; 10:18; 11:7; 12:4; 12:5; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:15; 13:22; 14:10; 14:12; 14:13; 14:19; 14:26; 14:27; 14:34; 14:37; 14:43; 14:48; 15:12; 16:2; 16:16; 16:20; 16:23; 17:22; 17:37; 17:40; 17:46; 17:47; 17:49; 17:50; 17:57; 18:10; 18:17; 18:21; 18:25; 19:9; 20:16; 21:3; 21:4; 21:8; 21:13; 22:6; 22:17; 23:4; 23:6; 23:7; 23:11; 23:12; 23:14; 23:16; 23:17; 23:20; 24:4; 24:6; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:15; 24:18; 24:20; 25:8; 25:26; 25:29; 25:33; 25:35; 25:39; 26:8; 26:9; 26:11; 26:18; 26:23; 27:1; 28:15; 28:17; 28:19; 30:15; 30:23)

# harvest, reap

## Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), festival, good news)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:13](#); [8:12](#); [12:17](#))

# head

## Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: grain)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:11](#); [4:12](#); [5:4](#); [9:22](#); [10:1](#); [11:11](#); [13:17](#); [14:45](#); [15:17](#); [17:5](#); [17:38](#); [17:46](#); [17:51](#); [17:54](#); [17:57](#); [25:39](#); [26:13](#); [29:4](#); [31:9](#))

# heart

## Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

## Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:8](#); [1:13](#); [2:1](#); [4:13](#); [4:20](#); [6:6](#); [7:3](#); [9:20](#); [10:9](#); [10:26](#); [12:20](#); [12:24](#); [17:28](#); [17:32](#); [18:1](#); [24:5](#); [25:25](#); [25:31](#); [25:37](#); [27:1](#); [28:5](#); [28:9](#))

## heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:10](#); [5:12](#); [17:44](#); [17:46](#))

## high priest, chief priests

### Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, [priest](#), [temple](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.

- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 22 General Notes](#))

# Hittite

## Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, [mighty](#), Solomon, Uriah)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 26:6](#))

## Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), God the Father, Son of God, gift)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**.”
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 10](#) [General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), sanctify, [set apart](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:2](#); [Notes](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:6](#))

## horse, warhorse, horseback

### Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), Solomon)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 25:42](#))

# house

## Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:19](#); [1:21](#); [1:24](#); [2:11](#); [2:27](#); [2:28](#); [2:30](#); [2:31](#); [2:33](#); [2:35](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:15](#); [5:2](#); [5:5](#); [6:7](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:17](#); [9:18](#); [9:20](#); [10:25](#); [10:26](#); [15:34](#); [17:25](#); [18:2](#); [18:10](#); [19:11](#); [20:15](#); [20:16](#); [21:15](#); [22:1](#); [22:11](#); [22:15](#); [22:16](#); [22:22](#); [23:18](#); [24:21](#); [24:22](#); [25:6](#); [25:17](#); [25:28](#); [25:35](#); [27:3](#); [31:9](#); [31:10](#))

## inherit, inheritance, heir

### Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:8](#); [10:1](#); [26:19](#))

# iniquity

## Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3:14](#); [18:9](#); [20:1](#); [20:8](#); [28:10](#))

# innocent

## Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, "blood" can represent "killing," so "innocent blood" refers to "killing people who did not deserve to die."

## Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- "To shed innocent blood" can be translated as "to kill people who did not deserve to die."

(See also: guilt)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 19:5](#))

## Israel, Israelite, Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, deceive, Esau, Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:8](#))

## Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#); [1 Samuel 1:17](#); [2:14](#); [2:22](#); [2:28](#); [2:29](#); [2:30](#); [2:32](#); [3:11](#); [3:20](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:5](#); [4:10](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:21](#); [4:22](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#); [5:11](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [7:2](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [8:1](#); [8:4](#); [8:22](#); [9:2](#); [9:9](#); [9:16](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [10:18](#); [10:20](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [12:1](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [13:13](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [14:12](#); [14:18](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [14:23](#); [14:24](#); [14:37](#); [14:39](#); [14:40](#); [14:41](#); [14:45](#); [14:47](#); [14:48](#); [15:1](#); [15:2](#); [15:6](#); [15:17](#); [15:26](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [15:30](#); [15:35](#); [16:1](#); [17:2](#); [17:8](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:19](#); [17:21](#); [17:24](#);

17:25; 17:26; 17:45; 17:46; 17:52; 17:53; 18:6; 18:16; 18:18; 19:5; 20:12; 23:10; 23:11; 23:17; 24:2; 24:14; 24:20; 25:1;  
25:30; 25:32; 25:34; 26:2; 26:15; 26:20; 27:1; 27:12; 28:1; 28:3; 28:4; 28:19; 29:3; 30:25; 31:1; 31:7)

## jealous, jealousy

### Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 05:09
- Exodus 20:05
- Ezekiel 36:05
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 01:2-3
- Romans 13:13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

# Jerusalem

## Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, [temple](#), Zion)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 17:54](#))

# Jesse

## Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, descendant, Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 16:1](#); [16:5](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:19](#); [16:20](#); [16:22](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:17](#); [17:20](#); [17:58](#); [20:27](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:13](#); [25:10](#))

# Joel

## Facts:

Joel was a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There were also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

- The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
- The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
- In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Joash, Judah, Pentecost)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Acts 02:16
- Ezra 10:43
- Joel 01:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3100, G2493

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:2](#))

## Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 13:7](#); [31:7](#))

# Joshua

## Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, [Moses](#), Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:14](#); [6:18](#))

## joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

### Definition:

#### joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

#### rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:1](#); [6:13](#); [11:9](#); [11:15](#); [18:6](#); [19:5](#))

# Judah

## Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, Judah, [Judea](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 17:1](#); [17:52](#); [18:16](#); [23:3](#); [30:14](#))

# Judea

## Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, Samaria)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 11:8](#); [15:4](#); [17:12](#); [22:5](#); [23:23](#); [27:6](#); [27:10](#); [30:16](#); [30:26](#))

## judge, judgment

### Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 7:6](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:9](#); [8:11](#); [8:20](#); [10:25](#); [12:7](#); [Notes](#); [24:15](#); [27:11](#))

## just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

### Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 29:6](#))

# king, kingdom, kingship

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:10](#); [8:5](#); [8:6](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:18](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:22](#); [10:19](#); [10:24](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:9](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [12:17](#); [12:19](#); [12:25](#); [15:1](#); [15:8](#); [15:11](#); [15:17](#); [15:20](#); [15:26](#); [15:32](#); [16:1](#); [17:25](#); [17:55](#); [17:56](#); [18:6](#); [18:18](#); [18:22](#); [18:23](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [19:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:24](#); [20:25](#); [20:29](#); [21:2](#); [21:8](#); [21:10](#); [21:11](#); [21:12](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:11](#); [22:14](#); [22:15](#); [22:16](#); [22:17](#); [22:18](#); [23:20](#); [24:8](#); [24:14](#); [25:36](#); [26:14](#); [26:15](#); [26:16](#); [26:17](#); [26:19](#); [26:20](#); [26:22](#); [27:2](#); [27:6](#); [28:13](#); [29:3](#); [29:8](#))

# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 13:13](#); [13:14](#); [24:20](#))

## know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

### Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:19](#); [2:3](#); [2:12](#); [3:7](#); [3:13](#); [3:20](#); [4:6](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:9](#); [9:11](#); [9:14](#); [10:8](#); [10:11](#); [11:7](#); [11:10](#); [12:17](#); [14:3](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:38](#); [14:41](#); [16:3](#); [16:16](#); [16:18](#); [17:8](#); [17:28](#); [17:46](#); [17:47](#); [17:55](#); [18:16](#); [18:28](#); [18:30](#); [19:3](#); [20:3](#); [20:7](#);

20:9; 20:30; 20:33; 20:39; 21:2; 22:3; 22:6; 22:15; 22:17; 22:22; 23:9; 23:15; 23:17; 23:22; 23:23; 24:11; 24:13; 24:14;  
24:20; 25:11; 25:17; 26:4; 26:12; 26:20; 28:1; 28:2; 28:9; 28:14; 29:6; 29:9)

## law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

### Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

### Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:15](#))

# life, live, living, alive

## Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *\_living\_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:10; 1:15; 1:26; 2:6; 2:15; 2:16; 2:33; 10:24; 14:39; 14:45; 15:8; 17:26; 17:36; 17:55; 19:5; 19:6; 19:11; 20:1; 20:3; 20:4; 20:14; 20:17; 20:21; 22:2; 22:22; 22:23; 23:15; 23:20; 24:11; 25:26; 25:29; 25:34; 26:10; 26:16; 26:21; 26:24; 27:9; 27:11; 28:10; 28:21; 29:6; 30:6)

## lord, Lord, master, sir

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), Jesus, ruler, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:15](#); [1:26](#); [16:16](#); [20:38](#); [22:12](#); [24:8](#); [25:10](#); [25:14](#); [25:17](#); [25:24](#); [25:25](#); [25:26](#); [25:27](#); [25:28](#); [25:29](#); [25:31](#); [25:41](#); [26:15](#); [26:16](#); [26:17](#); [26:18](#); [26:19](#); [29:4](#); [29:8](#); [29:10](#); [30:13](#); [30:15](#))

## love, beloved

### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
  - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
  - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
  - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
  - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
  - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:5](#); [Notes](#); [16:21](#); [Notes](#); [18:1](#); [18:16](#); [18:20](#); [18:22](#); [18:28](#); [20:17](#))

## messenger

### Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:21](#); [11:3](#); [16:19](#); [19:11](#); [19:14](#); [19:20](#); [19:21](#); [25:14](#); [25:42](#))

## might, mighty, mighty works

### Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, [strength](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:4](#); [9:1](#); [14:52](#); [17:51](#))

# Mizpah

## Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [Moab](#), Saul (OT))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 07:5-6
- 1 Samuel 07:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:11](#); [7:12](#); [10:17](#))

## Moab, Moabite

### Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendants of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:9](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#))

# Moses

## Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:6](#); [12:8](#))

## mourn, mourner, weeping

### Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:19](#); [15:35](#); [16:1](#))

## name

### Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:2](#); [1:20](#); [7:12](#); [8:2](#); [12:22](#); [14:49](#); [17:4](#); [17:23](#); [17:45](#); [18:30](#); [20:42](#); [24:21](#); [25:5](#); [25:9](#); [25:25](#))

# nation

## Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:5](#); [8:20](#))

# Negev

## Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 12:09
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

([Go back to: 1 Samuel 20:41](#))

## new moon

### Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:05
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 01:12-13

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 20:24](#); [20:27](#); [20:34](#))

## oath, swear, swearing, swear by

### Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3:14](#); [14:28](#); [19:6](#); [20:3](#); [20:42](#); [24:21](#); [24:22](#); [28:10](#); [30:15](#))

# olive

## Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:14](#); [16:1](#))

## oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

### Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), enslave, [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8 General Notes; 30:6](#))

## peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 7:14](#); [16:4](#); [16:5](#); [20:7](#); [20:21](#); [25:6](#))

## people of God

### Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: [Introduction to 1 Samuel](#))

## people, people group,

### Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 2:13; 2:23; 2:24; 2:29; 4:3; 4:4; 4:17; 5:10; 5:11; 6:19; 8:7; 8:10; 8:19; 8:21; 9:2; 9:12; 9:13; 9:16; 9:17; 9:24; 10:11; 10:17; 10:23; 10:24; 10:25; 11:4; 11:5; 11:7; 11:11; 11:12; 11:14; 11:15; 12:6; 12:18; 12:19; 12:20; 12:22; 13:2; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:11; 13:14; 13:15; 13:16; 13:22; 14:2; 14:3; 14:15; 14:17; 14:20; 14:24; 14:26; 14:27; 14:28; 14:30; 14:31; 14:32; 14:33; 14:34; 14:38; 14:39; 14:40; 14:41; 14:45; 15:1; 15:4; 15:8; 15:9; 15:15; 15:21; 15:24; 15:30; 17:27; 17:30; 18:5; 18:13; 23:8; 26:5; 26:7; 26:14; 26:15; 27:12; 30:4; 30:6; 30:21; 31:9)

## persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

### Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, [oppress](#), Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 24:14](#); [26:18](#); [26:20](#); [30:8](#))

# Philistines

## Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:6; 4:9; 4:10; 4:17; 5:2; 5:8; 5:11; 6:1; 6:2; 6:4; 6:12; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:21; 7:3; 7:7; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:14; 9:16; 10:5; 12:9; 13:3; 13:4; 13:12; 13:17; 13:19; 13:23; 14:1; 14:4; 14:11; 14:19; 14:22; 14:36; 14:37; 14:46; 14:52; 17:1; 17:2; 17:4; 17:19; 17:23; 17:46; 17:52; 17:53; 18:17; 18:21; 18:25; 18:30; 23:1; 23:3; 23:4; 23:27; 23:28; 24:1; 27:1; 27:7; 27:11; 28:1; 28:4; 28:5; 28:19; 29:1; 29:2; 29:3; 29:4; 29:7; 29:9; 29:11; 30:16; 31:1; 31:2; 31:7; 31:8; 31:9; 31:11](#))

## plea, plead, beg, implore

### Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 08:3-5
- Judges 06:31
- Luke 04:39
- Proverbs 18:17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G1189, G1793, G2065, G3870

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 25:29](#))

# plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed

## Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: [bronze](#), [ox](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:04
- Luke 09:62
- Luke 17:07
- Psalm 141:5-7

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H406, H855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G722, G723

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 13:20](#))

# pray, prayer

## Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:8](#); [1:10](#); [1:15](#); [1:28](#); [2:1](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [2:25](#); [3:11](#); [4:16](#); [7:5](#); [8:6](#); [9:19](#); [9:21](#); [10:8](#); [10:18](#); [12:23](#); [15:14](#); [17:8](#); [17:43](#); [18:18](#); [20:36](#); [21:2](#); [22:22](#); [24:4](#); [30:13](#))

## preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

### Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

### Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 9:4](#); [9:27](#); [14:1](#); [14:6](#); [15:12](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [26:13](#); [26:22](#); [27:2](#))

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), chief priests, [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:3](#); [1:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:28](#); [2:35](#); [2:36](#); [5:5](#); [6:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:19](#); [14:36](#); [21:1](#); [21:2](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:6](#); [21:9](#); [Notes](#); [22:11](#); [22:17](#); [22:19](#); [22:21](#); [23:9](#); [30:7](#))

# prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

## Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, [Christ](#), demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:12](#); [12:9](#); [14:50](#); [17:55](#); [18:13](#); [18:30](#); [22:7](#); [26:5](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:9](#))

## prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [18:10](#); [Notes](#); [19:20](#); [19:21](#); [19:23](#); [19:24](#); [Notes](#); [22:5](#); [28:15](#))

## prosper, prosperity, prosperous

### Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:4](#); [9:1](#); [14:48](#); [14:52](#); [16:18](#); [18:17](#); [31:12](#))

## prostrate, worship

### Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

### Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:19](#); [1:28](#); [15:25](#); [15:30](#); [15:31](#); [20:41](#); [24:8](#); [25:23](#); [25:41](#); [28:14](#))

## proud, pride, prideful

### Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:24](#); [20:41](#); [26:24](#))

## punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

### Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 25:39](#))

# Ramah

## Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 02:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 02:17-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G4471

(**Go back to:** [1 Samuel 1:19](#); [2:11](#); [7:17](#); [8:4](#); [15:34](#); [16:13](#); [19:18](#); [19:22](#))

## rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

### Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12:14](#); [30:6](#))

# rebuke

## Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, [disobey](#))

## Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 15:5](#); [24:15](#))

## reign, rule

### Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:22](#); [11:15](#); [12:1](#))

## repent, repentance

### Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, [sin](#), turn)

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#))

## rest, rested, restless

### Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 25:9](#))

## restore, restoration

### Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 3:5](#); [3:6](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:8](#); [6:17](#); [6:21](#); [7:3](#); [15:11](#); [15:26](#); [18:2](#); [24:1](#); [25:39](#); [26:21](#); [26:23](#); [26:25](#); [29:4](#); [29:7](#); [29:11](#); [30:19](#))

# return

## Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

## Bible References:

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:19](#); [5:3](#); [5:11](#); [6:7](#); [6:16](#); [7:14](#); [9:5](#); [12:3](#); [14:27](#); [15:25](#); [15:30](#); [15:31](#); [17:15](#); [17:30](#); [17:53](#); [23:23](#); [23:28](#); [25:12](#); [25:21](#); [27:9](#); [29:4](#); [30:12](#))

## righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

### Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

### Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), obey, pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 24:17](#); Notes)

## robe, robed

### Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:19](#))

## sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

### sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

### offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:21](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [2:29](#); [3:14](#); [6:15](#); [9:12](#); [10:8](#); [11:15](#); [15:15](#); [20:6](#); [20:29](#))

## save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 11 General Notes; Notes; 19:11; 20:29; 23:13; 27:1; 30:17](#))

## seed, semen

### Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: descendant, offspring)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:11](#); [2:20](#); [20:42](#); [24:21](#))

## seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 9:3](#); [9:9](#); [10:2](#); [10:14](#); [10:21](#); [13:14](#); [14:4](#); [16:16](#); [19:2](#); [19:10](#); [20:1](#); [20:16](#); [22:23](#); [23:10](#); [23:14](#); [23:15](#); [23:25](#); [24:2](#); [24:9](#); [26:2](#); [26:20](#); [27:1](#); [27:4](#); [28:7](#))

## **servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women**

### **Definition:**

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, [lord](#), obey, [righteous](#), [covenant](#), law,)

### **Bible References:**

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

### Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:11; 1:16; 1:18; 1:22; 1:24; 1:25; 1:27; 2:11; 2:13; 2:15; 2:17; 2:18; 2:21; 3:1; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 4:9; 4:21; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 9:5; 9:7; 9:8; 9:10; 9:11; 9:22; 9:27; 10:14; 12:19; 14:1; 14:6; 16:11; 16:15; 16:16; 16:17; 17:8; 17:9; 17:32; 17:33; 17:34; 17:36; 17:42; 17:55; 17:58; 18:5; 18:22; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 18:30; 19:1; 20:7; 20:8; 20:21; 20:35; 20:36; 20:37; 20:38; 20:40; 20:41; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:11; 21:14; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:9; 22:14; 22:15; 22:17; 23:10; 23:11; 25:5; 25:8; 25:9; 25:10; 25:12; 25:14; 25:19; 25:24; 25:25; 25:27; 25:28; 25:31; 25:39; 25:40; 25:41; 25:42; 26:18; 26:19; 27:5; 27:12; 28:2; 28:7; 28:21; 28:22; 28:23; 28:25; 29:3; 29:10; 30:13; 30:17)

## set apart

### Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, [appoint](#))

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 16:5](#))

## shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

### Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

### Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, [rebuke](#), false god, humble, Isaiah, [worship](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 11:2](#); [17:10](#); [17:26](#); [17:36](#); [17:45](#); [20:34](#); [25:7](#); [25:15](#); [25:39](#))

# silver

## Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:36](#); [9:8](#))

## sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

### Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [2:17](#); [2:25](#); [7:6](#); [Notes](#); [12:10](#); [12:19](#); [14:33](#); [14:34](#); [15:23](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:30](#); [19:4](#); [19:5](#); [20:1](#); [24:11](#); [26:21](#); [Notes](#))

## slaughter, slaughtered

### Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, [cow](#), [disobey](#), Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

### Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:25](#); [14:32](#); [14:34](#))

## son

### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, [ancestor](#), firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:1; 1:3; 1:4; 1:8; 1:20; 1:23; 2:5; 2:12; 2:21; 2:22; 2:24; 2:28; 2:29; 2:34; 3:6; 3:13; 3:16; 4:4; 4:11; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:20; 6:7; 6:10; 7:1; 7:4; 7:6; 7:7; 7:8; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:5; 8:11; 9:1; 9:2; 9:3; 10:2; 10:11; 10:18; 10:21; 10:27; 11:8; 12:2; 12:12; 13:1; 13:16; 13:22; 14:1; 14:3; 14:18; 14:32; 14:39; 14:40; 14:42; 14:49; 14:50; 14:51; 14:52; 15:6; 16:1; 16:5; 16:10; 16:18; 16:19; 16:20; 17:12; 17:13; 17:17; 17:53; 17:55; 17:56; 17:58; 18:17; 19:1; 20:27; 20:30; 20:31; 22:7; 22:8; 22:9; 22:11; 22:12; 22:13; 22:20; 23:6; 23:16; 24:16; 25:8; 25:10; 25:17; 25:44; 26:5; 26:6; 26:14; 26:16; 26:17; 26:19; 26:21; 26:25; 27:2; 28:19; 30:3; 30:6; 30:7; 30:19; 30:22; 31:2; 31:6; 31:7; 31:8; 31:12)

## spirit, spiritual

### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: angel, demon, [Holy Spirit](#), soul)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:15](#); [10:6](#); [10:10](#); [11:6](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:23](#); [18:10](#); [19:9](#); [19:20](#); [19:23](#); [30:12](#))

## statute

### Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), ordinance, [Yahweh](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:13](#))

## strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:9](#); [4:9](#); [14:52](#); [28:20](#); [28:22](#); [30:4](#))

## sword, swordsmen

### Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

### Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), word of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 13:19](#); [13:22](#); [14:20](#); [15:8](#); [15:33](#); [17:39](#); [17:45](#); [17:47](#); [17:50](#); [17:51](#); [18:4](#); [21:8](#); [21:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:13](#); [22:19](#); [25:13](#); [31:4](#); [31:5](#))

# temple

## Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), Solomon, Babylon, [Holy Spirit](#), tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, [house](#))

## Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:7](#); [1:9](#); [2:31](#); [2:32](#); [2:36](#); [Notes](#); [6:10](#); [19:9](#); [22:14](#); [25:1](#); [25:36](#); [28:24](#))

## testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

### Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), true)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:20](#); [8:9](#); [8:18](#); [9:17](#); [12:3](#); [12:5](#); [14:37](#); [14:39](#); [20:10](#); [26:14](#); [28:6](#); [28:15](#))

# thresh

## Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 23:1](#))

## to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 17:26](#))

## tongue, language

### Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, [Holy Spirit](#), joy, praise, [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 7:8](#))

## tremble, stagger

### Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 4:13](#); [28:15](#))

## tribe, tribal, tribesmen

### Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 2:28](#); [9:21](#); [10:19](#); [10:20](#); [10:21](#); [15:17](#))

## trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

### Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 14:29](#); [26:24](#))

## trumpet, trumpeters

### Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), wrath)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 13:3](#))

## trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 12 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

## understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 25:3](#))

## unleavened bread

### Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), Passover, [servant](#), [sin](#), yeast)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 28:24](#))

# **vineyard**

## **Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, [Israel](#), vine)

## **Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

## **Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 8:14](#); [8:15](#); [22:7](#))

## voice

### Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

### Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

### Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 7:10](#); [8:7](#); [8:9](#); [8:19](#); [8:22](#); [12:1](#); [12:14](#); [12:15](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:22](#); [15:24](#); [19:6](#); [25:35](#); [28:12](#); [28:18](#); [28:21](#); [28:22](#))

## VOW

### Definition:

A "vow" is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term "vow" can be translated as "solemn promise" or "solemn oath" or "promise made to God."

(See also: promise, [oath](#))

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

(**Go back to:** [1 Samuel 1 General Notes](#))

## walk, walked

### Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:17; 2:26; 2:30; 3:9; 6:12; 8:3; 8:5; 8:22; 9:3; 9:5; 9:6; 9:7; 9:9; 9:10; 10:2; 10:14; 10:26; 11:14; 12:2; 14:1; 14:3; 14:6; 14:17; 14:19; 14:46; 15:3; 15:6; 15:18; 16:2; 17:7; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:32; 17:37; 17:41; 17:44; 19:23; 20:11; 20:21; 20:22; 20:40; 20:42; 22:5; 23:2; 23:3; 23:13; 23:18; 23:22; 25:15; 26:19; 28:22; 30:22; 30:31](#))

## watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:12](#); [2:9](#); [9:24](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [17:20](#); [17:22](#); [19:2](#); [21:4](#); [25:21](#); [26:15](#); [26:16](#); [28:2](#))

# wheat

## Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, [seed](#), [thresh](#), winnow)

## Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 6:13](#); [12:17](#))

## will of God

### Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

### Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 31 General Notes](#))

## wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, [vineyard](#), winepress)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:24](#); [10:3](#); [16:20](#); [25:18](#); [25:37](#))

## wise, wisdom

### Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 18:5](#); [18:14](#); [18:15](#); [18:30](#))

## wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

### Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or, “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

(Go back to: [1 Samuel 20:30](#))

# Yahweh

## Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

## Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 1 Samuel 1:3; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:15; 1:19; 1:21; 1:22; 1:23; 1:24; 1:26; 1:27; 1:28; 2:1; 2:3; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:17; 2:18; 2:20; 2:21; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:27; 2:30; 3:1; 3:3; 3:4; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:15; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 5:3; 5:4; 5:6; 5:9; 6:1; 6:2; 6:8; 6:11; 6:14; 6:15; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 7:1; 7:2; 7:3; 7:4; 7:5; 7:6; 7:8; 7:9; 7:10; 7:12; 7:13; 7:17; 8:6; 8:7; 8:10; 8:18; 8:21; 8:22; 9:15; 9:17; 10:1; 10:6; 10:17; 10:18; 10:19; 10:22; 10:24; 10:25; 11:7; 11:13; 11:15; 12:3; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:8; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 12:15; 12:16; 12:17; 12:18; 12:19; 12:20; 12:22; 12:23; 12:24; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 14:3; 14:6; 14:10; 14:12; 14:23; 14:33; 14:34; 14:35; 14:39; 14:41; 14:45; 15:1; 15:2; 15:10; 15:11; 15:13; 15:15; 15:16; 15:17; 15:18; 15:19; 15:20; 15:21; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:25; 15:26; 15:28; 15:30; 15:31; 15:33; 15:35; 16:1; 16:2; 16:4; 16:5; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:12; 16:13; 16:14; 16:18; 17:37; 17:45; 17:46; 17:47; 18:12; 18:14; 18:17; 18:28; 19:5; 19:6; 19:9; 20:3; 20:8; 20:12; 20:13; 20:14; 20:15; 20:16; 20:21; 20:22; 20:23; 20:42; 21:6; 21:7; 22:10; 22:17; 22:21; 23:2; 23:4; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:18; 23:21; 24:4; 24:6; 24:10; 24:12; 24:15; 24:18; 24:19; 24:21; 25:26; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 25:32; 25:34; 25:38; 25:39; 26:9; 26:10; 26:11; 26:12; 26:16; 26:19; 26:20; 26:23; 26:24; 28:6; 28:10; 28:16; 28:17; 28:18; 28:19; 29:6; 30:6; 30:8; 30:23; 30:26)

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedet  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
David Trombold  
Dean Ropp  
Gene Mullen  
James Vigen  
Leonard Smith  
Nicholas Alsop  
Michael Francis  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000  
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton  
Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community